

Gem

New Hello!

&

King Lear

الصف الثانى الثانوى

الفصل الدراسى الأول

By

Emad Fawzy　Mohamed Abdel Aal　Ahmed Fadel　Ayman M. Ebrahim



- كل منا يفضل طريقة وأسلوبًا للتعلم، ولكى تكتشف أفضل طريقة للتعلم تناسبك أجب عن الأسئلة التالية، واختر الإجابة المناسبة لك، ثم رتب العدد الإجمالى لإجاباتك من بين كل من: (أ) و (ب) و (جـ):

ضع علامة أمام (أ) إذا كانت العبارة صحيحة دائمًا بالنسبة لك، وأمام (ب) إذا كانت العبارة صحيحة أحيانًا، وأمام (جـ) إذا كانت العبارة ليست صحيحة أبدًا:

1. لا أفضل الجلوس والاستماع إلى الآخرين فترات طويلة.
2. أجيد فهم التعليمات والتفسيرات الشفهية.
3. أصور الكلمات فى عقلى حتى أستطيع تهجيها.
4. أفضل تكرار سماع الكلمات لمساعدتى على التهجى.
5. أحب أن يختارنى معلمى لقراءة الدرس.
6. أستمتع بالمشاركة فى المناقشات كمستمع ومتحدث.
7. أجد صعوبة فى البقاء دون حركة.
8. أجيد الربط بين المعلومات التى يتضمنها الدرس وفهمها.
9. أحرك يدى كثيرًا أثناء الحديث مع الآخرين.
10. أستطيع ربط معلومات مختلفة ببعضها، والخروج بنتائج مبتكرة.
11. أمتلك القدرة على تخيل ما أقرأ.
12. أتعلم بشكل أفضل من خلال الأنشطة العملية.
13. أحب الاستماع إلى الموسيقى أثناء المذاكرة.
14. أفضل أن أقرأ المعلومات بصوت عالٍ لأتمكن من فهمها.
15. لا أستطيع التركيز لفترة طويلة عند الاستماع لشخص يتحدث.

	١	٢	٣	٤	٥	٦	٧	٨	٩	١٠	١١	١٢	١٣	١٤	١٥
أ															
ب															
جـ															

اعرف نمط تعلمك

حدد درجاتك

- إذا كانت معظم إجاباتك (أ) بالنسبة للأسئلة أرقام: ٣ ، ٥ ، ١٠ ، ١١ ، ١٥ فأنت متعلم بصرى.
- إذا كانت معظم إجاباتك (ب) بالنسبة للأسئلة أرقام: ٢ ، ٤ ، ٦ ، ٨ ، ١٤ فأنت متعلم سمعى.
- إذا كانت معظم إجاباتك (جـ) بالنسبة للأسئلة أرقام: ١ ، ٧ ، ٩ ، ١٢ ، ١٣ فأنت متعلم حركى.



ننصحك عند المذاكرة بأن تتعامل مع شىء معروض أو مكتوب لاستيعاب المعلومات، مثل: الرسوم البيانية، والخرائط الذهنية، ومقاطع الفيديو، والبطاقات التعليمية، وأن تحول المادة المكتوبة إلى أشكال ملونة، وصور تعبر عن المادة التى تذاكرها.

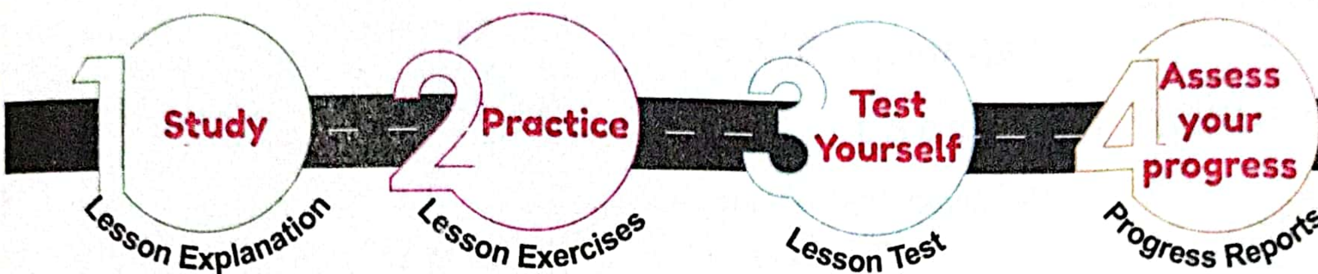


ننصحك عند المذاكرة بأن تقرأ المعلومات بصوت عالٍ؛ فهذا سيساعدك على فهمها، وكذلك المذاكرة فى مجموعات عن طريق المناقشة وتبادل المعلومات والعصف الذهنى.



ننصحك عند المذاكرة بأن ترسم ما تسمعه أو تحاول تخيله، وأن تتعلم من خلال الأنشطة التى تتطلب الحركة والتحدث مع الآخرين من خلال تمثيل الدرس على شكل مسرحية مثلًا.

رحلتك مع الأضواء





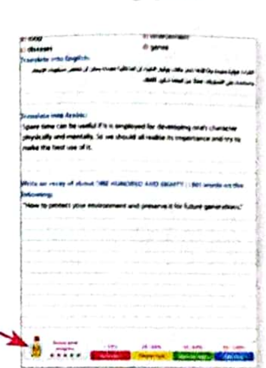
Through a simple and interactive video that enables you to understand better.



Through a variety of differentiated exercises in the book and Al-Adwaa app.



Through a variety of tests that match the local exam standards. The tests follow each lesson, so you become better prepared for the exam.



Through activities that help you evaluate yourself.

تم الاعتماد فى إعداد التدريبات والأنشطة داخل الكتاب على تصنيف بلوم



- ابتكار: القدرة على تجميع أجزاء لتكوين كل جديد.
- تقييم: القدرة على إصدار حكم على موضوع ما فى ضوء معايير محددة.
- تحليل: القدرة على التفكيك والتجزئة إلى العناصر والمكونات.
- تطبيق: القدرة على استخدام ما سبق تعلمه فى مواقف جديدة.
- فهم: القدرة على إدراك المعلومات واستيعابها.
- تذكر: القدرة على استدعاء المعلومات من الذاكرة.

Contents

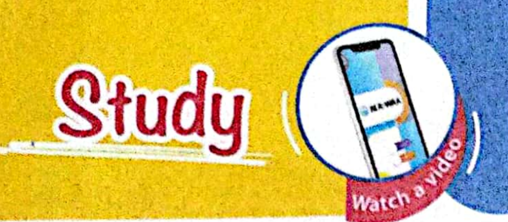
Unit 1



Staying healthy

Objectives

- **Reading** : A poster about how to perform first aid
- **Writing** : A persuasive email to a friend
- **Listening** : A news report about medical support for athletes; An explanation of the immune system
- **Speaking** : Suggesting solutions to problems; Persuading
- **Language** : Present and past necessity and lack of necessity
- **Life Skills** : Resilience





Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

You can study the new vocabulary by putting each word in a sentence.

Key Vocabulary

CPR (cardiopulmonary resuscitation)	عملية إنعاش رئوى قلبى	react (v) (ed)*	يتفاعل/يقوم برد فعل
infection (n)	عدوى	severe (adj)	شديد/خطير
perform (v) (ed)	يقوم بـ/يؤدى	technique (n)	طريقة/أسلوب

* My dad didn't react to my request when I asked for extra money.

Vocabulary on Reading

allow (v) (ed)	يسمح	flat (adj)	مسطح/مستوٍ
area (n)	منطقة	immediately (adv)	فورًا
awake (adj)	مستيقظ/واعٍ	injury (n)	إصابة
bacteria (n)	بكتيريا	instructions (n)	تعليمات
bleed (v)	ينزف	lock (v) (ed)	يغلق/يحبس
breathing (n)	التنفس	normal (adj)	طبيعى
call (v) (ed)	يتصل/ينادى	place (v) (d) (n)	يضع/مكان
chest (n)	صدر	press (v) (ed)	يضغط
disease (n)	مرض	rise (v)	يرتفع
else (adv)	آخر	sign (n)	علامة
emergency services (n)	خدمات الطوارئ	skill (n)	مهارة
first aid (n)	إسعافات أولية	surface (n)	سطح (الجزء الأعلى من الشىء)

Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

ambulance (n) عربة الإسعاف	fortunately (adv) لحسن الحظ
athlete (n) رياضى (شخص)	handball (n) كرة اليد
athletic (adj) رياضى/متعلق بألعاب القوى	heart centre (n) مركز القلب
base (n) أساس/قاعدة (أسفل الشىء)	major (adj) رئيسى
bone (n) عظم/ عظمة	pioneer (n) رائد
championship (n) بطولة	regular (adj) منتظم
check (v) (ed) يفحص/يراجع	repeat (v) (ed) يكرر
collaboration (n) تعاون/اشتراك	respond (v) (ed) يستجيب
competition (n) مسابقة/منافسة	responsibility (n) مسئولية
damage (v) (d) يفسد/يتلف	sudden (adj) مفاجئ
detail (n) تفصيل	survive (v) (d) ينجو/يبقى على قيد الحياة
educate (v) (d) يعلم/يدرس	technology (n) تكنولوجيا
examination (n) فحص/اختبار	train (v) (ed) يدرب/يتدرب
executive director (n) مدير تنفيذى	trophy (n) كأس
expert (n) خبير	

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

act (v) (ed) يتصرف/يمثل	muscle (n) عضلة
bandage (n) ضمادة (للجرح)	operation (n) عملية جراحية
blood (n) دم	performance (n) أداء
encourage (v) (d) يشجع	prohibition (n) منع/حظر
gloves (n) قفازات	pump (v) (ed) يضخ
guide (v) (d) يوجه/يرشد	regularly (adv) بانتظام
kit (n) عدة/طقم أدوات	tight (adj) محكم/مشدود/ضيق
label (n) ملصق	wrap (v) (ped) يلف/يغلف

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

do an action	يقوم بالتصرف	make sure	يتأكد
perform/do CPR	يجرى عملية إنعاش رئوى قلبى	perform a play	يمثل مسرحية
do sport	يمارس رياضة	stay healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة
have/get an infection	يصاب بعدوى	take up a new sport	يهتم بـ / يبدأ رياضة جديدة
care about	يهتم بـ	look at	ينظر إلى/يفحص
come off	يسقط/يخرج من مكانه	reply to	يرد على/يستجيب لـ
disagree about	لا يوافق (يعترض) على	rise up	يرتفع لأعلى
lock ... together	يغلق ... معًا	wrap ... around	يلف ... حول
respond to	يستجيب لـ	react with	يتصرف بـ/يتفاعل مع

Read the derivatives well and link them to real life in visual images.

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
act	يتصرف	action	عمل/فعل	acting active	قائم بعمل (فعل) نشيط
bleed	ينزف	bleeding	نزيف	------------------------	
breathe	يتنفس	breath breathing	نفس تنفس	breathy	لاهث/مصحوب بأنفاس مسموعة
collaborate	يتعاون/يشارك	collaboration	تعاون/اشتراك	collaborative	تعاونى
encourage	يشجع	encouragement	تشجيع	encouraging	مشجع
guide	يوجه/يرشد	guidance guide	توجيه/إرشاد مرشد	guiding	إرشادى/توجيهى
infect	يعدى	infection	عدوى	infected infectious	مصاب بعدوى مُعدٍ
injure	يصيب/يجرح	injury	إصابة/جرح	injured	مصاب/مجروح
operate	يقوم بعملية/يشغل	operation	عملية جراحية	operative	جراحى/مشغل
perform*	يؤدى	performance	أداء	performing	مؤدٍ
react	يقوم برد فعل	reaction	رد فعل	reactive	ذو رد فعل

* - The team performed very well.
- The performance of the team was very good.
- The performing team was so professional.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
collaboration	تعاون/اشتراك	participation/partnership	isolation/disunion عزلة/عدم اتحاد
disease	مرض	illness/sickness	health/well-being صحة
examination	فحص/اختبار	observation/checking	disregard/negligence إهمال
flat	مسطح/مستو	straight/plane	rough/uneven خشن/غير مستقيم
guide	يوجه/يرشد	advise/direct	misguide/mislead يسيء التوجيه
immediately	فورًا	instantly/soon	later فيما بعد
infection	عدوى	contagion	sterility/sanitation تعقيم/الصحة العامة
injury	إصابة	wound/harm	remedy/cure علاج
perform	يقوم بـ/يؤدى	act/carry out	halt/fail يتوقف/يفشل
press	يضغط	squeeze/compress	release/extend يطلق/يمد
react	يتفاعل/يقوم برد فعل	proceed/respond	cease/halt يتوقف
responsibility	مسئولية	duty	irresponsibility/distrust عدم مسئولية/عدم ثقة
severe	شديد/خطير	acute/extreme	gentle/mild بسيط/لطيف/معتدل
skill	مهارة	proficiency/craft	incompetence/inability عدم كفاءة/عدم قدرة

Let's check our memory!

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Antibiotics المضادات الحيوية are used to treat the .... in most parts of the body.
   a) injection b) infection c) operation d) reflection
2. Food must be heated to a high temperature to kill harmful ....
   a) plants b) pains c) organs d) bacteria
3. Doctors say that you shouldn't continue to exercise if you suffer from a/an ....
   a) treatment b) break c) injury d) drug
4. Teachers should apply various .... for dealing with weak students.
   a) devices b) techniques c) kits d) jokes
5. The old man's .... stopped suddenly and he was taken to the intensive care unit وحدة الرعاية المركزة.
   a) disease b) temperature c) breathing d) pressure

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text

Did you help an injured person before? How?

HOW TO PERFORM FIRST AID

1 If you find an ill or injured person, you must check the area around them first to make sure it isn't dangerous. Then move closer to the person and look carefully at him/her. Does he/she seem to be very ill? Does he/she have severe[1] injuries?

2 If the person is awake but not bleeding[2], you have to ask him/her how he/she feels and what happened. Check his/her body for signs of injury or infection[3]. You don't have to touch the person's body to do this.

3 If the person doesn't reply, touch his/her shoulder or foot and shout to see if he/she reacts[4], and remember to check for normal breathing.

4 If the person isn't breathing, someone must call the emergency services[5] immediately (123).

5 If you know how to perform CPR[6], you have to do this to help the person start breathing again. However, you mustn't do CPR unless the person is lying on their back on a flat surface such as the floor.

6 Place your hand on the centre of the person's chest[7]. Put your other hand on top of the first hand and lock your fingers together. Make sure that your shoulders are above your hands.

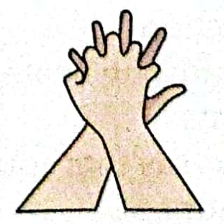
(1) شديد
(2) ينزف
(3) عدوى
(4) يقوم برد فعل
(5) خدمات الطوارئ
(6) عملية إنعاش رئوى قلبى
(7) الصدر
(8) يضغط



Step 1



Step 2



Step 3

7 You don't have to press[8] down on the person's chest very much – only five to six centimetres. Keep your hands on their chest and allow it to rise up again. You have to do this 100 to 120 times a minute until the person starts breathing again.

Who should you call if a person isn't breathing well?



Do you think healthy athletes must have heart examinations? Why?

Listening Text (1)

Most of us know that we need to stay healthy and many of us enjoy sports. But some young athletes[1] believe that they don't need to worry about heart problems until they get very ill. However, health experts agree that athletes must get a special heart examination[2] before they can be completely sure that they don't have a problem.

For example, in 2006, Mohamed Abdelwahab was an Egyptian footballer from Fayum who seemed to be very healthy. At that time, football clubs didn't have to check their players' hearts, but then Abdelwahab fell down while he was training[3]. Sadly, although the emergency services took him to hospital, Abdelwahab didn't survive[4].

Fortunately[5], Egypt became a pioneer[6] in athletic heart care in 2018 when it established the first Athletic Heart Centre in the Middle East in Wadi el Nil Hospital.

(1) رياضيون
(2) فحص/اختبار
(3) يتدرب
(4) ينجو/يبقى على قيد الحياة
(5) لحسن الحظ
(6) رائد
(7) تفصيل
(8) مدير تنفيذى
(9) رئيسى
(10) منافسات
(11) بطولات

It was decided that the AHC had to have the best technology to check every detail[7] of an athlete's heart. And Dr Hazem Khamis, the Hospital Director, has said that the centre will help to protect everyone who enjoys sport in Egypt, and it will work with Liverpool John Moores University to help athletes abroad.

Dr Ahmed Ashraf Eissa, who is the Executive Director[8] of the centre, also believes that anyone who does any kind of sport should check the health of their heart first. For example, the members of the Egyptian national handball team take full tests of their hearts before major [9] competitions[10], such as the World Handball Championships[11].

And now Dr Hazem and Dr Ahmed have published a book together so that everyone can understand the importance of having a healthy heart. It's called Athletic Heart: Between Dreams of a Trophy and Sudden Death. Young athletes, and their families, mustn't miss this chance to learn about the importance of heart examinations to stay fit and healthy.

In your opinion, how can the Athletic Heart Centre in the Middle East in Wadi el Nil Hospital help athletes in Egypt?

Listening Text (2) (Workbook)

Of course, not everyone will become an athlete or a footballer, but that does not mean we should forget about our hearts. So what should parents do to help their children stay free from heart disease?

Your heart pumps[1] about 380 litres of blood through your body every hour. This is a lot of work. In fact, your heart has to work harder than any other muscle[2] in your body. That is why we need to keep it fit and healthy.

We all need to exercise for 30 minutes every day if we can. We should all get lots of exercise – that means Mum and Dad as well as the children. Try to walk, cycle, swim or play games outside as often as you can. Play together as a family and it will be more fun. If a child decides to take up a new sport[3], send them to visit a doctor to check their heart first. They'll probably be fine, but the doctor will need to do some tests to check.

Eat healthily, too. Show your children that they need to look at the labels[4] before they buy something. They mustn't eat too much of something if it has a lot of salt or fat in it.

Eat well, do lots of exercise and you should have healthy hearts for life!

(1) يضخ
(2) عضلة
(3) يهتم بـ/يبدأ رياضة
(4) ملصقات

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Most people feel proud when .... from their country do well in the Olympics.
a) graduates b) athletes c) pioneers d) reporters

2 McDonald's and Pizza Hut are two .... companies in the food industry.
a) normal b) unimportant c) major d) minor

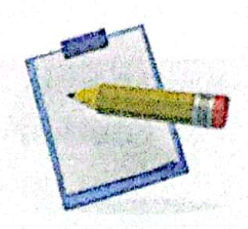
3 A/An .... is someone who is important in the early development of something, and whose work or ideas are later developed by other people.
a) employee b) director c) assistant d) pioneer

4 Police officers are investigating the .... death of the famous politician.
a) sudden b) regular c) exciting d) available

5 We have to .... very hard before taking part in a competition.
a) gain b) train c) entertain d) complain



Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

CPR — عملية انعاش رئوى قلبى
- breathing air into the mouth of an unconscious person and pressing on their chest to keep them alive by sending air around their body

infection — عدوى
- a disease that affects a particular part of your body and is caused by bacteria or a virus

perform — يقوم بـ/يؤدى
- to do something, especially something difficult or useful

react — يتفاعل/يقوم برد فعل
- to behave in a particular way or show a particular emotion because of something that has happened

severe — شديد/خطير
- very bad or very serious

technique — طريقة/أسلوب
- a special way of doing something

Notes on Vocabulary

Bear in mind that just reading them may help!

operation

١- عملية جراحية
- The famous surgeon has done this operation hundreds of times.

٢- عملية إنجاز (عمل/نشاط) لشركة أو منظمة
- Connecting the water supply to some villages isn't a simple operation.

1

process

١- عملية طبيعية أو صناعية لحدوث أو إنتاج شىء
- Birth and ageing may be man's most important natural processes.

٢- عملية إجرائية (سلسلة من الخطوات لإتمام شىء)
- Getting a visa can be a complex process.

Word	Example
another آخر (للمفرد) **another +** مسافات/كميات/أموال/أوقات	There's another news programme at ten o'clock. I want to stay in Paris for another 3 days. I lent my friend another ten pounds.
other + اسم أخرى (للجمع/اسم لا يعد)	I suggested a camping holiday, but Omar had other ideas.
the other الأخر (بمعنى أن هناك اثنين فقط)	You gave me only one pen, where is the other (one)?
others الآخرون (يأتى بعدها فعل)	One boy fell off his chair and the others laughed.
else ١- آخر/أيضـا تستخدم بعد كلمات تبدأ بـ some - any - every - no ولا يأتى بعدها اسم ٢- آخر/أيضا (تستخدم بعد أدوات الاستفهام)	There's something else I'd like to talk about as well. I'll give you the report, but don't tell anybody else. He is awake now, like everyone else. Who else was at the party yesterday? What else would you like to buy?

2

Word	Example
sign ١- لافتة (ورقية/معدنية) لمعلومة/تحذير/تعليمات ٢- إشارة إلى (حدث يدل على حقيقة)	You must take care of traffic signs while driving on the road. Do you see any signs of improvement in the patient's condition?
signal ١- إشارة (تليفون/إذاعة/تليفزيون) ٢- إشـارة (ضوئية/صوتيـة) كدليـل أو إعطاء إذن لشيء	The satellite is used for transmitting signals around the world. The siren was a signal for everyone to leave the building.
landmark علامة بارزة (تميز مكانا) مثل برج أو مبنى	The Eiffel Tower is probably the most famous landmark in Paris.

3

Word	Example
athlete رياضـي (شـخص يمـارس رياضة وخاصـة ألعـاب القـوى)	Athletes are all happy to take part in the Olympic Games.
athletic رياضـي (صفـة لوصـف شـخص أو شـيء رياضـي)	He can play any sport, he's naturally athletic. School athletic competitions are encouraged to help students live healthily.
athletics ألعاب القوى (مجموعة من الألعاب تشمل الجري والقفز والرمي) تعامل معاملة المفرد	Athletics is considered the most important competitions in the Olympic Games.

4

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- If the person doesn't reply, touch their shoulder or their foot ....

- لاحظ استخدام صيغة الأمر (touch) فى جواب الشرط للحالة الأولى لـ (If) ولاحظ أيضًا استخدام ضمير الجمع (their) للإشارة إلى الاسم (person) فى حالة عدم تحديد ما إذا كان مذكرًا أو مؤنثًا.

- If the person isn't breathing, someone must call the emergency services immediately.

- لاحظ استخدام زمن المضارع المستمر (isn't breathing) بدلًا من المضارع البسيط فى فعل الشرط للحالة الأولى لـ (If).

- You have to do this 100 to 120 times a minute until the person starts breathing again.

- لاحظ استخدام أداة الربط (until) للربط بين جملتين فى زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن تسلسل حدثين.

- Sadly, although the emergency services took him to hospital, Abdelwahab didn't survive.

- يستخدم الظرف عادة لوصف الفعل ويأتى بعده ولكن عند البدء به يكون انطباعًا عن الجملة كلها كما فى (Sadly).

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Children need to be taught to have respect for .... people's property.
a) another b) other c) others d) the other

2 There was a big .... above the entrance of the metro station.
a) signal b) mark c) sign d) message

3 We love to watch the Olympic competitions – especially the ....
a) athlete b) athletic c) authentic d) athletics

4 Doctors say that the injured footballer may need a/an .... on his knee.
a) process b) operation c) option d) task

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.



Vocabulary Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Practice makes perfect!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 The young lady suffered .... head injuries after the accident and was in the hospital for three months.
a) gentle b) severe c) simple d) normal

2 Ahmed was given a small role in the school play which will be .... at the school theatre.
a) performed b) designed c) made d) reacted

3 Firefighters must be trained well to .... quickly when they hear the alarm.
a) call b) react c) reflect d) allow

4 Psychiatrists say that yoga is a very effective .... for relieving stress of life.
a) objective b) reaction c) technique d) examination

5 The policeman was .... from a wound in his shoulder caused by a gun shot.
a) breathing b) wrapping c) treating d) bleeding

6 You should always read the .... before you start using any new electrical set you buy.
a) constructions b) instructions c) licences d) techniques

7 Several people ignored the no-smoking .... and the police fined يغرم them.
a) mark b) signal c) message d) sign

8 I had an appointment at the dentist's for a routine .... on Monday afternoon.
a) examination b) reaction c) intention d) collaboration

9 The present my sister got for her birthday was beautifully .... in gold paper.
a) wrapped b) locked c) dumped d) removed

10 By midday, the sun had .... high in the sky and it was very hot.
a) risen b) increased c) decreased d) raised

11 Omar's mother did not .... him to take boxing lessons because she believed that this was a dangerous sport.
a) cause b) prohibit c) allow d) educate

12 An .... is a person with a high level of knowledge or skill of a particular subject or activity.
a) export b) explorer c) employer d) expert

13 Anything you share on your Facebook page is shown shortly afterwards to everyone ....
a) other b) else c) another d) others

14 The manager took full .... for the company's great losses and resigned.
a) ability b) potential c) responsibility d) ambition

15 My friend was given .... by a doctor, which I think saved his life.
a) VCR b) PCR c) CPR d) MRI

16 The audience was clearly delighted with the .... of the actors.
a) perform b) performance c) performer d) performative

17 I'm busy now; I'll phone you again later. The word "later" is an antonym of the word ".................".
a) immediately b) regularly c) gradually d) latter

18 Factories and building companies must provide safety equipment and .... sure it is used carefully.
a) do b) make c) design d) devise

19 Husbands and wives usually disagree .... the best way to spend their money.
a) about b) to c) with d) for

20 The young actress usually replies immediately .... comments on her posts.
a) at b) for c) about d) to

21 Many young women stop .... sports when they get married.
a) going b) letting c) doing d) making

22 To .... healthy, you should exercise at least three times a week.
a) design b) avoid c) stay d) remove

23 The officer died of his gunshot wounds. The word "wound" can be replaced by the word ".................".
a) bruise b) injury c) scare d) trial

24 The medical company announced that the research for the new vaccine was done in .... with the University of Oxford.
a) collaborate b) collaboration c) collaborative d) elaboration

25 During pandemics, governments have to force people to stay home to stop the spread of the disease ....
a) infect b) infected c) infectious d) infection

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 He suffered a severe head injury. The synonyms of the word "severe" are .... and ....
a) acute b) easy c) simple d) extreme e) strange

27 A young man pulled the child out of the swimming pool and .... CPR for him saving his life.
a) performed b) made c) did d) applied e) trained

28 The environment authority uses an environmentally friendly .... for treating waste and rubbish from houses.
a) experiment b) result c) technique d) method e) profit

29 Did you .... any new sports when you started high school this year?
a) make b) do c) give d) design e) take up

30 Mary's family .... with horror when they knew about their daughter's accident.
a) refused b) reacted c) pleaded d) responded e) agreed





Lessons 1 & 2

It's highly important to know how and when to use the new grammar.

B Language

Present and past necessity and lack of necessity

التعبير عن الضرورة وعدم الضرورة فى المضارع والماضى

1 Necessity الضرورة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى		Future المستقبل	
must + inf.	It is necessary for ... to + inf.	had + inf.	It was necessary for ... to + inf.	will have to + inf.	It will be necessary for ... to + inf.
have/ has to + inf.					
have/ has got to + inf.		no past			
need/needs to + inf.		needed to + inf.		will need to + inf.	

- It is necessary for us to wear heavy clothes in cold weather.
- We must/have to/have got to/need to wear heavy clothes in cold weather.
- It was necessary for him to fix the roof after the rain yesterday.
- He had to/ needed to fix the roof after the rain yesterday.
- It will be necessary for her to book the concert tickets tomorrow.
- She will have to/will need to book the concert tickets tomorrow.

must - have to/has to الفرق بين



• كلاهما يفيد الضرورة والاضطرار لفعل شىء ولكن الاختلاف فيمن يفرض الضرورة.

- تفيد must الضرورة الشخصية (ظروف شخصية تضطره لذلك) والشخص يكون موافقًا لهذه الضرورة وراضيًا عنها.

- وتفيد have to ضرورة مفروضة من الخارج ليس لك اختيار فى فعلها ولا رأى فيها.

- I must call Omar tonight as I promised to phone him.
- I have to wear a uniform at school.

• يمكن استخدام المضارع must/have to للتعبير عن المستقبل.

- They must/have to attend the last session next Friday to get the course certificate.

• ولبيان الفرق الكامل بينهم يجب دراسة الجدول الآتى:

	must	have/has to
1	يعتقد المتحدث أنه ضرورى (شعور داخلى) . ▸ These pants don't fit me anymore. I **must** lose weight.	شخص آخر يعتقد أنه ضرورى (مفروض من الخارج). ▸ My doctor told me I'm overweight and I **have to** go on a diet.
2	تستخدم فى المضارع لوصف ضرورة عامة ودائمة أو ضرورة فى المستقبل القريب، وعندما تكون الأوامر رسمية أو عامة فى مستندات أو إشعارات. ▸ When you drive, you **must wear** a seat belt. ▸ Passengers **must keep** their bags with them at all times.	تستخدم للتعبير عن الضرورة، ويمكن استخدامها فى الماضى والمضارع والمستقبل. ▸ She **has to** take two trains and a bus to get to work every day. ▸ I **had to visit** my uncle yesterday. ▸ I **will have to book** the ticket tomorrow.
3	لا تتغير «must» مع الفاعل مفرد او جمع فى الجملة الخبرية أو الاستفهام. ▸ **I/He/They must** be healthy. ▸ **Must I** go to the party? I don't really want to. ▸ **Must he** make so much noise? It's really annoying.	تستخدم مثل أى فعل عادى فى التصريف مع استخدام has للفاعل المفرد او للضمائر he/she/it وفى السؤال do/does ▸ **Does** he **have to** wear a suit to work? ▸ **Do** I **have to** bring some forms of ID?
4	فى النفى نضيف not المختصرة ثم المصدر. ▸ They **mustn't** use their mobile phones during lessons. ▸ We **mustn't** stand up while the plane is taking off.	فى النفى نضيف doesn't/don't ثم have to ثم المصدر. ▸ She **doesn't have to** come to the meeting if she doesn't want to. ▸ We **don't have to** read all these books.

5

تستخدم don't/doesn't have to للشيء غير الضرورى وأن الشخص لديه اختيار وغير مضطر لفعله.

- He doesn't have to work on Fridays so he can do what he wants.
- You don't have to pay to visit the Pyramids in Egypt. It's free.

تستخدم mustn't فى النفى للمنع والحظر (قوانين) والنصيحة القوية.

- When the traffic lights are red, you mustn't go.
- I mustn't drink any more coffee, otherwise, I won't sleep tonight.

6

تستخدم had to للحديث عن الضرورة فى الماضى.

- Did you have to pay a fine when the police stopped you?
- Did he have to get up early yesterday?
- The doctor told her she had to lose weight.

لا تستخدم must فى الماضى.

- Present simple = must/have to
- Future simple = must/will have to
- Past simple = had to
- Present perfect = have/has had to

have got to

- You can use have got to instead of have to:

- تستخدم have got to بنفس معنى have to

- I've got to work tomorrow. OR I have to work tomorrow.
- When has Hala got to go? OR When does Hala have to go?

Let's check our understanding!

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... go to the office very early tomorrow as I have a lot of work to do.
   a) need b) had to c) didn't have to d) must
2. Did your brother .... attend the welcome party at the university yesterday?
   a) had to b) must c) have to d) has to
3. I missed the train this morning, so I .... go to Alex by bus.
   a) has to b) had to c) didn't have to d) must



Check the answers at the end of the book.

2 Lack of Necessity عدم الضرورة

Present المضارع	It isn't necessary for ... to + inf.	It isn't necessary for her to go to school by bus.
	don't/ doesn't have to + inf.	She doesn't have to go to school by bus.
	don't/ doesn't need to + inf.	She doesn't need to go to school by bus.
	needn't + inf.	She needn't go to school by bus.
Past الماضى	It wasn't necessary for ... to + inf.	It wasn't necessary for them to get up early as it was a holiday.
	didn't have/need to + inf. لم يكن ضروريًا فعل شىء فلم نفعله.	They didn't have/need to get up early as it was a holiday. لم يكن واجبًا فلم يستيقظوا.
	needn't have + p.p لم يكن ضروريًا فعل شىء ولكن تم فعله.	They needn't have got up early as it was a holiday. لم يكن واجبًا ولكنهم استيقظوا.
Future المستقبل	It won't be necessary for ... to + inf.	It won't be necessary for him to walk with a crutch again.
	won't have/need to + inf.	He won't have/need to walk with a crutch again.

didn't have to

- didn't have to + inf. = It wasn't necessary to do something.

لم يكن واجبًا فعل شىء فى الماضى فلم نفعله.

- She didn't have to buy a dress for the party. It wasn't necessary.

needn't have done

- He needn't have done something. = He did it, but now we know that it was not necessary.

- هو لم يكن فى حاجة إلى أن يفعل شيئًا ما = هو فعله ولكن عرفنا الآن أنه كان غير ضرورى.

- Why did he get up at 5 o'clock? He needn't have got up so early. It's a holiday.

didn't need to

- He didn't need to do something = it was not necessary to do it. It doesn't matter whether he did it or not:

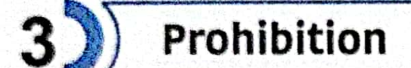
- تعبر didn't need to عن عدم الضرورة فى الماضى، ولا يهم إذا كان فعل الحدث أو لا، وتبين الجملة ذلك، وكلاهما صحيح.

- He didn't need to get up early, so he didn't.

- لم يكن ضروريًا أن يستيقظ مبكرًا؛ لذلك لم يفعل.

- He didn't need to get up early, but it was a beautiful morning, so he did.

- لم يكن ضروريًا أن يستيقظ مبكرًا ولكنه كان صباحًا جميلًا لذلك استيقظ.



3 Prohibition التحذير/المنع

mustn't/ can't + inf

- It's not permitted
- It's against the law/rules
- It's necessary not
- It's forbidden
- It's prohibited **+ to + inf.**
- It's banned

- You mustn't/can't smoke in hospitals.
- It's forbidden/prohibited to smoke in hospitals.

Check Point 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We were travelling around Egypt. We .... our passports.
   a) didn't have to take b) had to take
   c) shouldn't take d) needn't take
2. Sara .... her sunglasses because it was cloudy. She wished she hadn't taken it.
   a) had to take b) needn't have taken
   c) mustn't take d) didn't need to take
3. You .... forget to take your medicine on time.
   a) had to b) don't have to c) have to d) mustn't
4. We've got plenty of time. We .... hurry.
   a) have to b) must c) needn't d) don't need
5. You .... go shopping with us, you can stay at home if you want.
   a) don't have to b) mustn't c) must d) have to



Check the answers at the end of the book.



Language Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Students .... eat or drink during the class. It's not allowed.
a) mustn't   b) had to
c) must   d) don't have to

2 My mother .... yesterday. My father ordered food from the restaurant.
a) have to cook   b) must cook
c) needn't cook   d) didn't have to cook

3 My grandfather .... wear a uniform at school. They could wear what they wanted.
a) doesn't have to   b) needn't
c) has to   d) didn't have to

4 I .... take this book back to the library or I'll pay a fine.
a) mustn't   b) have got to   c) can't   d) need

5 This kitchen equipment wasn't necessary, you .... it. You are wasteful.
a) had to buy   b) needn't have bought
c) didn't have to buy   d) don't need to buy

6 You .... eat so many sweets. They are bad for you.
a) need to   b) have to
c) didn't have to   d) mustn't

7 Tomorrow is my day off. I .... get up early.
a) mustn't   b) had to   c) must   d) won't have to

8 My brother .... finish his graduation project yesterday.
a) must   b) had to
c) has to   d) doesn't have to

9 Children under 5 .... pay for the ticket. It's free.
a) don't have   b) had to   c) needn't   d) will have to

10 It rained heavily yesterday, so I .... water the flowers.
a) didn't have to   b) have to   c) mustn't   d) had to

11 We .... visit our grandmother. She has been ill lately.
a) didn't have to   b) needn't
c) must   d) don't have to

12 Does he .... arrive at work very early?
a) had to   b) has to   c) have to   d) must

13. The school bus broke down, so the pupils .... walk to school.

a) had to b) ought c) must d) would

14 We .... talk to each other because it was an exam.

a) shouldn't b) mustn't
c) don't have to d) weren't allowed to

15 I really .... phone Aya. I promised I'd phone her as soon as I reached home.

a) must b) has to
c) need d) needn't

16 There was a lot of traffic, we .... leave much earlier.

a) needed to b) didn't have to
c) mustn't d) have to

17 She .... home yesterday because her mother was sick.

a) needn't stay b) had to stay
c) needn't have stayed d) didn't have to stay

18 You .... phone me at work. We aren't allowed to make personal calls.

a) needn't b) have to c) need to d) mustn't

19 My father will give me a lift to the school, I .... walk to it.

a) mustn't b) have to
c) won't have to d) didn't have to

20 We .... give him our answer today or we will lose the contract.

a) needn't b) have to c) shouldn't d) don't have to

21 The students .... all those notes. All the information is typed for them.

إدارة أسيوط التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) needn't have written b) must write
c) have to write d) had to write

22 I really .... buy my mother a present on her birthday. One should be grateful!

إدارة شبراخيت ٢٠٢٢

a) must b) mustn't c) have to d) needn't

23 You .... worry; you still have a lot of time to answer the other questions.

إدارة القناطر التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) mustn't b) don't have to c) should d) need

24 Must we finish this exercise today? No, you ....

إدارة المنيا ٢٠٢٢

a) mustn't b) don't have to c) haven't got d) didn't need

25 I .... my room yesterday; my sister had already tidied it.

إدارة الخليفة والمقطم التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) don't have to tidy b) didn't have to tidy
c) had to tidy d) must have tidied

26 Which of the following expresses a lack of necessity?
"She .... cook food today. There is enough food in the fridge."

a) needn't to b) mustn't c) doesn't have to d) has to

27 You mustn't park here. It means that ....

a) it is necessary to park here
b) it isn't necessary to park here
c) it's against the law to park here
d) parking isn't forbidden here

28 Which of the following choices gives the same meaning to the following sentence?
"We didn't have to wear coats yesterday as it was so hot."

a) It is necessary for us to wear coats today.
b) We didn't need to wear coats yesterday as it was so hot.
c) We needn't have worn coats yesterday as it was so hot.
d) It wasn't advisable for us to wear coats yesterday.

29 Which of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?

a) Yasser needs to go to the dentist now. His tooth is really hurting.
b) Yasser had to go to the dentist now. His tooth is really hurting.
c) Yasser has got to go to the dentist now. His tooth is really hurting.
d) Yasser has to go to the dentist now. His tooth is really hurting.

30 Necessity is expressed in one of the following sentences.

a) Osama didn't have to find another job.
b) Osama has got to find another job.
c) Osama doesn't have to find another job.
d) Osama needn't find another job.

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

31 Sorry, I have no time to discuss anything now. I .... be at a meeting at 10 o'clock.

a) may
b) have to
c) must
d) could
e) don't have to

32 It's a smoke-free area. You .... smoke here.

a) mustn't
b) may
c) don't have to
d) can't
e) can

33 .... shout at your boss yesterday.

a) You can't
b) It wasn't necessary for you to
c) You mustn't
d) You needn't
e) You needn't have shouted

34 You .... make me another cup of coffee. I've just had one.

a) don't have to
b) mustn't
c) can't
d) have to
e) needn't

35 Since his mother was ill, he .... prepare the dinner for the family.

a) had to
b) was obliged to
c) didn't have to
d) has to
e) must



Unit 1
Lessons 1 & 2

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Check your vocabulary, grammar, reading and translation skills!

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Some of the passengers suffered .... injuries after the bus accident and needed to have operations.
a) severe b) gentle c) light d) reactive

2 Lifeguards are trained on .... CPR as they save people from drowning.
a) doing b) making c) inventing d) designing

3 My father has a large carpentry .... and he always fixes things at our house.
a) tool b) device c) kit d) trauma

4 We went to a special course to learn how to give first .... to accident victims.
a) help b) aid c) drug d) operation

5 The doctors said that the boy was .... and didn't need medicine.
a) average b) hurt c) common d) normal

6 Children are advised to visit a dentist .... to keep their teeth healthy.
a) gradually b) regularly c) scarcely d) rarely

7 We'll have to wait for .... three weeks for the results.
a) another b) other c) others d) else

8 Mohamed Salah became the first Egyptian footballer to win a major European ....
a) match b) trophy c) reward d) present

9 The room looks tidy. I .... clean it.
a) mustn't b) can't c) didn't have to d) don't have to

10 Ghada .... go to the office. She can do her work from home.
a) doesn't have b) needn't c) has to d) mustn't

11 The employees .... wear formal clothing, but they should look smart.
a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) don't have to d) can't

12 You .... drive a car without fastening the seat belt. It's against the law.
a) mustn't b) needn't c) don't have to d) aren't allowed

13 According to the company regulations, I .... arrive at work at 8 sharp.
a) need b) can't c) mustn't d) have to

14 I have an important exam tomorrow. I .... study hard for it.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) must d) had to

15 Does he .... type these letters now?
a) has to b) had to c) must d) have to

16 When a police officer asks to see your driver's license, you .... show it to him/her.
a) didn't have to b) have got to c) has to d) mustn't

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Everyone knows that running is a great way to get into shape, but it also can benefit almost every part of your body and boost[1] your mood. Whether it's your favourite part of the day or something you have to push yourself through, the benefits are undeniable[2].

1. Running improves your health.
2. It prevents disease.
3. You might lose weight.
4. Running boosts your confidence.
5. It relieves stress.
6. Running has the power to eliminate[3] depression

One of the coolest things about the sport of running is that you don't need expensive equipment. All you need is a good pair of running shoes and a safe environment.

No one wakes up and decides to run a marathon without training. Running requires discipline, perseverance[4], and concentration. It's a sport that's good for your body and mind.

Running strengthens your heart, lungs, and muscles. It develops coordination[5] and makes you more aware of your body. Running also gives you energy by increasing your oxygen intake, and it improves your immune system so you don't get sick as easily. It can even help you stay more focused in school because exercise helps you to think more clearly.

Most schools offer cross-country and track programs, but there are also running clubs open to all ages. A simple Internet search can help you find some in your area. The programs show you how running can offer competition or just be for fun. They also teach runners to set realistic[6] goals and take care of their bodies.

If you're looking for more than just a sport, running may be the perfect choice for you.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 What is the main idea of the fourth paragraph in this article?
a) Running is one way to keep your body healthy.
b) You don't need expensive equipment to be a runner.
c) Running for fun is better than running in a competition.
d) There are many running clubs and teams you can become involved in.

2 What is the author's main purpose for writing this passage?
a) To give historical information about runners.
b) To teach readers how to become great runners.
c) To persuade readers to try running.
d) To compare and contrast running and watching television.



(1) يعزز/يدفع/ينشط (3) يقضي على (5) التعاون
(2) لا يمكن إنكاره (4) المثابرة (6) واقعي

3 Running strengthens your ....
a) heart, lungs, and muscles
b) hearing
c) hair
d) weakness

4 The words "protects your body from bacteria and disease" refer to ....
a) lungs
b) immune system
c) heart
d) marathon

5 It's required to have .... to practise running.
a) smoking and beverage
b) perseverance and focus
c) leather shoes and a suit
d) money and a vast place

6 Running can benefit the mind as it ....
a) boosts confidence
b) helps people lose weight
c) helps people think clearly
d) keeps you hungry

7 People can find the suitable places for running through ....
a) the newspapers
b) the magazines
c) the internet
d) the school noticeboard

8 The underlined word "discipline" means ....
a) carelessness
b) weakness
c) self-control
d) flexibility

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. A healthy lifestyle has become more important with the spread of new diseases. Healthy food and sport are the most important factors[1] of it.

....

....

2. Egypt was one of the first African countries to provide different vaccines for COVID-19. The Egyptian scientists could even invent a vaccine for the new virus.

....

....

3. Tourism is the second most important source of hard currency[2] in Egypt. It also adds much to our national income[3]. Therefore, the government gives due care to it.

....

....

4. Egypt's youth are renewable energy that must be invested in and benefited from. With their efforts, we can have a great nation and achieve progress in various fields.

....

....

5. The World Health Organisation regards clean water and food as one of the primary rights of human beings. Thus, it calls for fighting pollution.

....

....

6. Youth[4] are not only the partners of today but also the leaders[5] of tomorrow. Youth are full of energy and enthusiasm[6] to learn, act and achieve.

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- رغم تخلى كثير من الدول المتقدمة عن الإجراءات الاحترازية(٧) لفيروس كورونا فإن منظمة الصحة العالمية تنصح الدول النامية بالاستمرار فيها بسبب النسبة(٨) القليلة من شعوبها التى أخذت اللقاحات(٩).

....

....

٢- نفخر جميعًا بعلمائنا المتميزين(١٠) أمثال أحمد زويل وفاروق الباز اللذين قاما بإنجازات(١١) علمية كبيرة ساهمت فى تقدم البشرية(١٢) فى مجالات عديدة فى كل أنحاء العالم.

....

....

٣- أصبحت كرة القدم صناعة كبيرة تجذب(١٣) الكثير من الاستثمارات(١٤) وتدر أرباحًا(١٥) أكثر من العديد من الصناعات الأخرى، كما أنها تلقى اهتمامًا إعلاميًا أكبر من الرياضات الأخرى.

....

....

٤- الكتاب صديق الإنسان وهو واحد من أفضل الطرق لاكتساب المعرفة(١٦) وإشباع رغبات المثقفين، لذا يجب تشجيع الأطفال والشباب على القراءة فى مختلف المجالات.

....

....

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

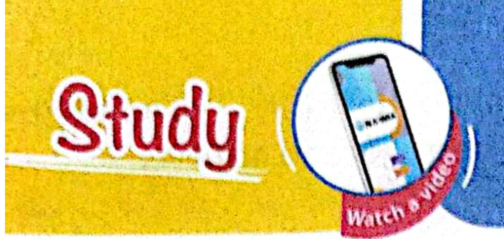
"How the internet has changed the world of work nowadays."

....

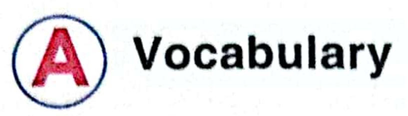
....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. — I used the right structure. — I used a topic sentence. — I wrote the conclusion. — I used the right punctuation.

(1) عوامل
(2) عملة
(3) دخل
(4) الشباب
(5) قادة
(6) الحماس
(7) precautionary measures
(8) percentage
(9) vaccines
(10) brilliant
(11) achievements
(12) humanity
(13) attract
(14) investment
(15) profits
(16) knowledge



Lessons 3 & 4



A Vocabulary

You can study the new vocabulary by putting each word in a sentence.

Vocabulary on Reading

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
brilliant (adj)	بارع/رائع	perfect (adj)	كامل/ممتاز
champion (n)	بطل رياضى	persuasive (adj)	مقنع
course (n)	مقرر (منهج) تعليمى	reason (n)	سبب
join (v) (ed)	ينضم إلى/يلتحق بـ	situation (n)	موقف
mistake (n)*	خطأ	video games (n)	ألعاب الفيديو
Olympic (adj)	أوليمبى		

* It is my mistake to give him much money without watching his behaviour.

Vocabulary on Listening

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
boost (v) (ed)	يدفع/يعزز/يحمس	lung (n)	الرئة
brain (n)	المخ	ordinary (adj)	عادى
cell (n)	خلية	organ (n)	عضو فى الجسم
cough (n) (v) (ed)	سعال/كحة/يسعل/يكح	protect (v) (ed)	يحمى
cover (v) (ed)	يغطى	regularly (adv)	بانتظام
explanation (n)	شرح/تفسير	separate (adj) (v) (d)	منفصل/يفصل
immune system (n)	الجهاز المناعى	spend (v)	يقضى
improve (v) (d)	يحسن	virus (n)	فيروس

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

add (v) (ed)	يضيف	persuade (v) (d)	يقنع
advertisement (n)	إعلان	pleasure (n)	سعادة/سرور
behave (v) (d)	يتصرف	remind (v) (ed)	يُذكر
diet (n)	نظام غذائى	simple (adj)	بسيط
flu (n)	الإنفلونزا	support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم/يدعم/يساند
label (n) (v) (led)	ملصق/يضع ملصقًا	toy (n)	لعبة (طفل)
microscope (n)	مجهر (ميكروسكوب)	unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at any time	فى أى وقت	have the flu	يصاب بالإنفلونزا
do the course	يدرس منهجًا تعليميًا	in the first place	فى المقام الأول
find it hard to	يجد من الصعب أن	make notes	يدون ملاحظات
get better	يتحسن	sound perfect	يبدو رائعًا (ممتازًا)
complete .... with	يكمل .... بـ	stay up	يسهر
great at	رائع (عظيم) فى	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
interested in	مهتم بـ	think of/about	يفكر فى
get ill	يصاب بمرض	worried about	قلق عن

Special Collocations

become an expert	يصبح خبيرًا	stay calm	يبقى هادئًا
do first aid	يقوم بالإسعافات الأولية	think fast	يفكر بسرعة
make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ	take a first aid course	يحصل على دورة فى الإسعافات الأولية

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
add*	يضيف	addition additive	إضافة مادة مضافة	additional	إضافى
behave	يتصرف	behaviour	سلوك/تصرف	behavioural	سلوكى
explain	يشرح/يفسر	explanation	شرح/تفسير	explanatory	تفسيرى
immunise	يحصن/يوفر مناعة	immunity	مناعة	immune	منيع/مناعى
improve	يحسن	improvement	تحسن	improved	متحسن
persuade	يقنع	persuasion	إقناع	persuasive	مقنع
support	يدعم/يساند	support supporter	دعم/مساندة داعم	supporting supportive	داعم/مساند داعم

* - He is adding a spoon of sugar.
- This addition is very important to the recipe.
- The additional amount of sugar is enough.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
behave	يتصرف	act/react	misbehave/act up يسيء التصرف
boost	يدفع/يعزز/يحمس	push/improve/support	hinder/decrease يعوق/يقلل
brilliant	بارع/رائع	excellent/magnificent	ordinary/common عادى
improve	يحسن/يتحسن	advance/enhance	decline/deteriorate يتدهور
persuasive	مقنع	convincing	discouraging/unconvincing مثبط/غير مقنع
pleasure	سعادة/سرور	enjoyment/delight	sadness/sorrow حزن/أسى
separate	منفصل	isolated/disconnected	connected/combined متصل
simple	بسيط	plain/easy	complicated معقد
support	دعم	assistance/aid	hindrance/discouragement إعاقة/تثبيط
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	unluckily/sadly	fortunately لحسن الحظ

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I tried hard to .... my elder brother to lend me his laptop, but he refused.
   a) persuade b) attack c) order d) assist
2. The presenter always writes notes to .... himself of the important points he will speak about.
   a) remember b) memorise c) remind d) forget
3. It was a great .... to be invited to the important conference in Alexandria Library.
   a) sorrow b) pleasure c) relaxation d) concentration
4. The college runs language .... for all levels, from beginners to professional ones.
   a) games b) courses c) matches d) trips

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text (1)

Hi, Fares,

How are you?

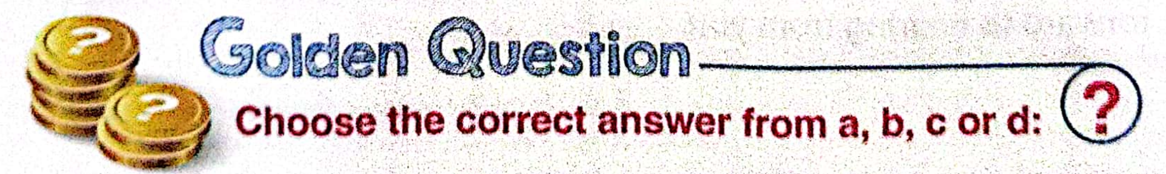
It's great that some of your friends are going to take a first aid course[1] next week! I really think you should join[2] them because everyone has to know how to do first aid. You never know when someone you know will injure themselves and you'll have to help them. You would want other people to help you too, Right?

I'm sure you would be great at doing first aid because you can think fast[3] and you know how to stay calm[4] in difficult situations. You don't have to become an expert[5], just learn enough so you can help someone until the emergency services arrive. The two-day course your friends want to do sounds perfect.

Talk to you soon!

Mahmoud

(1) منهج تعليمي
(2) ينضم/يلتحق بـ
(3) يفكر بسرعة
(4) يبقى هادئًا
(5) يصبح خبيرًا



Golden Question

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The man was arrested and sent to prison as he was the .... behind the robberies.
  a) brains b) reasons c) organs d) causes

Reading Text (2) Workbook

Have you ever sent an email? To whom?





To : healthtoday@mail.com
From : shady@mail.com
Dear Health Today,

My cousins, Imad and Munir, are visiting me again for a few days, and it's always a pleasure[1] to see them. Unfortunately[2], because they are both less than seven years old, they sometimes forget how important it is to keep clean and stay healthy. At the moment, many people in my area have the flu[3] and so these things are even more important than usual. What can I do to persuade[4] my cousins to change how they behave? They often come very close to show me things, like photos they have taken on their phones or something funny that they have found. And when they cough[5], they do not cover their mouths. They don't seem to understand why it is so important and it worries me a lot.

(1) سعادة/سرور
(2) لسوء الحظ
(3) الإنفلونزا
(4) يقنع
(5) يسعل/يكح
(6) يُذكر

I'm also worried when I see them come inside because I don't think that they always wash their hands after they have been playing outside, touching things and getting dirty. They will clean their hands when I ask them, but I always have to remind[6] them to do it.

I have heard that young children don't usually get very sick from flu and so they don't give the flu to older people, but I don't know if that is true. Do you think that I am right to worry?

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours,
Shady

What do you think the immune system's main function is?

Listening Text



Our organs[1] are the parts of our bodies that help us to do things, like the brain[2] that thinks, or the heart that sends blood around our bodies. The immune system[3] comes from the cells[4] and organs that work together to protect[5] us from diseases.

The immune system does this by destroying[6] things that get into our bodies like viruses. A virus [7] is a very, very small thing that causes a disease. The disease could be something ordinary[8], like the kind of cold we all get sometimes, or it could be something serious like COVID-19, which first appeared at the end of 2019.

When a virus gets into a part of the body, a message is sent to the immune system. Then the immune system reacts by sending cells to find the virus. Cells are the smallest, separate[9] living things in our bodies and they are small enough to fight against a disease.

Some people's immune systems work better than other people's. We all want our immune systems to be strong so we can stay healthy, so what can we do to help?

We can boost[10] our immune system by eating a lot of fruit and vegetables, especially vegetables with green leaves. We also need to exercise regularly[11]. We don't have to run 50 kilometres every day, but we need to be as active as possible.

We also need to make sure that we get enough sleep. For most people that means at least seven hours every night. Finally, we must do things like washing our hands regularly, which will help us to avoid getting a virus or an infection in the first place.

We also need to do things like covering[12] our mouths when we cough to stop other people getting an infection or virus.

(1) أعضاء
(2) مخ
(3) الجهاز المناعى
(4) خلايا
(5) يحمى
(6) تدمير
(7) فيروس
(8) عادى
(9) منفصل
(10) يدعم/يعزز
(11) بانتظام
(12) تغطية

How can we boost our immune system to fight diseases?



Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mother is the only person who believes in my abilities and always tries to .... me to be better.
   - a) join
   - b) add
   - c) boost
   - d) discourage

2. Iron is important because we need it to form new blood .... that carry oxygen around the body.
   - a) beings
   - b) cells
   - c) bones
   - d) races

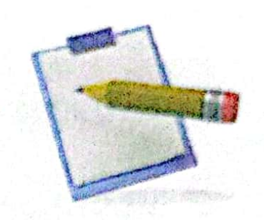
3. Bacteria and .... are too small for the human eye to see.
   - a) viruses
   - b) flies
   - c) tissues
   - d) diseases

4. Doctors can now replace a damaged human .... such as the heart and the kidney.
   - a) member
   - b) organ
   - c) limb
   - d) artery

5. To increase your efficiency at work, it is important to keep work and family life ....
   - a) joint
   - b) strange
   - c) demolished
   - d) separate

Check the answers at the end of the book.

Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

boost — يدفع/يعزز/يحمس
- to help someone or something improve or get better

cell — خلية
- the smallest separate part of a plant or an animal

immune system — الجهاز المناعى
- a way that your body protects you from disease

organ — عضو
- a part of your body that performs a job, the brain or heart

virus — فيروس
- a very small living thing that causes disease

Notes on Vocabulary

Bear in mind that just reading them may help!

1

advertisment إعلان عن منتج أو افتتاح مكان تجارى أو وظيفة	▸ The organisers of the concert had taken out a full page advertisement in the newspaper.
announcement إعلان عن/إذاعة خبر	▸ The minister وزير made an important announcement at a news conference.

2

spend ينفق (مالًا) على	▸ The young boy spends all his pocket money on buying new video games.
spend يقضى الوقت فى شىء أو أداء شىء	▸ Father doesn't have much free time as he spends his time in his office. ▸ Mrs Reda spent all the day preparing for her daughter's birthday party.

لاحظ أن: يأتى (verb + ing) بعد spend.



organ عضو من أعضاء الجسم

- The brain organises the work of other **organs** in your body.

member عضو/فرد في مجموعة كناد أو فريق

- To achieve success, everyone must work as a **member** of a team.



champion بطل رياضي

- Hedaya Malak is an Egyptian **champion** who won an Olympic medal in Taekwondo.

hero بطل في المجتمع أو في قصة أو فيلم أو مسرحية

- The young actor was chosen as the **hero** of the new series about space.

5

boost يعزز/ يزيد (الأرباح أو المبيعات عندما تكون أقل من المطلوب)

- Oil exports **boosted** the economy.

raise يزيد /يرفع (الأسعار/المعايير/المستويات)

- The bank has **raised** interest rates for the third time this year.

increase يزيد /يزداد (عددًا أو كمية أو درجة)

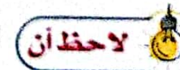
- We need to **increase** the number of police officers on the streets.

expand يوسع /يتسع/ يتمدد

- Metals **expand** when they are heated.



two-day course منهج تعليمي لمدة يومين



استخدام كلمة (two-day) في صيغة المفرد في مثل هذه التعبيرات أي اتباعها باسم (course)

وإذا أردنا الجمع نجمع ما بعدها من أسماء.

two-way streets	شوارع كل منها ذو اتجاهين
ten-minute breaks	فسح/استراحات كل استراحة منها عشر دقائق

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- I really think you should join them because ...

- لاحظ عدم استخدام حرف جر بعد الفعل (join) مثل بعض الأفعال الأخرى التى يتضمن معناها حرف الجر مثل (enjoy - admire).

- You never know when someone you know will injure themselves.

- لاحظ استخدام ضمير الجمع (themselves) عند الإشارة إلى (someone) رغم أن الفعل بعدها يكون فى صيغة المفرد.

- Unfortunately, because they are both less than seven years old, they sometimes forget .....

- غالبًا ما يستخدم الظرف لوصف الفعل ويأتى بعده ولكن إذا بدأت الجملة بالظرف (Unfortunately) يكون وصفًا للجملة بعده.

- I look forward to hearing from you.

- لاحظ استخدام صيغة (verb + ing) بعد (look forward to).

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Al Ahram newspaper is full of .... for cars, especially on Friday.
   a) advertisements b) announcements
   c) advancements d) disappointments
2. You aren't allowed to enter. You are not a/an .... in the club.
   a) part b) individual c) member d) organ
3. My grandfather used to spend most of the afternoon .... to songs by Om Kolthoum.
   a) listen b) listened c) listens d) listening
4. We all wanted to do the .... course to learn about gardening.
   a) two-week b) two-weeks c) two-week's d) two weeks'
5. The soldiers who fight for their countries should be honoured as real ....
   a) champions b) heroes c) actors d) organs

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.



Vocabulary Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 The patient's white blood .... count is low, so he/she needs immediate treatment.
a) organ b) molecule c) cell d) atom

2 The little child inhaled استنشق the smoke and started .... badly.
a) coughing b) training c) smiling d) smelling

3 All charitable organisations count on the .... of people to help the poor.
a) support b) risk c) neglect d) disagreement

4 The evidence was not .... enough for the judge to condemn يدين the accused man.
a) affecting b) supporting c) persuasive d) moving

5 People can fight infection more easily if they have a healthy .... and lifestyle.
a) order b) right c) fight d) diet

6 The mother was embarrassed because her children .... very badly in the party.
a) treated b) behaved c) punished d) rewarded

7 Before the plane takes off, the passengers are .... that smoking is not allowed on the plane.
a) reminded b) remembered c) mentioned d) applauded

8 The .... why I like my job is that I meet all kinds of people.
a) reason b) explanation c) purpose d) cause

9 The article discusses a number of ways people can .... their immune systems to fight diseases.
a) increase b) prove c) raise d) boost

10 It would be difficult to .... him to leave his job for a new one.
a) persuade b) make c) let d) employ

11 The .... which Ola made was not very serious. So, she was not punished by her teacher.
a) achievement b) course c) favour d) mistake

12 All Egyptian squash champions are sorry that their game is not included in the .... Games.
a) Athletic b) Olympic c) Advanced d) Competitive

13 I want to .... my English so that I can get a job in the multi-national petroleum company working in Egypt.
a) increase b) improve c) rise d) train

14 The .... system is the system by which your body protects itself against disease.
a) digestive b) immune c) respiratory d) nerve

15 Everyone was pleased when they heard the .... of the minister about the rise in workers' wages.
a) announcement
b) advertisement
c) summary
d) option

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

16 Students who aren't hard workers are always worried .... exams.
a) about b) for c) with d) in

17 Mona read the whole research and .... notes of the main points.
a) did b) made c) performed d) acted

18 Please, read the .... notes at the front of the book. They will help you a lot.
a) explain b) explanation c) explanatory d) explained

19 The manager wouldn't give you the job in the first .... if he didn't think you could do it.
a) place b) location c) position d) area

20 He can only walk with the assistance of crutches عكاز. The word "assistance" is similar in meaning to the word ....
a) export b) import c) report d) support

21 You shouldn't try to .... first aid to anyone unless you are trained well.
a) make b) devise c) do d) explore

22 The air hostess asked the passengers not to leave their seats and .... calm.
a) behave b) remind c) sleep d) stay

23 We have made an important .... to our fashion collection recently.
a) add b) addition c) additional d) added

24 The high cost of the drug can hinder its use. The word "hinder" can be the opposite of the word "..................".
a) add b) join c) boost d) separate

25 My parents refused to let me go out because my reasons were not persuasive to them. The synonym of the word "persuasive" is "..................".
a) convincing b) argumentative c) tricky d) discouraging

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 The meal which we had at the new restaurant was delicious and absolutely ....
a) terrible b) perfect c) brilliant d) awful e) strange

27 The company needs to find ways to .... the level of confidence of its staff.
a) boost b) defect c) damage d) improve e) affect

28 Father smiled with pleasure when mother walked in. The antonyms of the word "pleasure" are ....
a) enjoyment b) happiness c) sadness d) delight e) sorrow

29 My little daughter .... ill after eating a bad meal at the restaurant.
a) cured b) did c) became d) got e) made

30 I lay awake in bed for hours thinking .... the trip I am going on the next day.
a) for b) at c) in d) about e) of





Lessons 3 & 4

B Language

Necessity/lack of necessity/prohibition (Extra points)

- نستخدم need للضرورة وهى أكثر أدبًا من must أو have to وتُستخدم كفعل أساسى، ويأتى بعدها to ثم المصدر وتأخذ s مع He/ She/ It وفى السؤال تسبق بـ does/do وتستخدم أيضًا كـ modal verb فى السؤال والنفى ليس بعدها to.

need/ needs

Main verb

Affirmative الإثبات
- I need to buy the newspaper today.
- He needs to buy the newspaper today.

Negative النفى
- I don't need to buy the newspaper today.
- He doesn't need to buy the newspaper today.

Questions السؤال
- Do you need to buy the newspaper today?
- Does he need to buy the newspaper today?

Model verb

Questions السؤال
- Need I book a room in advance?

Negative النفى
- You needn't give me a lift home.

+ v.ing

Something + need(s) + v.ing
- Your car needs repairing. = needs to be repaired.

must/ mustn't

must

Strong advice نصيحة قوية
- You must wash your hands before you eat.

A warm invitation دعوة حارة
- You must come and see us at the weekend.

A strong reminder تذكرة قوية
- We must always remember that tourism is important.

mustn't

Prohibition المنع والحظر والتحريم
- You mustn't drive fast on this road. The maximum speed limit is 60 k/h.

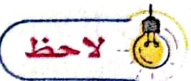
A strong negative advice للنصيحة القوية المنفية
- You mustn't play football in the flat. You may break something.

Must and have to are equal متساويان

You can use must or have to to give your own opinion (to say what you think is necessary, or to recommend someone to do something):

نستخدم must أو have to لإبداء الرأى وما نراه ضروريًا أو نوصى شخصًا بفعل شيء.

- It's later than I thought. I must go. / I have to go.
- I haven't spoken to Noha for ages. I must phone her. / I have to phone her. (I say this is necessary).
- Samir is a really nice person. You must meet him. You have to meet him. (I recommend this).



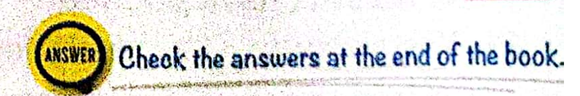
It's a must = It's necessary. تعبير يفيد الضرورة

- You have to prepare yourself well for the next match. It's a must.

Let's check our understanding!

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You .... train harder. The final match is next week.
   a) mustn't b) don't have to
   c) must d) can't
2. You .... waste too much time watching TV.
   a) mustn't b) have to
   c) can't d) must
3. Yasmin .... be careful with what she eats because she has diabetes.
   a) needn't b) could
   c) shouldn't d) needs to
4. You .... take a taxi to the station. I'll give you a lift.
   a) mustn't b) can't
   c) needn't d) had to
5. **Son:** The concert is next week. .... the tickets today?
   Mother: Yes, right now.
   a) Have I to buy b) Need I buy
   c) Do I must buy d) Need I to buy





Language Exercises

emembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I can go with you to the cinema tonight as I .... hand over the homework tomorrow.
a) have to b) should c) don't need to d) had to

2 You .... be late. It's the most important meeting of the year.
a) mustn't b) have to c) don't have to d) must

3 If you want to be a professional player, you .... practise every day.
a) mustn't b) didn't have to c) had to d) have to

4 You .... buy that book. You can borrow mine.
a) mustn't b) needn't c) shouldn't d) can't

5 You .... speak so loudly on your mobile phone. It's very annoying.
a) needn't b) should c) don't have to d) mustn't

6 My car didn't start yesterday, so I .... get a bus.
a) have to b) had to c) need to d) must

7 We .... leave now as somebody else needs this room.
a) have got to b) needn't c) don't have to d) can't

8 In some countries, children .... wear school uniforms.
a) has to b) mustn't
c) don't need to d) doesn't need to

9 We .... get ready now. The train leaves in five minutes.
a) needn't b) need to c) don't need to d) shouldn't

10 There's no hurry. You .... finish that report until Friday of next week.
a) must b) have to c) don't have to d) mustn't

11 You .... walk up the hill because there's a bus.
a) don't have to b) must c) mustn't d) have to

12 Athletes .... get a special heart examination; it is safer to do this.
a) mustn't b) must c) don't have to d) didn't have to

13 As you've already phoned Mona, I .... her myself.
a) didn't have to phone b) needn't phone
c) mustn't have phoned d) had to phone

14 Yesterday, I .... work for 12 hours to finish the task.
a) had to b) have to c) will have to d) must

15 You .... drive fast in the city centre. It's very dangerous.

a) must b) mustn't c) don't have to d) have to

16 We .... buy souvenirs for our friends while we're here.

a) mustn't b) had to c) must d) didn't have to

17 **A:** Does Ahmed .... study very much tonight? **B:** No, he doesn't.

a) have to b) must c) has to d) allowed to

18 If you take a sick leave اجازة مرضي for three days, you .... bring in a doctor's note or you won't get paid.

a) have to b) can c) should d) are allowed to

19 The sign says, "No parking". That means you ....

a) shouldn't have to leave your car here b) mustn't to leave your car here

c) cannot leave your car here d) cannot be leaving your car here

20 Do you know if we .... have visas to visit Jordan?

a) don't need b) needn't c) have to d) need

21 We didn't have a test today so I .... for it last night! إدارة غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٢

a) needn't revise b) don't need to revise

c) mustn't revise d) needn't have revised

22 I got up early this morning without necessity. I .... الباجور - المتوفية ٢٠٢٢

a) had to get up early b) didn't need get up early

c) needn't have got up early d) needn't get up early

23 You must come to my wedding party. The underlined verb expresses .... إدارة الفيوم التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) invitation b) suggestion c) offer d) necessity

24 I .... go to a specialist hospital because I had a heart attack. الزقازيق - الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

a) have to b) must c) had to d) didn't have to

25 Teachers .... wear suits for work, but their clothes must be neat and clean. إدارة أوسيم التعليمية - الجيزة ٢٠٢٢

a) have to b) don't have to

c) doesn't have to d) has to

26 You have to see the headteacher at 3 o'clock. It has the same meaning as "................".

a) You could see the headteacher at 3 o'clock

b) It's necessary for you to see the headteacher at 3 o'clock

c) You needn't have seen the headteacher at 3 o'clock

d) You aren't allowed to see the headteacher at 3 o'clock

27 One of the following expresses a lack of necessity.
You .... go there with me. I can handle it; it's not difficult.

a) must
b) mustn't
c) needn't
d) had better

28 One of the following answers is incorrect.
He didn't go to the park with us yesterday because he .... a report.

a) needn't have written
b) was obliged to write
c) had to write
d) needed to write

29 Strong necessity is expressed in one of the following sentences.

a) We can't go away! We must help him! الضرورة القوية!
b) You are allowed to borrow more than two books at a time.
c) She needn't buy more oil. There is enough.
d) They didn't have to buy another flat. Theirs was large.

30 You're not supposed to park your car here. ....

a) It's a public parking only
b) It is necessary
c) It is forbidden
d) It is permitted

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

31 .... immigrate and leave your family alone without a breadwinner عائل?

a) Do you need to
b) Need you
c) Need you to
d) You needn't
e) You need to

32 It's .... for every student to study hard and get high marks.

a) optional
b) forbidden
c) allowed
d) a must
e) necessary

33 "It isn't necessary for us to leave soon." means: we .... soon.

a) didn't need to leave
b) needn't have left
c) don't need to leave
d) needn't leave
e) have to leave

34 The curtains are dirty. They ....

a) mustn't be dry-cleaned
b) have to be dry-cleaned
c) must be dry-cleaned
e) have just been dry-cleaned
d) must have been dry-cleaned

35 .... to see a doctor. You're perfectly healthy.

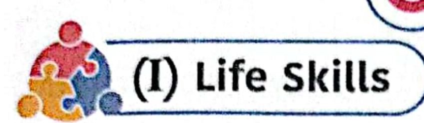
a) You mustn't
b) It isn't necessary
c) You don't need
d) You have
e) You needn't





Lessons 3 & 4

C Communication Skills



(I) Life Skills

Asking for help and advice	Responding to advice
- I feel very hot and tired, what should I do?	- You should go to hospital immediately.
- My little brother has cut his finger, could you help me do first aid?	- Of course, I will come to see him now.
- Do you mind calling the ambulance, please?	- No problem. I will call now.
- If I know somebody who is infected by coronavirus, what shall I do?	- You must stay away from him. Call 105. Tell all those who mixed with them to be very careful.



(II) Writing




Think of something that might help to be healthier. Make notes on three persuasive reasons why your friend should do this.

Tips for writing the email

Introduction	What do you think can help you to be healthier? State briefly how this can help you.
Main body (1)	What is the first reason for your choice? Explain it in detail to try to convince your friend.
Main body (2)	What is the second reason for your choice? Explain it in detail to try to convince your friend.
Conclusion	How can your friend benefit from your advice? Conclude and clear your point of view briefly.

To : yasser100@mail.com

From: medhat100@mail.com

Dear Yasser,

Fitness and health seem to be the same for everyone, but they have two different meanings. Fitness is the physical ability to perform work, sports, etc. While health is a condition in which the body should have resistance capacity to all illnesses and all parts of the body should work well without any problem. Your body should possess both fitness as well as health.

Health can be maintained by a proper diet, exercise, and hygiene. To keep your body healthy, you need to do proper exercise. Usually, sportspeople have a fit body. They shape their body in such a way that it will be fit for their sport. But, coming to a healthy body is just a matter of controlling weight and making your body immune to diseases.

For a healthy and fit body, walking is very good exercise which helps in burning the excess fat in your body. A fit body doesn't mean that it should look good from outside. A fit and healthy body should be physically active and energetic and smart enough to accept any tasks given to them.

Due to more demand for a fit and healthy body, many gyms and workout centres are opened. To maintain a healthy and fit body, this requires self-control and will power. Many factors can divert us from achieving our goal of having a fit and healthy body. But, try to focus on it to achieve your health as all know "Health is wealth".

Look forward to hearing from you.

Yours,

Medhat

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My sister couldn't go out with us as she .... the flu and was staying in bed.
a) did b) had c) made d) felt

2 The surgeon performed an emergency operation because he/she knew how serious the .... was.
a) location b) occasion c) situation d) site

3 It is hoped that the wounded soldier will .... better soon.
a) carry b) go c) get d) fall

4 Working in this luxurious hotel really sounds .... for a fresh graduate.
a) worse b) terrible c) perfect d) vague

5 The liver الكبد is an extremely complex .... which needs special care.
a) member b) organ c) individual d) place

6 Karam Gaber is a former Olympic wrestling .... who won a gold medal in 2004.
a) hero b) partner c) champion d) trainee

7 I'm taking a .... in graphic design because I have a good job opportunity.
a) system b) syllabus c) course d) centre

8 The receptionist asked me to complete the form .... my personal data.
a) with b) over c) on d) in

9 You .... get off the bus before it stops. It's dangerous.
a) shouldn't b) oughtn't to c) can d) mustn't

10 They .... to come early. They can come whenever they're ready.
a) don't need b) needn't c) have d) didn't have

11 You .... come to see us at the weekend. We miss you very much.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) needn't d) must

12 Omar .... finish the report quickly because the deadline is today at 4 pm.
a) had to b) needn't c) has got to d) have to

13 Marwa .... email her homework to her teacher because she forgot to take it to class yesterday.
a) doesn't have to b) have to c) had to d) needn't

14 A: Does Ramy .... study very much tonight?
B: No, he doesn't. He reviewed a lot last night and he understood everything well.
a) has to b) have to c) must d) needs to

15 Judy .... go to the supermarket because she doesn't have enough food for dinner.
a) needn't b) have to c) has to d) mustn't

16 **Ahmed :** .... pay to see the doctor?

Amr : No, she .... because she has medical insurance.

a) Does your sister have to/doesn't

b) Do your sister have to/don't

c) Must your sister/mustn't

d) Is it necessary for your sister to/isn't

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

"Don't eat just before going to bed!" My mother used to tell me. "You might get a nightmare[1]." I never believed her until it happened to me. It was on a night when I felt hungry just as I was about to go to bed. So, I made myself a peanut-butter sandwich and a large cold glass of milk. After consuming[2] them, I went to bed.

Soon I drifted[3] off into a troubled sleep. I dreamt that I was with a group of people looking for an old woman. I was not sure why we were looking for her, but we all seemed afraid of her. Somehow[4] we had to find her. So there I was, searching high and low for her in frightful places I had never been before. Sometimes I seemed to be flying while at other times I seemed unable to move. The whole atmosphere was like a dreadful[5] horror movie.

After some searching, I entered a darkened room and saw a figure sleeping on a bed. As I got nearer, the figure suddenly threw away the blanket, got up, and stared at me. It was an ugly old woman with shiny golden teeth. She raised her claw-like fingers and walked towards me.

I wanted to run but was unable to. I tried to scream but found that I could not. In horror, I struggled and struggled to get away from the frightful woman.

The next moment I gave a muffled yell and found myself panting[6] on my bed. My goodness[7], what a horrible nightmare it was! For a minute or so I lay on my bed not daring to close my eyes for fear of falling asleep again and continuing the nightmare. From then on I never eat just before going to sleep.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The writer's mother warned him not to ....

a) eat before going to sleep

b) go with a group of people anywhere

c) search for the old woman

d) scream on facing dangers



(1) كابوس (2) يستهلك/يلتهم (3) يبدأ النوم (4) بطريقة ما (5) مريع/فظيع (6) يلهث (7) تعبير للدهشة والتعجب

2 The result of a peanut-butter sandwich and a large cold glass of milk was a/an ....
a) high bill
b) nightmare
c) attack from an old woman
d) mother's anger from her son

3 The synonym of the word "muffled" is a ....
a) loud speech
b) loud voice
c) very pure sound
d) quiet and less clear sound

4 The best title to the passage is "................".
a) Nightmares
b) Mothers' experiences
c) Much eating and good sleep
d) An adventure during the night

5 The boy was looking for the old woman although ....
a) she was cute
b) she was scared
c) he was afraid of her
d) he couldn't know her place

6 According to the passage, the nightmare ....
a) happens when people sleep
b) is a bad scary dream
c) refers to real life
d) happens to hungry people

7 The boy didn't want to close his eyes ....
a) because he was tired
b) so that he could see the rest of the nightmare
c) because they were sore
d) because he fears that he might see the nightmare again

8 The writer decided that he ....
a) would never eat just before sleeping
b) wouldn't listen to his mum's words
c) would do sports before sleeping
d) wouldn't talk to old women anymore

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. The best way to combat[1] viruses and bacteria is to boost your immune system. This can be done in simple ways such as a healthy diet and good exercise.

....

....

2. The main purpose of education is the integral[2] development of the student. It also aims at preparing generations of scientists able to face the challenges of the future.

....

....

3. School plays an important role[3] in teaching young people the values of discipline[4], hard work, and teamwork[5]. These are best acquired at an early age.

....

....

4. Writers are all affected by the experiences they have in their life and the problems they face. Their works are the mirror of their age.

....

....

5. Unemployment[6] and illiteracy[7] are two major causes that lead to crimes[8] and violence. That's why we all should try to fight them.

....

....

6. Smart people are not those who can work for 16 hours a day, but those who can balance between their work and their personal life.

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- يتضمن إصلاح[٩] التعليم طرقًا جديدة لدمج[١٠] الطلاب ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة مع زملائهم بنفس المناهج[١١] التعليمية، مما يساعدهم على الاندماج فى المجتمع بشكل أفضل.

....

....

٢- يهدف[١٢] التعليم إلى تنمية مهارات الطلاب وإعدادهم لتلبية سوق العمل فى ظل التطور التكنولوجى المتزايد، وهذا أدى إلى إنشاء مدارس وكليات[١٣] جديدة فى السنوات القليلة الأخيرة.

....

....

٣- يعد تلوث الهواء من أخطر القضايا التى يجب أن يتناولها المسئولون عن البيئة، وهو يعتبر نتيجة لظهور عدد كبير من المصانع.

....

....

٤- مع أزمة فيروس كورونا برزت أهمية التعليم عبر الإنترنت[١٤]؛ حيث أصبح الحل الوحيد لإكمال الطلاب تعليمهم بعد غلق المدارس والجامعات فى كثير من دول العالم.

....

....

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"Your friend has gained much weight and you want to advise him about the best ways to lose weight."

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. — I used the right structure. — I used a topic sentence. — I wrote the conclusion. — I used the right punctuation.

(1) يكلف
(2) متكامل
(3) دور
(4) إنضباط
(5) عمل جماعى
(6) البطالة
(7) الأمية
(8) جرائم
(9) reform
(10) combine
(11) curricula
(12) aim
(13) faculties
(14) online education



King Lear
Act I, Scene i

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

act (n)	فصل (فى مسرحية)	honest (adj)	صادق
actions (n)	إجراءات/أفعال	kingdom (n)	مملكة
answer (n)	إجابة/رد	majesty (n)	جلالة/فخامة
beauty (n)	جمال	marry (v) (y-ied)	يتزوج
call (v) (ed)	ينادى على	power (n)	قوة/سلطة
countryside (n)	ريف	promise (v) (d)	يعد
cruel (adj)	قاسٍ	queen (n)	ملكة
duke (n)	دوق (لقب نبيل)	riches (n)	ثروات
duty (n)	مهمة/واجب	scene (n)	مشهد (فى مسرحية)
expect (v) (ed)	يتوقع	sir (n)	سيد
feelings (n)	مشاعر	speech (n)	خطاب
fine (adj)	محترم	stranger (n)	شخص غريب
foolish (adj)	أحمق	sword (n)	سيف
forest (n)	غابة	third (n)	ثلث
hate (adj)	يكره	title (n)	لقب

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

give ... advice	يعطى ... نصيحة	put ... into words	يعبر عن ... بالكلمات
make ... happy	يجعل ... سعيدًا	say goodbye to	يودع
divide ... into	يقسم ... إلى	give away	يهب/يتبرع/يتخلى عن
give to	يعطى لـ	shout about	يصيح بشأن/يصرح بـ



King Lear Exercises
Act I, Scene i

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The United ...., England, is actually ruled by the Prime Minister, not the Queen.
a) Republic b) Kingdom c) Council d) Empire

2 The judge asked the lawyer a simple question and he gave a long and confusing ....
a) quiz b) puzzle c) riddle d) answer

3 After Al Qanater, the River Nile .... into two channels, Damietta and Rosetta.
a) divides b) shares c) spares d) unifies

4 The divers were impressed by the .... of the coral reefs.
a) ugliness b) wealth c) beauty d) position

5 The hopes of the future .... draws many young people into professional sports, especially football.
a) struggle b) affection c) poverty d) riches

6 The discount is a .... to a half of the full price during Black Friday.
a) once b) third c) twice d) share

7 A wife has a/an .... to her husband and to her children.
a) duty b) invention c) mission d) work

8 The duke inherited the .... from his father.
a) location b) address c) title d) state

9 The young man gave .... most of his old clothes to charity.
a) away b) off c) in d) for

10 A .... is a weapon with a short handle and a long sharp blade.
a) gun b) sword c) canon d) stick

11 My friends Amany and Adel are planning to .... next month and invite all their friends to the wedding.
a) separate b) engage c) meet d) marry

12 Hitler was known to be a .... dictator.
a) merciful b) simple c) cruel d) humble

13 It was a very .... thing to leave my old job in these hard times.
a) persuasive b) innovative c) smart d) foolish

14 My parents always advise me to be .... and avoid lies.
a) vague b) honest c) tricky d) blushing

15 My uncle .... to buy his son a new bicycle on passing his exams.
a) promised b) expected c) graduated d) puzzled

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You should wash the dress in cold water so the colours don't ....
a) match b) bleed c) raise d) add

2 If you keep on lifting those heavy weights, you'll do yourself a/an ....
a) attention b) benefit c) injury d) loss

3 The Americans established a naval .... on the Japanese island in the 1950s.
a) space b) table c) column d) base

4 El Maraei is a leading manufacturer of .... dairy products.
a) label b) origin c) source d) publicity

5 Our old neighbour .... her husband by ten years.
a) attached b) deceased c) survived d) divorced

6 Nowadays, many young people .... against traditional values.
a) refer b) reject c) react d) reform

7 Our prep school headmistress was a .... woman who rarely smiled.
a) severe b) dangerous c) creative d) collaborative

8 It will take about an hour to get there, ... for traffic delays.
a) allow b) allowing c) allowed d) allowance

9 The students learned how to calculate the .... of a triangle.
a) region b) distance c) district d) area

10 She gives the impression of being rather conventional, but under the .... she is creative.
a) roof b) well c) surface d) wall

11 Meeting Sally changed the whole .... of Samy's life. They are a successful couple.
a) road b) course c) technique d) coarse

12 The magazine functions as the official .... of the fashion industry.
a) part b) member c) player d) organ

13 According to law, no one is .... from legal punishment.
a) immune b) protective c) supporting d) allowed

14 The young man spent a night in a prison .... because of driving without a licence.
a) house b) cell c) organ d) box

15 I decided to go on a .... before my holiday to look smarter on the beach.
a) trip b) business c) deal d) diet

16 We had a party last night .... spend all morning cleaning up the mess.

a) I must have b) I've been to c) I've had to d) I need

17 I have lost my keys. I ought .... them in a safe place.

a) that I put b) to have put c) to be putting d) to put

18 There was no one else in the post office. I .... in a queue.

a) didn't need to wait b) needn't wait

c) mustn't wait d) needn't have waited

19 Dina .... have been at school yesterday. The list of the absentees didn't include her name.

a) must b) can't c) needn't d) mustn't

20 I'm taking the umbrella. It .... rain.

a) should b) must c) may d) has to

21 You mustn't take photos near military places. This means that ....

a) you can't b) you are allowed c) it's unnecessary d) it isn't good

22 **A:** .... he finish the report before 10 pm.?

B: No, he needn't. The boss hasn't asked for it yet.

a) Mustn't b) Need c) Does d) Needs

23 You mustn't ride a bicycle in this park. It's ....

a) necessary b) inadvisable c) not allowed d) unnecessary

24 It's a .... for all of us to protect the country from any danger.

a) necessary b) has to c) importance d) must

25 That's a bridge nobody .... cross. It's about to collapse.

a) must b) have to c) must not d) were to

26 We .... to meet at the theatre entrance at eight yesterday.

a) are b) were c) have d) must

27 One of the following gives the synonym of the modal verb "must".

a) I might be wrong. b) You can say something.

c) He is to study hard. d) He needs a dictionary.

28 I wish we .... stop at the next traffic light. We have a little time to be at school.

a) don't have to b) had to c) can't d) didn't have to

29 I see that your shoes .... Have your son clean them.

a) need to polish b) need polishing

c) needn't be polished d) must polish

30 You look tired. .... for you to go shopping?

a) Is it a necessity b) It is necessary

c) Is it necessity d) Must



Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 The young singer .... a throat infection which meant she couldn't sing at yesterday's concert.

a) got b) made c) did d) damaged e) had

2 The new trainer of the national tennis team has promised to make an Olympic .... of the young player .

a) coach b) athlete c) referee d) champion e) judge

3 The accident victim was taken to hospital as his injuries were quite severe. The antonyms of the word"severe" are ....

a) acute b) gentle c) harsh d) violent e) mild

4 The boy thankfully gave his mother her birthday present which he wrapped .... fine golden paper.

a) about b) for c) in d) with e) of

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5 As she is very sick, Mona taught her children to call the .... services if something bad happened to her.

a) accuracy b) infection c) emergency d) inquiry

6 The new factory placed a/an .... in the local paper asking for a sales manager.

a) situation b) advertisement
c) experience d) behaviour

7 A/An .... computer can be used to send out spam emails or attack other computers without your knowledge.

a) infected b) broken c) damaged d) immune

8 Some college students choose to .... their course after the first year at a certain department.

a) make b) run c) change d) take

9 She .... home yesterday because her little son was sick.

a) needn't stay b) had to stay
c) needn't have stayed d) didn't have to stay

10 You .... ride a bicycle in this park. It's forbidden.

a) mustn't b) needn't c) don't have to d) aren't allowed

11 Is it .... for us to send the research as an email attachment, sir?

a) necessary b) must c) have to d) need to

12 Before you buy a house, you .... consider all the costs.

a) needn't b) have got c) don't have to d) need to

13 Fahmy is not here. He .... leave early.

a) must b) had to c) has to d) needs to

14 I .... to look my best as I'm going to have a job interview.

a) should b) must c) need d) needn't

15 It's late and the baby is asleep. You .... make so much noise.

a) must b) mustn't c) needn't d) have to

16 I .... finish this essay today. It has to be handed in by tomorrow.

a) had to b) don't have to c) mustn't d) must

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Obesity (being very fat) is one of the greatest public health challenges of the 21st century. Its prevalence has tripled in many countries of the World Health Organisation since the 1980s, and the numbers of those affected continue to rise at an alarming rate. In addition to causing various physical disabilities and psychological problems, excess weight drastically increases a person's risk of developing a number of non-communicable diseases, including cardiovascular disease, cancer and diabetes.

Obesity is a condition that is associated with having an excess amount of body fat, defined by genetic and environmental factors that are difficult to control when dieting. Obesity is classified as having a Body Mass Index (BMI) of 30 or greater. BMI is a tool used to measure obesity.

There are many causes that directly and indirectly contribute to obesity. Behaviour, environment and genetics are among the main contributors to obesity. The Centres for Disease Control has identified these three as the main causes of the complexity of the obesity epidemic.

In today's fast-paced environment, it is easy to adopt unhealthy behaviours. Behaviour, in the case of obesity, relates to food choices, the amount of physical activity you get and the effort to maintain your health.

Environment plays a key role in shaping an individual's habits and lifestyle. There are many environmental influences that can impact your health decisions. Today's society has developed a more sedentary lifestyle. Walking has been replaced by driving cars, physical activity has been replaced by technology and nutrition has been overcome by convenience foods.

Science shows that genetics plays a role in obesity. Genes can cause certain disorders which result in obesity. However, not all individuals who are predisposed to obesity become affected by obesity. Research is currently underway to determine which genes contribute most to obesity.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The main idea of the passage is ....

a) the dangers of obesity in the poor countries
b) how can the rich countries solve the problem of obesity
c) the advantages and disadvantages of obesity
d) obesity and our health

18 Obesity has increased .... since the 1980s in many European countries.

a) three times b) twice
c) four times d) once

19 Which of the following ideas is not mentioned in the passage?

a) Food choices and the amount of physical activity are causes of obesity.
b) Obesity affects the level of intelligence of all people.
c) Sedentary lifestyle is one of the causes of obesity.
d) Scientists don't know which genes are responsible for obesity.

20 What does the underlined word "epidemic" mean?

a) Decrease. b) Control.
c) Health. d) Outbreak.

21 According to the passage, behaviour is .... obesity.

a) not a cause for b) a minor cause for
c) a major cause for d) one of the steps to stop

22 The problem of obesity is that it ....

a) causes many health problems
b) makes the person very big
c) causes the prices to rise
d) needs special clothes

23 Obesity is classified when a person's BMI is ....

a) below thirty
b) thirty or more
c) double thirty
d) not thirty

24 Scientifically, ... is/are responsible for obesity.

a) food
b) environment
c) diseases
d) genes

25 **Translate into English:**

- القراءة هواية مفيدة جدًا لأنها تحفز عقلك، ويقول الخبراء إن لها تأثيرًا مهدئا، ويمكن أن تخفض مستويات الإجهاد وتساعدك على الاسترخاء، فضلًا عن كونها تُـثرى ثقافتك.

....

....

26 **Translate into Arabic:**

Spare time can be useful if it is employed for developing one's character physically and mentally. So we should all realise its importance and try to make the best use of it.

....

....

27 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:**

"How to protect your environment and preserve it for future generations."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

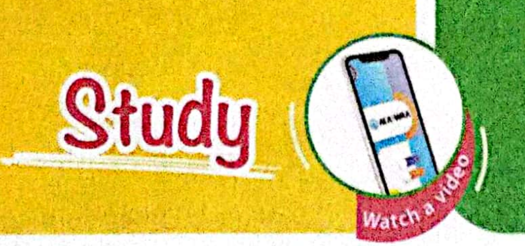
Unit 2



Eating around the world

Objectives

- **Reading** : An excerpt from Old Jo's Scrap-Bag. An Old-fashioned Thanksgiving by Louisa M. Alcott; Two articles about ways of eating around the world
- **Writing** : A questionnaire
- **Listening** : Descriptions of international meals
- **Speaking** : Comparative and superlative adjectives
- **Language** : Communicating opinions and beliefs
- **Life Skills** : Critical thinking; Respect for diversity; Negotiation





Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

amount (n)	مقدار/كمية	occasion (n)	مناسبة
celebrate (v) (d)	يحتفل بـ	prepare (v) (d)	يعد/يجهز
eat out (v)*	يأكل بالخارج	serve (v) (d)	يخدم/يقدم طعامًا
get together (v)	يتجمع/يتقابل	traditional (adj)	تقليدى

* Mum cooked nothing; we're going to eat out today.

Vocabulary on Reading

arrive (v) (d)	يصل	native (adj)	أصلى
customer (n)	زبون/عميل	old-fashioned (adj)	ذو طراز قديم
decide (v) (d)	يقرر	passenger (n)	راكب/مسافر
dessert (n)	تحلية (بعد الطعام)	quantity (n)	كمية
event (n)	حدث	special (adj)	خاص
expect (v) (ed)	يتوقع	surprised (adj)	مندهش
extract (n) (v) (ed)	مقتبس/يقتبس/يستخلص	Thanksgiving (n)	عيد الشكر
feed (v)	يُطعم/يغذى	turkey (n)	ديك رومى
fun (n)	مرح	wake (v)	يوقظ/يستيقظ
gather (v) (ed)	يتجمع/يجمع	whatever	مهما/أيًا كان

Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

chips (n)	شيبسى (شرائح البطاطس)
cornbread (n)	خبز الذرة
curious (adj)	فضولى
Europe (n)	أوروبا
festival (n)	مهرجان
fry (v) (y ied)	يقلى
noodles (n)	شرائح المكرونة
oyster (n)	محار
popular (adj)	محبوب/مشهور
prawn (n)	جمبرى

pumpkin pie (n)	فطيرة اليقطين (القرع العسلى)
rare (adj)	نادر
recent (adj)	حديث
roast lamb (n)	لحم ضأن مشوى
roasted (adj)	مشوى
shellfish (n)	المحار
spicy (adj)	حار (بالتوابل)
sweet potatoes (n)	البطاطا
takeaway (n)	طعام جاهز

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

curry (n)	كارى (بهار هندى)
exist (v) (ed)	يوجد
grapes (n)	عنب
herring (n)	سمك الرنجة
Indonesian (adj)	إندونيسى
jar (n)	إناء/برطمان
menu (n)	قائمة طعام

nut (n)	بندق
seafood (n)	مأكولات بحرية
smell (n) (v) (ed)	رائحة/يشم
taste (n) (v) (d)	مذاق/يتذوق
the countryside (n)	الريف
whale (n)	حوت/لحم الحوت

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

around the country	فى كل أنحاء البلد	fall asleep	ينام فجأة
at least	على الأقل	for example	على سبيل المثال
catch up	يجارى/يعرف أحوال	get ... ready	يجهز/يعد ...
by that time	بحلول ذلك الوقت	have a meal	يتناول وجبة
amount of	كمية من	take place	يحدث
keep out of	يبتعد عن	tell ... about	يخبر ... عن
look after	يعتنى بـ	travel to	يسافر إلى
(be) made from	مصنوع من	wait for	ينتظر

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
arrive	يصل	arrival	وصول	arriving	قادم
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	celebration	احتفال	celebratory	احتفالى
decide*	يقرر	decision	قرار	decisive	حاسم
exist	يوجد/يتواجد	existence	وجود	existing	موجود
expect	يتوقع	expectation	توقع	expected	متوقع
popularise	يعمم	popularity	شهرة	popular	محبوب/مشهور
prepare	يجهز	preparation	إعداد	prepared	معد/جاهز
serve	يخدم	service servant	خدمة خادم	serving	خادم
wake	يوقظ/يستيقظ	waking	الاستيقاظ	awake	مستيقظ

* - They decided to leave now.
- Their decision was made carefully.
- They took decisive actions to face the problems.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	honour	ignore يتجاهل
exist	يوجد	live/remain	depart/cease يغادر/يتوقف
fun	مرح	amusement/enjoyment	sorrow/sadness أسى
gather	يتجمع	collect	separate/scatter يفصل
old-fashioned	ذو طراز قديم	outdated/old	fashionable/modern ذو طراز حديث
popular	محبوب	attractive/famous	unpopular/unknown غير محبوب/غير معروف
probably	من المحتمل	possibly/likely	unlikely/improbably من غير المحتمل
rare	نادر	scarce/unique	common/ordinary شائع/عادى
surprised	مندهش	astonished/amazed	unsurprised/poised غير مندهش
traditional	تقليدى	conventional/classical	modern/new حديث
welcome	يرحب بـ	greet/entertain	exclude/deny يستبعد/يستنكر

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Computers are very useful as they can store a vast .... of information.
   a) account **b)** quality **c)** number **d)** amount
2. The two brothers have just finished their exams and have gone out to ....
   a) celebrate **b)** reward **c)** expect **d)** report
3. My grandfather's house was built in a/an .... style as he doesn't like modern ones.
   a) updated **b)** technological **c)** inventive **d)** traditional
4. The .... complained that he still hadn't received the book he had ordered several weeks ago.
   a) customer **b)** producer **c)** servant **d)** seller
5. My brother doesn't like wearing suits; he only wears them on formal ....
   a) accidents **b)** occasions **c)** actions **d)** experiences

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text (1)

Mention two Egyptian celebrations that include specially prepared foods.

An Old-Fashioned Thanksgiving



In September 1620, a ship called *the Mayflower* arrived in North America with 102 passengers.

Many died, but some were able to grow food and survive with help from Native Americans.



Thanksgiving is a day when families get together[1] to remember these events. It is celebrated[2] in the USA every year on the fourth Thursday in November.

In 1882, Louisa M. Alcott wrote a short story called *An Old-fashioned Thanksgiving*. Here is an extract:

When they woke, there was still a large amount[3] of snow outside. Tilly made a good breakfast for the seven children.

"Now, about dinner," she said as they all finished eating. "Ma said that we could have whatever we liked, but she didn't expect us to have a traditional[4] Thanksgiving dinner."

"Have you ever cooked a turkey?" asked Roxy.

"Ma said I should decide what to do," replied Tilly.

All you children have to do is keep out of the way and let Prue and me work."

(1) يتجمع/يتقابل

(2) يحتفل بـ

(3) مقدار/كمية

(4) تقليدى

(5) يعد/يجهز

(6) يخدم/يقدم طعاما

The younger children walked out of the kitchen and into another room. As Tilly and Prue started to prepare[5] the big meal, they got out all the spoons, dishes, pots and pans that they could find.



"Now, sister, we'll have dinner at five," said Tilly. "Pa will be here by that time and he'll be surprised to find us ready to serve[6] the food. There's such a lot to do, and I'm a bit worried about the turkey. It's so big!"

"I know," said Prue. "I fed it all summer and now it will feed me," she laughed.

When is Thanksgiving celebrated in the USA? Why?

Reading Text (2)

What do Egyptians eat for special celebrations?

As one year changes to the next, many countries around the world choose to celebrate the start of the New Year with special food. However, different countries eat very different things to enjoy the occasion.

In Mexico, for example, many people eat out at the many restaurants around the country on New Year's Day. The most popular[1] dish is always tamales, which is made from meat, cheese and vegetables that are cooked inside banana leaves.

However, when the New Year arrives in Japan, people make special little cakes from sweet rice. Then they get together with their family and friends to eat them and celebrate.

In Spain, it is traditional to eat twelve grapes[2] to welcome[3] the New Year. The Spanish people eat this particular amount of grapes late at nigh when the clock reaches midnight, or twelve o'clock, and they have one grape for each hour of the clock.

In Poland, people start to prepare a fish called 'herring[4]' at least five days befor they eat it. They put the fish in a jar[5] with water, onions and sugar and then they wait for the big day.

Finally, in Greenland, it is traditional for the men to serve a special meal of whale for women to enjoy. It takes months for the meat to become ready to eat and peop say the smell[7] is very strong.

(1) محبوب/مشهور

(2) عنب

(3) يرحب بـ

(4) سمك الرنجة

(5) إناء/برطمان

(6) لحم الحوت

(7) رائحة

Which is the strangest food people eat to celebrate the New Year?

Would you like to try food from another country?

Listening Text (2)



Nasi goreng is a meal with rice from Indonesia. In fact, the words nasi goreng mean 'fried rice' in Indonesian. Many people believe that nasi goreng is one of the spiciest meals in Indonesia, but for most people it's simply the best meal you can eat. Nasi goreng is made by frying[1] rice and adding vegetables and either chicken or prawns[2] to the pan. It's a bit saltier than some other Indonesian meals and it often comes with a fried egg on top. Nasi goreng is usually cheaper than most other meals in Indonesia. You can get it either in restaurants or from people who cook food on the side of the road.

(1) يقلى
(2) جمبرى
(3) المحار
(4) نادر
(5) قائمة طعام

Oysters are a type of shellfish[3] that people dig out of the earth under the sea. They're rarer[4] than most other types of seafood and you can only eat them for seven months of the year. During these months, thousands of oysters are eaten in France because many people believe they're one of the most special foods you can eat. This means that oysters are usually one of the most expensive meals on the menu[5] in French restaurants.

Mochi are sweet, round rice cakes which are smaller than most of the cakes people eat. They look like little balls and they're made in many different colours. In Japan, where they come from, mochi are the most popular type of cake and the Japanese eat large amounts of them. Mochi were first made about one thousand years ago and people thought that they brought good luck. Today, different colours and types of mochi are more popular than others on different special occasions. For example, when the Japanese celebrate New Year's Day, flat, white mocha is the most popular type of mochi to eat.

Which of the dishes mentioned above would you like to try?

What do you know about American food?

Listening Text (3) (Workbook)



The UK did not use to be known for its good food, but it has got a lot better in recent(1) years. Probably the most popular dish is fish and chips(2). The fish and potatoes are fried and they are usually very salty. Fish and chips are usually cheaper than most other takeaway(3) food, too. The British also like spicy food. Indian food is usually the spiciest and Indian restaurants are very popular. One of the most traditional dishes in the UK is roast lamb(4), which people often eat for Sunday lunch with potatoes and vegetables. The British also like a lot of sweet things such as ice cream. In 2018, the British ate more than 320,000 ice creams. They mostly eat ice cream in the summer when the weather is hotter.

(1) حديث

(2) شيبسى

(3) طعام جاهز

(4) لحم ضأن مشوى

How does the Indian food differ from the British one?

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mother is too tired to cook today. Let's have a/an .... tonight.
   a) take-in b) overtake c) takedown d) takeaway
2. The movie won an award at the Cairo Film .... last year.
   a) Race b) Competition c) Festival d) Examination
3. We were .... to know who won the game that we didn't watch on TV.
   a) native b) curious c) exciting d) proud
4. The chef added hot pepper to give the dish a .... flavour.
   a) spicy b) solid c) cool d) cooked
5. .... are a long thin kind of pasta, used especially in Chinese and Italian cooking.
   a) Prawns b) Chips c) Noodles d) Lambs

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

amount — مقدار/كمية
- a quantity of something

celebrate — يحتفل بـ
- do something fun to show that an event is special

eat out — يأكل بالخارج
- have a meal outside your home

get together — يتجمع/يتقابل
- meet people and spend time with them

occasion — مناسبة
- a time when something special happens

prepare — يعد/يجهز
- get something ready to eat or use

serve — يخدم/يقدم طعامًا
- give people food or drink

traditional — تقليدى
- old ways of doing things that don't change

Notes on Vocabulary

arrive (in/at) ١- يصل (لا يتبعه مفعول) ٢- يصـل إلى (يتبعه مفعـول بعد حروف الجر (in/at	▸ When does the Paris plane arrive? ▸ We arrived in Cairo late at night. مكان غير محدد ▸ The passengers arrived at the airport just before the plane takes off. مكان محدد
reach ١- يصل إلى (يتبعه مفعول بدون حرف جر) ٢- يصل إلى شىء معنوى	▸ We reached Cairo late at night. ▸ Ministers must reach a decision before next month.

decide to + inf. يقرر أن (يتبعه المصدر)	▸ Wafaa decided to stay in the hotel for two days.
decide that + a sentence يقرر أن (يتبعه جملة كاملة)	▸ I decided that it would be best to tell my father the truth.
decide on + n/v-ing يستقر على (يتبعه اسم أو صيغة (verb + ing	▸ We decided on going to Sharm El-Sheikh for our holiday this year.

event ١- حدث مهم ٢- حدث مرتب (مثل حفل موسيقى/مؤتمر سياسى)	▸ One of the most important events in our history is October Victory. ▸ The charity raises money by organising social events.
incident ١- حدث (عارض/غير معتاد) ٢- حدث (فى فيلم/قصة/مسرحية)	▸ The fire shooting is one of the incidents of the day. ▸ He thought the film was boring without many incidents.
accident حادث (شىء خاطئ أو مـؤذٍ حدث بغير ترتيب)	▸ Over 70,000 people are seriously injured every year in road accidents.

special خاص (من نوع خاص)	▸ I only wear this suit on special occasions like weddings.
private خصوصى (خاص بشخص أو مجموعة محددة)	▸ My grandfather didn't want to discuss his private life with anyone.

menu ١- قائمة طعام (فى مطعم) ٢- قائمة (مهام/إعدادات) فى جهاز	▸ He looked at the menu and decided to have chicken with rice. ▸ The menu bar with its windows is one of the features of the desktop.
list قائمة (أشياء أو مهام تم إعدادها)	▸ I made a list of all the jobs I had to do in the house.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- .... let Prue and me work.

لاحظ استخدام صيغة المصدر (work) بدون to بعد الفعل (let).

- I'm a bit worried about the turkey.

تستخدم (a bit) قبل الصفات أو الصفات المقارنة للتعبير عن معنى قليلًا.

- .... adding vegetables and either chicken or prawns to the pan.

لاحظ استخدام either ... or للتعبير عن الاختيار بين شيئين.

- The British also like spicy food.

تستخدم (the) قبل الجنسية لتعنى الشعب بشكل عام.

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hosting the FIFA World Cup will be an important .... for Qatar, the first Arab country to do so.
   a) event b) accident c) incident d) process
2. I was put on a waiting .... to see a specialist at the hospital.
   a) menu b) list c) title d) leaflet
3. I've decided .... blue for painting the bedroom.
   a) for b) to c) at d) on
4. It was almost midnight when I .... home, so my father was angry.
   a) sailed b) sent c) reached d) painted
5. Experts take .... care in handling very old books as they are soft and valuable.
   a) private b) special c) general d) obvious

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.



Vocabulary Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 The college allows students to .... their graduation party with family and friends.
a) share b) celebrate c) expect d) gather

2 Samy .... together with some friends to plan a party for their friend who won the gold medal for swimming.
a) got b) went c) made d) performed

3 The new student at class isn't rich, so he wears .... clothes.
a) luxurious b) old-fashioned c) splendid d) recent

4 Suzan speaks French fluently, but it isn't her .... language.
a) foreign b) native c) modern d) dead

5 When babies started to walk they were .... and tried to explore the environment around them.
a) rare b) modern c) curious d) traditional

6 The children had a lot of .... at the movie theatre watching their favourite film.
a) sorrow b) fight c) quarrel d) fun

7 Universities should do more to .... young people for the world of work.
a) make b) prepare c) serve d) advise

8 My brother dreams of joining the navy to .... his country and travels at sea.
a) serve b) surprise c) prepare d) welcome

9 We finished our meal with a .... of honey and nuts.
a) desert b) dessert c) recipe d) receipt

10 Hesham was rewarded because he is always the first to .... at work in the morning.
a) go b) get c) arrive d) reach

11 When they got off the train, the three .... shared a taxi home as they didn't have enough money.
a) voters b) passengers c) sellers d) drivers

12 Most Indian dishes usually taste very .... as they use the hottest pepper in them.
a) sweet b) tasteful c) warm d) spicy

13 Science gives us hope that many diseases will not .... in our future world.
a) damage b) disappear c) exist d) cure

14 The chef said that we need to use fresh herbs اعشاب to get the good Italian ....
a) scene b) sight c) test d) taste

15 The poet read several .... from his new poems in his television interview.
a) marks b) volumes c) extracts d) scripts

16 The funeral of the young officer was a sad .... that was attended by thousands of people.
a) accident b) reflection c) occasion d) result

17 All the dancers and musicians at the music festival wore .... clothes that dated back to the 18th century.
a) updated b) ragged c) gradual d) traditional

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

18 You must have at .... five years' experience to get the job.
a) last b) lost c) list d) least

19 It is common for children to be afraid of the dark. The adjective "common" can be the opposite of the adjective "..................".
a) useful b) ordinary c) available d) rare

20 The businessman was arrested on his .... at the airport as he had been suspected of a crime.
a) arrive b) arrival c) arrives d) arrived

21 Mother always asks my little brother to .... out of the kitchen.
a) sleep b) take c) keep d) give

22 The manager says that the next meeting will take .... on Thursday.
a) place b) part c) up d) in

23 Unfortunately, the factory didn't achieve the .... profits and we had to close it.
a) expect b) expectance c) expected d) expecting

24 The Pyramids are one of the most .... touristic places with tourists in Egypt.
a) popularise b) popularity c) popular d) unpopular

25 The fire could possibly have been caused by accident. The adverb "possibly" is similar in meaning to the adverb "..................".
a) regularly b) probably c) terribly d) fantastically

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 During the school picnic, we gathered the children around us and sang songs. The synonyms of the word" gather" are ....
a) divide b) assemble c) scatter d) separate e) collect

27 Egyptian farmers grow large .... of wheat, however we have to export some.
a) amounts b) qualities c) spaces d) quantities e) recipes

28 The hotel restaurant .... a wonderful meal to more than fifty members at the conference.
a) fed b) served c) did d) wasted e) prepared

29 The menu at this restaurant includes a wide selection of French ....
a) components b) tools c) recipes d) dishes e) designs

30 We would welcome any advice or suggestions with open arms. The antonyms of the word "welcome" are ....
a) agree b) deny c) accept d) exclude e) reply





Lessons 1 & 2

B Language

1 Adjectives
الصفات

الصفة: هى كلمة تصف الاسم ولا تجمع حتى ولو كان الاسم الموصوف جمعاً.

- She is a beautiful girl.
- They are beautiful girls.

١) الصفة تأتى قبل الاسم وإذا جاءت بعده تسبق بـ v. to be أو بعد بعض الأفعال مثل:

(look, smell, sound, feel, taste, seem, appear, become, get, stay, etc.)

- He is a tall boy.
- The boy is tall.
- She looks pretty.
- The food tastes good.

٢) الصفات الآتية لا يأتى بعدها أسماء:

(afraid, alike, alive, alone, ashamed, asleep, awake, glad, pleased, etc.)

- They are still alive.

٣) بعض الصفات لا تأتى إلا قبل الأسماء مثل:

(chief, indoor, outdoor, only, outer, upper, etc.)

- I like outdoor activities such as skiing, climbing and hiking.

٤) بعض الصفات تستخدم مع the كأنها أسماء لتفيد الجمع:

(old, young, blind, dead, deaf, disabled, living, sick, homeless, hungry, poor, rich, strong, weak, unemployed, middle-aged, elderly, etc.)

- The rich (rich people) should help and support the poor (poor people).

2 Order of Adjectives
ترتيب الصفات

	Opinion	Fact adjectives							Noun
		Size	Age	Shape	Colour	Origin	Material	Used for	
It's a	nice	small	old	square	brown	Italian	wooden	dinner	table.

فى الغالب نستخدم صفة أو اثنتين أو ثلاث صفات فقط قبل الاسم وليس كل هذه الصفات.

a beautiful, white wedding dress.

Degrees of Adjectives
درجـات الصفـات

- **Positive** الصفة العادية
- **Comparative** المقارنة بين طرفين
- **Superlative** صيغة التفضيل (للمقارنة بين فرد ومجموعة)



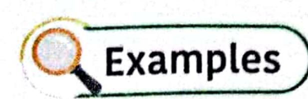
One-syllable Adjectives صفات المقطع الواحد

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
One-syllable Adjectives صفات المقطع الواحد	adj. + er + than	the + adj. + est
tall	taller than	the tallest
old	older than	the oldest
long	longer than	the longest
quick	quicker than	the quickest
short	shorter than	the shortest
إذا كانت الصفة تنتهي بحرف e نضع r/st.		
large	larger than	the largest
wide	wider than	the widest
إذا كانت الصفة تنتهي بحرف ساكن قبله متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن.		
big	bigger than	the biggest
hot	hotter than	the hottest
إذا كانت الصفة تنتهي بحرف w وقبله o أو e نضع er/est دون مضاعفة.		
low	lower than	the lowest
few	fewer than	the fewest
إذا كانت الصفة من مقطعين وتنتهي بحرف y قبله ساكن تقلب إلى ier/iest.		
ugly	uglier than	the ugliest
easy	easier than	the easiest
heavy	heavier than	the heaviest
happy	happier than	the happiest
lucky	luckier than	the luckiest



More than one-syllable Adjectives
صفات أكثر من مقطع

More than one-syllable Adjectives صفات أكثر من مقطع	more/ less + adj. + than	the most / the least + adj.
modern	more/less modern than	the most/least modern
careful	more/less careful than	the most/least careful
expensive	more/less expensive than	the most/least expensive
wonderful	more/less wonderful than	the most/least wonderful
exciting	more/less exciting than	the most/least exciting
difficult	more/less difficult than	the most/least difficult
interesting	more/less interesting than	the most/least interesting
beautiful	more/less beautiful than	the most/least beautiful



- Samir is a fast runner.
- This film is interesting.
- Samir is faster than Ali.
- This film is more interesting than the one we watched last night.
- Samir is the fastest student.
- This film is the most interesting ever.

Got it

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



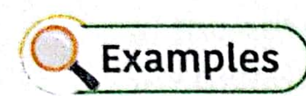
- The teacher said that I was .... than Einstien. I think it's a joke.

a) smart　　b) smartest
c) less smarter　　d) smarter

الإجابة هى (d) لأن هناك مقارنة بين طرفين وكلمة smart تقبل إضافة er.

5 Irregular Comparatives and Superlatives الصفات الشاذة

Positive		Comparative	Superlative
good	جيد/حسن	better than	the best
old/bad	سيئ/ردىء	worse than	the worst
little	قليل	less than	the least
much/many/a lot of	كثير	more than	the most
far	بعيد	farther/further than	the farthest/furthest



Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Addiction is a bad habit.	Addiction is worse than smoking.	Addiction is the worst habit in anyone's life.

هناك صفات مشتركة فى النوعين فتأخذ er/est or more/the most وهى:

clever, common, cruel, friendly, gentle, narrow, pleasant, polite, shallow, simple, stupid, quiet, etc.

- Football is the commonest/ most common sport in the world.

نستخدم صيغة المقارنة comparative مع الحالات الآتية:

١) لبيان المقارنة الضمنية لشيئين حتى مع عدم ذكر أحد طرفى المقارنة.

- We need a bigger house.
- He wants a more expensive car.

٢) لوصف كيف يتغير الشىء وبيان الفرق بين شىء قديم وآخر حديث.

- Hala is getting taller.
- Ali is getting older and more intelligent.

٣) تستخدم هذه الصيغة comparative + comparative لبيان الزيادة المطردة فى التغيير.

- Cars are getting faster and faster.
- Computers are getting cheaper and cheaper.

٤) نستخدم صفات المقارنة بمعنى (كلما ... كلما) مع التركيبة الآتية:

The + صفة مقارنة + اسم ......, the + صفة مقارنة + اسم

- The more books you read, the more information you get.
- The fewer mistakes you make, the higher marks you get.

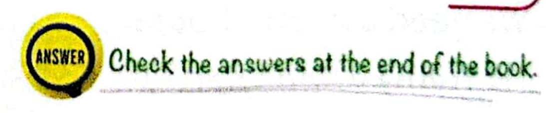
٥) هناك مقارنة نستخدم فيها the بين شيئين من نوع واحد:

The + صفة مقارنة (... er/more + adjective)

- Of the two cars this is the faster.
- Noha is the younger of two girls.

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The blue whale is .... than the shark.
   a) large b) largest
   c) larger d) more larger
2. This is .... mountain I have ever seen.
   a) the biggest b) the bigger
   c) the most big d) the big
3. In my opinion, physics is .... subject this year.
   a) difficult b) more difficult
   c) as difficult d) the most difficult
4. The .... you train, the fitter you become.
   a) more harder b) hard
   c) harder d) the hardest
5. As it was raining heavily, the driver saw nothing and the car went .... down the hill.
   a) fast and faster b) fast and fast
   c) faster and faster d) faster and fast



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I think, the computer is .... invention in the world.
a) the more important b) the most important
c) important d) more important

2 Who is .... person in your country?
a) powerful b) more powerful
c) the most powerful d) much powerful

3 How far is .... railway station from here?
a) the nearest b) the nearer c) the near d) nearer

4 My friend thinks that math is .... than Arabic, but I don't agree.
a) more difficult b) the most difficult c) as difficult d) difficult

5 Mona was not as intelligent as the others, but she was ....
a) more prettier b) pretty c) the prettiest d) most pretty

6 China is .... than any other country in the world.
a) most populated b) more populated
c) populated d) as populated

7 Although we aren't rich, our children go to .... schools in the city.
a) the best b) the most c) as good d) the better

8 The blue whale is .... animal in the world.
a) more heavy b) heavy c) heavier d) the heaviest

9 A falcon has got a .... eyesight than a human.
a) good b) better c) best d) bad

10 Unfortunately, her illness was .... we thought at first.
a) serious b) more serious
c) more serious than d) the most serious

11 Vegetables are .... than meat if you want to go on a diet.
a) healthier b) much healthy c) healthy d) more healthy

12 The slower you drive, the .... you are.
a) safe b) safest c) safer d) most safer

13 Lamia is the .... of the two sisters.
a) young b) as young as c) more young d) younger

14 What's .... important decision you've ever had to make?
a) the more b) the most c) most d) the many

15 Health and happiness are .... than money.

a) important b) more important
c) the least important d) as important

16 We live in a .... house, but my uncle lives in a .... one.

a) big/big b) big/biggest c) big/bigger d) bigger/biggest

17 I cannot walk any ....

a) farther b) further c) farthest d) both a and b

18 It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere ....?

a) more quiet b) much quiet c) quieter d) most quiet

19 The .... I had to queue at the bank, the more impatient I became.

a) longer b) long c) longest d) most long

20 My job is a bit boring sometimes. I'd like to do something .... interesting.

a) much b) most c) less d) more

21 The more you study, ... mistakes you make. إدارة اسيوط التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) the fewer b) the more c) the most d) the least

22 Which is .... in summer: Cairo or Alexandria? إدارة شبراخيت ٢٠٢٢

a) hotter than b) hottest c) as hot d) hotter

23 Mrs. Azza is tall, but Mrs. Fareeda is .... إدارة شرق المحلة الكبرى التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) more tall b) more taller c) taller d) less taller

24 Yara is .... of the twins. إدارة الأقصر التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) cleverer b) the cleverest c) the cleverer d) more clever

25 This book is .... than the last one she wrote. I don't like it. الزقازيق- الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

a) good b) best c) worst d) worse

26 One of the given words is an adjective:
"The sun is the star at the center of our solar system."

a) system b) solar c) star d) sun

27 One sentence gives the same meaning as:
"To me, physics is a difficult subject, but English is easy."

a) I find physics more difficult than English.
b) I find physics much easier than English.
c) I find physics as difficult as English.
d) I find English more difficult than physics.

28 One sentence is grammatically correct:

a) What is the world's popular sport?
b) What is the world's most popular sport?
c) What is the world's better sport?
d) What is the world's more popular sport?

29 One sentence doesn't give the same meaning as:
The red dress costs 250 pounds, the blue dress costs 200 pounds.
a) The blue dress costs less than the red dress.
b) The red dress is more expensive than the blue dress.
c) The blue dress is cheaper than the red dress.
d) The blue dress costs more than the red dress.

30 One sentence is grammatically correct:
a) I bought a nice, Italian red dress.
b) The young people should help the old ones.
c) All society should take care of the disabled.
d) I like this food as it tastes nicely.

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

31 .... are responsible for the country's progress and welfare.
a) Young people
b) The young people
c) The young
d) The younger
e) The youngest

32 Nada is 17 years old, and so is Sara. This means that ....
a) Nada is the same age as Sara.
b) Nada is younger than Sara.
c) Nada and Sara are the same old.
d) Sara is older than Nada.
e) Nada isn't older than Sara.

33 Wood is .... than gold.
a) much cheaper
b) less expensive
c) a little expensive
d) more cheaper
e) a lot expensive

34 When I learned a lot of grammar and vocabulary, English became ....
a) much easier
b) much more easier
c) more and more easier
d) the easiest
e) easier and easier

35 My grandmother is kinder than anyone in the family. This means that ....
a) Anyone in the family is kinder than my grandmother.
b) My grandmother is as kind as anyone in the family.
c) No one in my family is kinder than my grandmother.
d) My grandmother is the kindest one in the family.
e) My grandmother shows no kindness towards anyone.

Test Yourself in 20 min



Unit 2
Lessons 1 & 2

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analysing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Some .... teachers still think of computers as useless toys.
a) modern b) dated c) updated d) traditional

2 My parents always support me, ... decision I make they trust me.
a) however b) whatever c) although d) whoever

3 When the children get home the mother often wants to .... with them on the school news.
a) take away b) wait for c) catch up d) look after

4 It's natural to be nervous before an important .... such as a wedding.
a) accident b) plan c) event d) feast

5 I can't eat fish or shrimps because I'm allergic to ....
a) seafood b) dairy c) poultry d) legumes

6 It is preferable that we reduce the .... of energy we use at home to help the environment.
a) account b) quality c) weight d) amount

7 Make sure that you add the correct .... of water to the food recipe.
a) quality b) quantity c) equality d) equity

8 It's Dad's birthday and we're going out for a meal to ....
a) separate b) commemorate c) celebrate d) relate

9 I was feeling tired last night, so I went to bed .... than usual.
a) earlier b) much early c) later d) more early

10 You were a little depressed yesterday, but you look .... today.
a) more happy b) happier c) much happy d) happiest

11 This dress is .... of all you've tried on yet.
a) nicer b) nice c) the nicest d) as nice

12 I regret selling my car. It was .... decision I'd ever made.
a) the best b) the worst c) as bad d) worse

13 I talked to the new boss, and he seems to be a .... person.
a) nicer b) nicest c) nice d) nicely

14 He got the best marks in the class. This means that he got .... marks than anyone else.
a) good b) better c) best d) most

15 My car is more modern than Ali's car, but Yasser's is ....

a) the most modern
b) more modern
c) most modern
d) much modern

16 Hany had three big sandwiches. He was .... of all his friends.

a) hungrier
b) hungry
c) the hungriest
d) much hungrier

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

People love to chew gum. In fact, people around the world have been chewing gum for thousands of years. But, have you ever wondered how gum is made? You may not believe this, but gum comes from trees. Ancient Greeks got it from the bark of mastic trees. People in South America chewed chiclet, which is very rubbery. It is made from the sap of the sapodilla tree. The people of North America chewed the sap from spruce trees.

In 1871, the chemist Thomas Adams created chewing gum made out of chiclet. He manufactured[1] it. Chiclet was used to make gum for many years. Then he sold it to many people. Then in 1928, Walter Diemer invented modern bubble gum. Today, pink is still the most popular colour for bubble gum. Chemists figured out ways to create artificial gum. Everything could be made in a lab. Chemists discovered other things too. For example, they figured out[2] how to make the gum's taste last longer. That made people happy! But people who chew gum need to remember something. Gum is not meant to be swallowed[3].

However, our bodies cannot digest[4] gum. Some people believe the gum sticks together in our stomachs and blocks everything. Others even believe that gum stays there for seven years. This is not true. If you swallow gum, it will just come out when you go to the bathroom. There are many ingredients in today's bubble gum. There is sugar, corn syrup[5], softeners, flavoring, and latex. The latex makes the gum stretch. That way, you can blow bubbles.

Chad Fell from the United States blew the biggest bubble in the world. In 2004, he blew a bubble 20 inches wide and he didn't even use his hands! That's pretty impressive. You can also practice blowing big bubbles. But be prepared to get some gum sticking to your face once the bubble pops!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 According to the information you read in the article, which statement is true about bubble gum?

a) Gum was first invented by Thomas Adams in 1871.
b) Walter Diemer called his modern day bubble gum, "Hubba Bubba."
c) People in ancient times, such as the Greeks chewed different types of tree sap as a form of gum.
d) Modern day bubble gum only has one or two ingredients in it.



(1) يصنع (2) يحسب (3) ابتلع (4) يهضم (5) شراب

2 Based on the information in the article, what did Chad Fell do?

a) He made bubble gum out of resin.
b) He manufactured chewing gum made out of chiclet.
c) He invented modern bubble gum in a lab.
d) He blew a 20-inch bubble in 2004.

3 What ingredient in modern day bubble gum makes it stretch?

a) Corn syrup. b) Latex. c) Flavoring. d) Sugar.

4 The word "swallow" means ....

a) cause food or drink to pass down the throat
b) the body's way of breaking down food
c) make a large quantity of something using machinery
d) putting bad food in dust bins

5 Gum was chewed all over the world ....

a) ten years ago
b) in the modern ages
c) thousands of years ago
d) millions of years ago

6 The .... were the first to get the gum from trees.

a) people of North America
b) people of South America
c) ancient Greeks
d) Indian Americans

7 The chiclet was easy to chew because it sounded like ....

a) rubber b) gold c) sugar d) sap

8 The best title for the passage is ....

a) Healthy Food
b) Chewing
c) Trees around the world
d) The History of Gum

A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Food festivals are quickly becoming part of a vast food tourism industry. Food tourism itself has become an important part of the tourism industry worldwide.

....

....

2. In the past, people only ate food made of local and available ingredients[1]. Now, they can eat food made in many parts of the world due to the growth of international trade[2].

....

....

3. Doctors advise office clerks to do more exercises. Exercise is a good way to get rid of the stress and frustration[3] of the workplace.

....

....

4. Most countries face problems because of the lack[4] of job opportunities for young people. So, governments try hard to solve the unemployment problem.

....

....

5. We live in the age of tremendous[5] speed where there is no room for laziness. This speed also increases stress and leads to serious diseases.

....

....

6. Many people believe that art[6] can play a role in enhancing social values. Films and plays can also fight value deterioration[7] among young men.

....

....

Translate into English:

١- يحذر الخبراء الشباب من أن الطعام السريع يمثل خطرًا على صحتهم، فبالرغم من مذاقه اللذيذ فهو يحتوى على كمية كبيرة من الدهون والمكونات الأخرى التى تسبب زيادة الوزن.

....

....

٢- نأمل أن تسهم جهود المنظمات الخيرية فى مصر، مثل: جمعية رسالة وبنك الطعام المصرى، فى تخفيف معاناة[8] الناس والقضاء على الفقر[9] فى كل مكان.

....

....

٣- إن استصلاح الصحراء أهم طرق حل مشكلة نقص[10] الغذاء فى كثير من الدول النامية؛ لذا تخطط الحكومة المصرية لاستصلاح مليون ونصف المليون فدان من صحراء مصر.

....

....

٤- علينا أن نرعى كبار السن حتى يشعروا بالراحة بعد عملهم الشاق من أجلنا، فالكثير منهم بذلوا صحتهم ووقتهم من أجل الأجيال القادمة.

....

....

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The role of charitable organisations in helping society."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. — I used the right structure. — I used a topic sentence. — I wrote the conclusion. — I used the right punctuation.

(1) مكونات (2) تجارة (3) إحباط (4) نقص (5) هائل (6) الفن (7) تدهور (8) suffering (9) poverty (10) shortage

A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

article (n)	مقال	phrase (n)	عبارة
beef (n)	لحم بقرى	plate (n)	طبق
belief (n)	اعتقاد/إيمان	relatives (n)	أقارب
chopstick (n)	عصا الأكل الصينية	respect (n) (v) (ed)	احترام/يحترم
consider (v) (ed)	يعتبر	rest (n) (v) (ed)	باقٍ/راحة/يرتاح
foreigner (n)	أجنبى	rude (adj)	وقح/غير مؤدب
general (adj)	عام	rule (n)	قاعدة
introduce (v) (d)	يقدم	share (v) (d)	يشارك
light (adj)	خفيف	tradition (n)	تقليد
mean (v)	يعنى/يقصد	vertically (adv)	عموديًا
personally (adv)	شخصيًا		

Vocabulary on Listening

achieve (v) (d)	يحقق	mind map (n)	خريطة ذهنية
attractive (adj)	جذاب	name (n) (v) (d)	اسم/يسمى/يذكر
complicated (adj)	معقد	options (n)	اختيارات
confused (adj)	مرتبك	products (n)	منتجات
design (v) (ed) (n)	يصمم/تصميم	questionnaire (n)	استبيان/استطلاع رأى
details (n)	تفاصيل	simple (adj)	بسيط
distant (adj)	بعيد	type (n)	نوع

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

abroad (adv) بالخارج	prefer (v) (red) يفضل
climate (n) مناخ	repeat (v) (ed) يكرر
comfortable (adj) مريح	snack (n) وجبة خفيفة
confuse (v) (d) يربك	suitable (adj) مناسب
fried (adj) محمر/مقلى	windy (adj) عاصف
include (v) (d) يشمل/يتضمن/يشتمل	

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

achieve a great deal of يحقق قدرًا كبيرًا من	go abroad يسافر للخارج
around the world حول العالم	make noise يحدث ضوضاء
at all أبدًا/مطلقًا	show respect for يظهر الاحترام لـ
(be) careful يكون حريصًا	sound nice يبدو لطيفًا
ask about يسأل عن	start with يبدأ بـ
happy with سعيد بـ	write about يكتب عن
spend on ينفق على	

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
achieve يحقق	achievement إنجاز	achievable يمكن تحقيقه
attract يجذب	attraction جذب	attractive جذاب
believe يعتقد	belief اعتقاد believer مؤمن	believable يمكن تصديقه
confuse يربك	confusion ارتباك	confused مرتبك confusing مربك
consider يعتبر	consideration اعتبار	considerable كبير/فائق considered معتبر/جدير بالاعتبار
introduce يقدم	introduction مقدمة	introductory تقديمى

produce*	ينتج	product production	منتج صناعي إنتاج	productive	منتج
respect	يحترم	respect	احترام	respected respectable respectful	محترم بسبب إنجازاته محترم من الآخرين محترم لغيره

* - The factory produces high quality shoes.
- The products are exported to the Gulf countries.
- The workers are very productive.

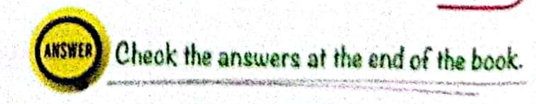
Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
belief	اعتقاد	concept/faith	doubt/disbelief	شك
confuse	يربك	distract	comfort/clarify	يريح/يوضح
design	يصمم	plan/devise	ruin	يدمر
distant	بعيد	isolated/remote	close/near	قريب
light	خفيف	lightweight/moderate	heavy/large	ثقيل/كبير
respect	احترام	appreciation/esteem	disrespect/dishonor	عدم احترام
share	يشارك	distribute/participate	gather/combine	يجمع
suitable	مناسب	appropriate/convenient	inconvenient/improper	غير مناسب

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The famous writer has written a weekly .... for the local newspaper up till now.
   a) phrase b) belief c) article d) search
2. Collecting money for the new cancer hospital was a noble effort that deserves ....
   a) disrespect b) rudeness c) power d) respect
3. All our close .... were invited to my sister's wedding.
   a) enemies b) relatives c) heroes d) opponents
4. You should follow safety .... which apply to your workplace.
   a) rules b) roles c) beliefs d) phrases
5. In China, it is impolite to put your chopsticks .... into your food bowl.
   a) gradually b) carefully c) usefully d) vertically



Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text

How do you show respect for elder people?

(A) Personally, I think it's important to respect[1] our older relatives. When South Korean families eat together, the oldest person at the table always starts to eat first. The rest[2] of the family waits until this person has finished eating before they finish their meals. It is believed that this shows your respect for the most important people in your family.

(B) As you probably know, people in China usually use chopsticks[3] to eat their food. However, you need to be careful about what you do with them when you're eating there. It is considered very rude to put your chopsticks vertically[4] into your bowl of food, for example. I understand that this is a Chinese tradition[5], but for me, foreigners who do this don't mean to be rude at all.

(C) In my opinion, lunchtime isn't the best time of day for eating a large meal. However, in Russia it is thought that people should eat their largest meal of the day between 1 o'clock and 3 o'clock in the afternoon. In the evening, people usually eat some light[6] food, such as bread and cold meat followed by tea. This is a traditional way of eating in Russia.

(1) يحترم
(2) باقٍ
(3) عصا الطعام الصينية
(4) عموديًا
(5) تقليد
(6) خفيف

Do you agree with the Russian to eat your meal at 1? Why/Why not?

Why do you think people design a questionnaire?



Listening Text

When you're writing a questionnaire[1], you need to ask the right questions. Some questions are a lot more useful than others. And, very often, small changes to a questionnaire can make a lot of difference.

Firstly, it's important that the questions are easy to understand, so it's always helpful to use simple[2] language. If you use complicated[3] language, people will need to read or hear the questions two or three times.

Secondly, it's important to use words with clear meanings. Words like 'most' and 'many' mean different things to different people. So, use words that are easier to understand, such as 'almost all' and 'almost none' instead.

Thirdly, don't have too many options[4]. People get confused[5] when there are more than six options to choose from.

Don't ask personal questions, like questions about money. People don't like talking about these things.

Remember to ask one question at a time. Don't put two questions into one, for example: 'How often do you eat out with your family?' Some people will eat out quite often, but not with their family. And others might eat with their family all the time, but only at home.

Finally, make sure the answers to your questions are easy to remember. Don't ask about events in the distant[6] past, especially if they are about something that was boring[7].

Then, when you know the questions you want to ask, think about the best time to ask people. If you're going to ask people about a recent event, for example, do it before they start to forget.

(1) استطلاع رأى
(2) بسيط
(3) معقد
(4) اختيارات
(5) مرتبك
(6) بعيد
(7) ممل

If you are asked to write a questionnaire, what topic will you choose to write it about?

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My sons have both .... great results for the final exams.
   a) respected b) designed c) produced d) achieved
2. Some of the maths questions were too .... for my 10-year-old son. He found them difficult.
   a) simple b) complicated c) easy d) obvious
3. The question with too many .... will confuse the young student.
   a) articles b) papers c) options d) letters
4. Shopping on the internet can be safe if you follow a few .... rules.
   a) simple b) confused c) astonishing d) interested
5. In the .... past, dinosaurs had controlled the earth before they became extinct.
   a) near b) distant c) strange d) odd

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Vocabulary in Use

Focus on Vocabulary

mind map خريطة ذهنية
- diagram that presents information with a central idea in the middle and connected ideas arranged around it

questionnaire استبيان/استطلاع رأى
- a written set of questions which you give to a large number of people in order to collect information

option اختيار
- a choice you can make in a particular situation

phrase عبارة
- a group of words that have a particular meaning when used together

belief اعتقاد/إيمان
- the feeling that something is definitely true or definitely exists

Notes on Vocabulary

1

share ١- يشترك (فى شىء) بدون تقسيم ٢- يشارك (شىء/رأى/شعور)	▸ My brother shares a room with one of his university colleagues. ▸ We shared the pizza between the four of us.
divide ١- يقسم/ينقسم ٢- يقسم على رقم (فى الرياضيات)	▸ The children are divided into three teams. ▸ Thirty divided by six is five.

2

include يشمل/يتضمن (ما بعده يشكل جزءًا مما قبله)	▸ The price of the computer includes 500 pounds worth of free software.
contain يحتوى على (بداخله)	▸ There were four or five boxes containing toys and books.
consist of يتكون من (ما بعده يشكل كل ما قبله)	▸ A football team consists of ten players and a goalkeeper.

3

introduce يقدم (شخصًا) يقدم (شيئًا جديدًا)	▸ I introduced my family to all my friends at the school party. ▸ Russia is the first country to introduce a new vaccine for the Novel Coronavirus.
present يقدم (شيئًا)	▸ It was the school headmaster who presented the prizes at the party.

4

abroad خارج البلاد	▸ My father travelled abroad last year.
aboard = on board على متن السفينة/الطائرة	▸ The check-in desk announced that it's time to get aboard the plane to London.
broad عريض/واسع	▸ My friend Ali is of medium height, but has very broad shoulders.

5

climate (المناخ) فترة طويلة	▸ Egypt is popular with tourists because of its mild climate all the year.
weather (الطقس) فترة قصيرة	▸ The weather today is hot and humid.
atmosphere الغلاف الجوى جو من	▸ Pollution is really damaging the atmosphere of the Earth. ▸ He lives in an atmosphere of respect and love.

habit سلوك/عادة (شخصية يقوم بها الفرد بدون تفكير)	He has a habit of going to work late.
custom تقليد/عادة(يقوم بها مجموعة من الأشخاص في مجتمع معين)	In Japan, it is the custom to take off your shoes when you enter a house.
tradition تقليد/عرف (موجود منذ فترة طويلة)	In Egypt, it's a tradition for the bride to wear white.

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Doctors say that we should avoid foods which .... a lot of fat.
a) consist b) include
c) enclose d) contain

2 My friend said that I had to .... myself at the beginning of a job interview.
a) introduce b) attract
c) invite d) start

3 We don't have enough books, so you'll have to .... with me.
a) share b) divide
c) mean d) produce

4 The .... was fantastic for a picnic, but I have lots of work to do.
a) climate b) feel
c) weather d) ozone

5 Most young men dream of travelling .... to find good jobs.
a) board b) abroad
c) aboard d) broad

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.



Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 The Best Actor award in Cannes Film Festival is .... a great honour.
a) believed b) included c) considered d) denied

2 As a .... rule, shorter sentences are easier to understand.
a) general b) national c) private d) strange

3 The aluminum bars are quite .... and easy to lift than other metals.
a) heavy b) modern c) light d) old-fashioned

4 Your brother's tough behaviour doesn't .... that he dislikes you.
a) mean b) share c) report d) present

5 Some of Sameer's .... will be waiting for him at the station when he arrives.
a) officers b) relatives c) passengers d) reporters

6 My friend has worked hard to .... her goal and become a doctor.
a) introduce b) achieve c) design d) show

7 The old man often has to ask people to .... what they say because he has hearing difficulties.
a) start b) announce c) repeat d) attract

8 The city's old streets .... most visitors as they are similar to each other.
a) refuse b) confuse c) diffuse d) abuse

9 Can you give me more .... about these English courses, please?
a) questions b) plots c) chances d) details

10 The movie is not .... for children as it has violent scenes.
a) suitable b) reusable c) achievable d) respectful

11 I do my work in an office that I .... with some other teachers.
a) divide b) build c) design d) share

12 A .... is a written set of questions which you give to a large number of people in order to collect information.
a) belief b) degree c) rule d) questionnaire

13 The factory in our city is able to .... most of the cooking oil we need.
a) produce b) mean c) buy d) present

14 The .... of Sham El Nessim dates back to the time of the pharaohs.
a) direction b) tradition c) fault d) search

15 Most villagers in Egypt are keen to preserve local .... as part of our culture.
a) instructions b) customs c) costumes d) divisions

16 Some kind of flowers such as sunflower can grow in hot or humid ....
a) climate b) atmosphere c) soil d) depth

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

17 You must read the .... of the novel to understand it better.
a) introduce b) introduction c) introductory d) introduced

18 Father always says that he is happy .... what he achieved in life so far.
a) at b) in c) over d) with

19 If you travel to isolated areas, make sure you have a good guide. The adjective "isolated" is similar in meaning to the adjective ....
a) distant b) connected c) joined d) shared

20 You must always have the .... that you can do better and succeed in life.
a) belief b) believe c) believable d) believed

21 This camera has many .... features at a very good price, so it is a bestseller.
a) attract b) attraction c) attractive d) attracted

22 Schools must teach children to .... respect towards elderly people.
a) achieve b) sound c) show d) make

23 Every now and then, the factory workers .... noises about raising their wages.
a) make b) do c) reply d) apply

24 There is no doubt that smoking is bad for your health. The noun "doubt" can be the opposite to the noun "..................".
a) denial b) belief c) tiredness d) acceptance

25 My friend Amir spends a lot of his money .... fast food.
a) in b) at c) on d) with

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 As a manager of a multi-national company, Mr. Ibrahim often .... abroad on business.
a) arrives b) comes c) goes d) plans e) travels

27 Mohamed Salah is .... to be one of the best players in the world.
a) considered b) regulated c) arranged d) believed e) moved

28 The stars are more distant from the earth than the sun. The antonyms of the adjective "distant" are ....
a) remote b) close c) far d) near e) light

29 About sixty-five close friends and .... attended Mariam and Jack's wedding.
a) relations b) hosts c) clerks d) opponents e) relatives

30 I have the greatest respect for my parents. The synonyms of the noun "respect" are ....
a) belief b) doubt c) appreciation d) denial e) esteem

Important Notes



لتساوى الصفات نستخدم:

as + adj. + as	عند تساوى الصفات	Chemistry is as difficult as biology.
not as/so + adj + as	عدم تساوى الصفات	Arabic isn't as/so difficult as biology.

- وتستخدم أيضا الصيغة the same + noun + as للتعبير عن التساوى:

- Sami is as tall as Omar. = Sami is the same height as Omar.
- His father is as old as my father. = His father is the same age as my father.

- نستخدم no/never دائما فى صيغة المقارنة:

- No river in the world is longer than the Nile.
- I've never seen a faster car than Mercedes.

- نستخدم ever فى صيغة التفضيل آخر الجملة.

- Mercedes is the fastest car I've ever seen.

- نستخدم less+ adjective + than للمقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين مع استخدام الصفة القصيرة.

- Fiat is less cheap than Toyota.

- نستخدم most بدون the بمعنى very قبل صفة أو حال.

- We attended a most interesting lecture.
- This is the question that is asked most often.

- نستخدم (of) بعد صيغة التفضيل إذا تبعها أشخاص أو فترة زمنية.

- He is the cleverest of his friends in electronics.

- نستخدم (in) بعد صيغة التفضيل إذا تبعها مكان.

- Cairo is the biggest city in Egypt.

- لاحظ استخدام (from) مع (farthest) واستخدام (to) مع (nearest):

- Pluto is the farthest planet from the sun.
- Benha is the nearest city to Cairo.

- يمكن استخدام كلمات مثل much/a lot/a bit/a little/far/rather/even/slightly قبل صفات المقارنة سواء er .... أو more لبيان درجة ومقدار المقارنة.

far/much/a lot ⟶ لبيان أن الفارق كبير بين طرفى المقارنة

- Gold is much/a lot/far more expensive than salt.

slightly/a bit/a little/ rather/even ⟶ لبيان أن الفارق ليس كبيرًا بين طرفى المقارنة

- Travelling by train is a little/a bit cheaper than travelling by car.

الفرق بين later/latter/last

last (الأخير)	latter (الثانى/الأخير)	later (بعد ذلك/لاحقًا)
آخر شــىء أو شخص، ولا شىء ولا شخص بعده/أقرب شىء للوقت الحاضر. - The next meeting will be held in the last week in June. - The guard was the last person to see his boss alive.	نســتخدم latter عندما نشير إلى الثانى من شخصين أو شيئين يتم ذكرهما. - I have fans on both Facebook and YouTube, and I have more fans on the latter. الأخيــر يعنى الثانى من الشــيئين اللذين ذكرتهما للتو وهو اليوتيوب.	تشــير كلمــة «later» إلــى وقــت فـ المستقبل. Right now, I'm studying my lesson, and I'll visit you later. (in the future from this moment) ودائمًا عندما نقول مع السلامة لشخص مع المقابلة مرة أخرى فى وقت لاحق نقول «See you later!».

الفرق بين elder/older

older	elder
تستخدم older لتشير إلى الأكبر سنا أو الأقدم زمنا ويمكن أن يتبعها than أو تفهم المقارنة ضمنيا بدون than. - We start understanding many things as we grow/get older. - My parents are older than your parents. - The older version of the software had many useful features than this one.	عندمـا يتعين علينا مقارنة أقدمية شـخصين فيما يتعلق بالعم وخاصـة بين أفـراد العائلـة نسـتخدم elder ولا يأتى بعدها than. - My elder sister couldn't go to school today because she missed the bus. - Oh, so you are 3 years elder to me! لاحظ أن كلمة elderly صفة بمعنى كبار السـن من منتصف الخمسينيات وأكثر. - Nowadays, elderly people are healthier and more active than youngsters.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: ?

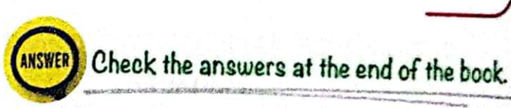
- My brother is .... than my sister. I'm the youngest.

a) elder b) big c) older d) more

- الإجابة هى (c) لأن هناك مقارنة بين طرفين.

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's .... to learn a language in a country where it is spoken.
   a) much easy　　　b) the easiest
   c) more easier　　　d) a lot easier
2. Travelling by plane is .... expensive than travelling by train.
   a) much more　　　b) many more
   c) much　　　d) a lot
3. Riding a horse is not .... riding a bike.
   a) easier　　　b) easy as
   c) the easiest　　　d) so easy as
4. Aya is exactly the same .... as her sister.
   a) heavy　　　b) light
   c) weight　　　d) weigh
5. Ahmed and Ashraf are the same age. This means that ....
   a) Ahmed is as old as Ashraf　　　b) Ahmed is older than Ashraf
   c) Ashraf isn't as old as Ahmed　　　d) Ashraf is older than Ahmed



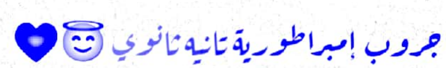


Golden Question

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- I have two siblings, Akram and Ayman, ...
  a) Akram is the shortest although he is the oldest
  b) Akram is shorter although he is the oldest
  c) Akram is the shorter although he is the older
  d) Akram is the shortest although he is older



oose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The Amazon isn't .... the Nile. The Nile is the longest river in the world.
a) longer b) long c) as long as d) so long

That's the least interesting book I've .... read.
a) ever b) never c) yet d) hardly

It is .... more expensive to live in London than any other city in Britain.
a) very b) few c) little d) far

The second exercise is .... more difficult than the first.
a) rather b) so c) as d) many

I like to travel light. The .... luggage, the better.
a) little b) fewer c) more d) less

The film we saw last night was .... interesting of all I have seen this month.
a) more b) the least c) less d) much

She is not .... as her mother.
a) more beautiful b) most beautiful c) as beautiful d) beautifully

I'm very clever at cooking, but my mother is .... cook I've ever known.
a) cleverer b) clever c) the cleverest d) less clever

Sara is the same .... as Mona.
a) age b) old c) young d) older

If I had to choose between Gamal and Hany, Gamal is ....
a) funny b) funniest c) funnier d) the funny

After three weeks of studying, I began to understand English ....
a) good b) the farthest c) the better d) much better

Who is the .... person you have ever spoken to?
a) most intelligent b) more intelligent
c) intelligent d) as intelligent

The .... you study for these exams, the .... you will do.
a) hard/better b) harder/better c) more/good d) much/better

Osama tells his doctor that he has been feeling .... tired lately.
a) the most b) more and more c) such a d) many

The lecture halls at my university are the same .... those at State University.
a) as b) from c) with d) at

16 Badr was laughing hard, but his wife was laughing even ....!

a) hard b) hardness c) harder d) the hardest

17 He is .... of the two brothers.

a) cleverer b) the cleverer c) clever d) the clever

18 I like living in the country. It's .... peaceful than living in a town.

a) fewer b) most c) much d) more

19 The .... chapter is very interesting.

a) late b) last c) latest d) latter

20 Of the two sisters, Magda is the ....

a) old b) most old c) older d) eldest

21 He is already .... his father. ادارة ديروط التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) so tall than b) as tall than c) so tall as d) as tall as

22 My brother is two years .... than me. He is 50, but I'm 48. ابناجور/منوفية ٢٠٢٢

a) elder b) older c) better d) worse

23 Manal has .... money than her friend. ادارة غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٢

a) fewer b) much c) much more d) little

24 Mohamed Salah is one of the world's .... players in the world. ادفو - أسوان

a) good b) best c) the better d) the best

25 Ali speaks French .... than Arabic. Few people understand him when he speaks it. مدرسة النجاح الثانوية بنين إدارة شرق الزقازيق

a) better b) good c) worse d) best

26 Pick out one adjective in the following sentence:

"I always see my friendly neighbours running fast in the club near our village."

a) neighbours b) friendly c) village d) fast

27 One of the following sentences gives the same meaning as:

"I live 2 km from my mother. My sister lives 1 km from her."

a) I live nearer my mother than my sister.

b) I live further from my mother than my sister.

c) My sister lives farther my mother than me.

d) My sister and I are the same distance from my mother.

28 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:

a) My brother is as tall as my father.

b) My father is tallest than my brother.

c) My father and my brother are the same high.

d) My brother is more shorter than my father.

9 One sentence is grammatically incorrect:
a) The poor people always wish to live as comfortable as the rich people.
b) The poor always wish to live as comfortable as the rich.
c) Poor people always wish to live as comfortable as rich people.
d) The poor always wish to live as comfortable as rich people.

0 One sentence doesn't give the same meaning as:
"No person is more intelligent than Bassem in my class."
a) Bassam is the most intelligent person in my class.
b) Bassam is more intelligent than any person in my class.
c) Bassam is as intelligent as every person in my class.
d) No person is as intelligent as Bassem in my class.

hoose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

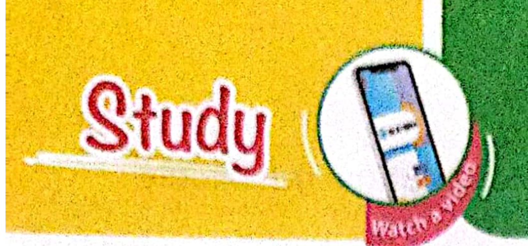
1 Yesterday's match was .... than last week's match.
a) much more boring
b) less boring
c) little boring
d) much boring
e) the most boring

2 The children were too tired to walk any ....
a) far
b) farther
c) further
d) farthest
e) furthest

3 Watching football attracts me more than any other programmes.
This means ....
a) For me, no other programme is more interesting than watching football.
b) For me, watching football is less interesting than any other programmes.
c) For me, watching football is as interesting as any other programmes.
d) For me, watching football is the least interesting thing.
e) For me, watching football is more interesting than any other programmes.

34 .... Mohamed Salah is? All people respect him.
a) How intelligent a footballer
b) What an intelligent footballer
c) What intelligent a footballer
d) What an intelligent a footballer
e) How intelligent footballer

35 Ali can carry heavy weights, and so can Osama. This means that ....
a) Ali is stronger than Osama.
b) Osama is stronger than Ali.
c) Ali and Osama are the same strength.
d) Ali is as strong as Osama.
e) Ali is strong, but Osama is weak.

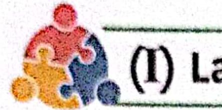


Lessons 3 & 4



C Communication Skills

لمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.



(I) Language Skills

Expressing personal beliefs/opinions and general beliefs/opinions

Expressing personal beliefs	Expressing general beliefs
• In my opinion, ...	• It is believed ....
• Personally, ...	• As you probably know, ...
• For me, ...	• It is thought that, ...
• I understand that, ...	• It's obvious that, ...
• As far as I'm concerned ....,	



(II) Writing

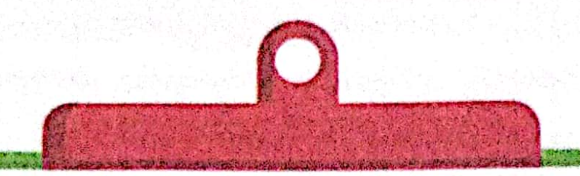
Questionnaire Writing

• **You're going to write a questionnaire to find out what young people like to eat and where they prefer to eat in your country:**

Tips for preparing the questionnaire:

- Discuss things to ask about and make the mind map.
- Design your own questionnaire.
- Think about how long it will take to ask all your questions.
- Make your questionnaire look attractive.





Read the questions and Tick (✓) your answer:

1. Where do you like to eat your food?

◯ At home. ◯ At restaurants.

2. What kind of food do you like?

◯ Fast food. ◯ Well cooked food.

3. What do you care more about your food?

◯ Taste. ◯ Ingredients.

4. What kind of snacks do you like?

◯ Fruit and vegetables. ◯ Biscuits and soft drink.

◯ Sandwiches and juice.

5. Do you care about the natural ingredients of the food you eat?

◯ Yes. ◯ No.

6. Do you like canned food?

◯ Yes. ◯ No.

7. How much fresh juice do you have?

◯ Much. ◯ A little.

◯ None.

8. Do you care about healthy or unhealthy food?

◯ Yes. ◯ No.

Test Yourself in 20



Unit 2
Lessons 3 & 4

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We should .... what our ancestors أسلافنا have written and said.
a) reflect b) benefit c) affect d) respect

2 This section of the hypermarket sells meat .... like hot dogs and burgers.
a) productions b) goods c) articles d) products

3 You can avoid home accidents by following some simple .... of safety which are easy for children.
a) rails b) rolls c) roles d) rules

4 The price of the room at this hotel doesn't .... lunch.
a) consist b) contain c) include d) enclose

5 The rich man made great efforts to be a .... member of society.
a) disrespected b) respect c) respecting d) respected

6 Scientists .... new ideas and inventions to make our life better.
a) introduce b) reject c) achieve d) allow

7 It can be difficult to .... a room with a noisy or naught companion.
a) share b) divide c) prefer d) unite

8 Experts warn us of a great change in the world's .... due to global warming.
a) climate b) population c) economy d) ozone

9 Aswan is sunny. Do you know .... place in Egypt?
a) the sunnier b) the sunniest c) the sunny d) more sunnier

10 Have you visited the old castle? It was the .... one we visited during our holidays.
a) oldest b) eldest c) elder d) older

11 Maher isn't .... friendly as Hussein.
a) more b) so c) far d) much

12 Water is the .... expensive, but the most needful, of all liquids.
a) most b) least c) less d) more

13 The shorter the queue is, the .... the service is.
a) fast b) fastest c) faster d) less fast

14 Most other metals aren't .... as gold.
a) precious b) the most precious c) more precious d) as precious

15 In a basketball match, there are .... players than in a football match.
a) fewer b) fewest c) less d) few

16 My sister and my brother are not as happy as me. This means that I'm ....
a) the happier of all b) happier than them
c) happiest d) happy

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You don't need to be an adult to help others. In November 2009, when she was just thirteen years old, Nahla was looking for the sports section in the newspaper. A story about a girl by the name of Karima El-Said caught her eye. Karima El-Said, who lived in Siwa, had been forced to work long days in a carpet factory. She had worked fourteen hours a day, seven days a week from the time she was six years old until she escaped. Her job was to tie small knots[1] in the carpets. The article shocked Nahla. Karima El-Said was the same age as Nahla. Nahla just couldn't imagine what it was like to work all day seven days a week and never have a chance to attend school or play. Nahla tore the article out of the newspaper and put it in her rucksack[2]. But she couldn't get Karima El-Said out of her mind. Riding the bus to school, she took the article out of her rucksack and read it again and again. After school, she went to the local library and got as much information as she could find on child labour and exploitation[3]. The next morning, with the teacher's permission, she told the class about Karima and about the thousands of children who were forced to work in plantations, mines[4], and factories.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 One of the following isn't true.
   a) Nahla is about 23 years now.
   b) Nahla never had a chance to attend school.
   c) Nahla and Karima are the same age.
   d) Nahla was sorry for Karima.

2 This story shows that you .... to help others.
   a) don't have to be old b) must be old
   c) need to be courageous d) have to be a student

3 The best title to the passage is "................".
   a) How to help others.
   b) Children are more useful than adults.
   c) Children in plantations.
   d) Child employment and manipulation.

4 The underlined word "plantations" means ....
   a) shops b) schools
   c) farms d) markets



(1) عقدة (2) حقيبة الظهر (3) تسخير/استغلال (4) مناجم

5 Nahla knew about Karima El-Said's story when she ....

a) went to school
b) read the newspaper
c) met her teacher
d) met her personally

6 What was shocking about Karima's story?

a) She worked for long hours and had no education.
b) She worked in carpets.
c) She was from Siwa.
d) She had the ability to work for long hours.

7 Nahla cut the article out of the page to ....

a) stick it on the wall
b) take part in a competition
c) read it several times
d) put it in the library

8 Karima couldn't bear her conditions and ....

a) decided to open her factory
b) escaped from the factory
c) committed a suicide
d) went to school

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Eating habits differ from one country to another. Some people are characterised by their healthy food whereas others prefer the tasty food whether it is healthy or not.

....

....

2. Food shortage is one of the most serious problems which the world faces nowadays. Experts say that it is due to misdistribution[1] of food and not lack of it.

....

....

3. Most governments impose strict[2] laws to assure food safety for their peoples. Yet, we should all be responsible for obeying these laws precisely everywhere.

....

....

4. Learning problems happens because of the way the brain takes in and processes[3] information. That's why, it's important to understand how it works.

....

....

5. Achieving good economic developments requires good planning and caring about scientific progress. Hence[4], governments should invest in scientific institutions.

....

....

6. Our deserts are one of our chief(5) sources of wealth which we should give due(6) care to. In this way, they will add much to the economy.

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١ - يحتفل المصريون مثل باقى شعوب العالم بالأعياد المختلفة التى يتميز كل منها بنوع معين من الطعام، فاللحوم تؤكل فى عيد الأضحى، والحلويات المختلفة تؤكل فى عيد الفطر وعيد الميلاد المجيد.

....

....

٢ - مـع انتشـار فيروس كورونا فى العالم ينصحنا الأطباء بالحـرص على الطعام الصحى الذى يحتوى على الفيتامينات التى تساعد أجسادنا على الوقاية من هذا الفيروس الخطير.

....

....

٣ - لـم تمنع صعوبات(٧) التعلم بعض المشـاهير من النجاح فى حياتهم واسـتثمار قدراتهم(٨) ومواهبهم، بل اسـتطاعوا الوصول للنجاح بالمثابرة(٩) والعمل الجاد.

....

....

٤ - رغم معارضة البعض لاسـتخدام الحيوانات فى التجارب يعتقد الكثيرون أنه لو لم نسـتخدمها لما كان لدينا الكثير من الأدوية التى تنقذ حياة الناس.

....

....

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

How can education help in solving many social problems in Egypt?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. — I used the right structure. — I used a topic sentence. — I wrote the conclusion. — I used the right punctuation.

(1) سوء التوزيع (2) صارم (3) يعالج (4) لذلك (5) رئيسي (6) المطلوب/اللازم (7) difficulties (8) abilities (9) persistence



King Lear
Act I, Scenes i-ii

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

adult (n)	شخص بالغ	handwriting (n)	خط اليد
anger (n)	غضب	hide (v)	يخفي
beat (v)	يتغلب	income (n)	إيراد/دخل
believe (v) (d)	يصدق	inheritance	ميراث
bring (v)	يحضر	loyalty (n)	انتماء/إخلاص
conversation (n)	محادثة	pocket (n)	جيب
dead (adj)	ميت	power (n)	قوة/سلطة
deceive (v) (d)	يخدع	receive (v) (d)	يتسلم
decision (n)	قرار	respect (v) (ed)	يحترم
deserve (v) (d)	يستحق	succeed (v) (ed)	ينجح
exit (v) (ed)	يخرج	test (n)	يختبر
fail (v) (ed)	يفشل	throw (v)	يرمي
fool (n)	أحمق	trust (n)	ثقة
forgive (v)	يغفر	truth (n)	حقيقة/صدق

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

feel better	يشعر بتحسن	ill health	صحة معتلة
have a plan	لديه خطة	My heart is broken	قلبي محطم (تعبير عن شدة الحزن)
angry with	غاضب من	loyalty to	إخلاص لـ
cruel to	قاس مع	send ... away	يرسل ... بعيدًا
lie about	يكذب بشأن	stay with	يقيم مع



King Lear Exercises
Act I Scenes i-ii

Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It is a fact that some people such as criminals express their .... through violence.
a) triumph b) anger c) heritage d) inspection

2 My elder brother gets very angry when I .... him at chess.
a) beat b) win c) practise d) rehearse

3 My father punished my younger brother for trying to .... him about his exam results.
a) inform b) tell c) award d) deceive

4 A good business person can quickly make an important ....
a) consumption b) sale c) decision d) affection

5 After standing five hours on his feet, the poor worker .... a break.
a) reserves b) deserves c) observes d) empowers

6 Essam is a nice boy, so his teacher usually .... his occasional bad behaviour.
a) forgives b) awards c) shows d) breaks

7 Tourism is a major source of .... for people in Hurghada and South Sinai.
a) pension b) income c) pride d) loyalty

8 Samy began his own business with the .... he got from his grandfather.
a) degree b) certificate c) inheritance d) letter

9 In the past, all important people had to swear their .... to the Queen of England.
a) revenge b) disobedience c) treason d) loyalty

10 In Japan , after the emperor dies, the .... passes to his eldest son.
a) business b) power c) army d) parliament

11 The King decided to send his former minister .... as he was very angry with him.
a) at b) in c) to d) away

12 I believe that the young man won't .... in his business as he doesn't have any previous experience.
a) succeed b) pass c) agree d) argue

13 I believe that my wife will do the right thing because I .... her.
a) betray b) accept c) trust d) trick

14 We finally learned the shocking .... about our company's great losses.
a) truce b) truth c) fight d) dispute

15 I would never .... to my parents about the exam results.
a) lay b) imagine c) lie d) apply

Unit 2

Advanced & Open

General Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I watched a good movie .... the life and work of Nelson Mandela.
a) writing b) devastating c) celebrating d) disrespecting

2 The police can really help you in the .... of an emergency.
a) event b) accident c) incident d) story

3 Police officers were able to .... useful information from the company's financial records.
a) exert b) tie c) extract d) deny

4 In fact, I .... it a rule never to make any friend who could not be useful to me.
a) did b) devised c) damaged d) made

5 It is believed that the tiger is .... to India.
a) kept b) native c) availed d) distracted

6 Unfortunately, internet websites are full of improper .... stories about famous people's life.
a) spicy b) sweet c) successful d) valid

7 We need to create a/an .... in which business can prosper.
a) air b) breath c) climate d) location

8 I have to say, with all due ...., that I don't think your solution will work.
a) case b) cause c) design d) respect

9 Hussein's fluency of English and German .... him well in getting the job.
a) played b) presented c) served d) rewarded

10 A parent can, on ...., help his/her son with his homework, but not all the time.
a) event b) occasion c) accident d) incident

11 The waiter said our bill would .... to 1000 pounds.
a) amount b) qualify c) clarify d) intensify

12 There is a shop which sells toilet .... such as soap and shampoo near our house.
a) brochures b) articles c) essays d) accessories

13 The first lecture of Professor Michael .... his students to the main topics of the course.
a) summarises b) explains c) introduces d) forces

14 Although my parents left my hometown, some of my .... relatives still live there.

a) far b) foreign c) strange d) distant

15 A sunroof was one of the extra .... that you could get with the car.

a) choices b) machines c) options d) items

16 Mr. Sobhi works in a .... school.

a) medical famous German b) German famous medical

c) famous German medical d) German medical famous

17 Abeer and Omar are the same height. They are .... each other.

a) as tall as b) taller than c) as tall than d) more tall than

18 For .... information about the flights, you can call the travel agency.

a) farther b) further c) farthest d) furthest

19 .... information we have is not enough to proceed.

a) Late b) Little c) A little d) The little

20 He considered his friends either geniuses or idiots, and I fell into the .... category.

a) latter b) later c) latest d) late

21 One of the following sentences isn't correctly structured:

a) What a big car he has! b) How big a car he has!

c) What a big car has he! d) How big his car is!

22 We cannot act until .... orders from our boss.

a) far b) further c) the farthest d) farther

23 They are waiting for the .... updates in this matter.

a) latter b) late c) last d) latest

24 Toyota or Mercedes: which do you like ....?

a) good b) well c) better d) best

25 The red car is .... more expensive than the black one.

a) many b) very c) pretty d) slightly

26 The .... part of the book is more exciting and fascinating.

a) late b) later c) latter d) latest

27 The thief was brought to the .... police station.

a) nearest b) next c) following d) afterwards

28 You must take .... precaution in handling this machine.

a) little b) a little c) few d) fewer

29 The man was .... promoted to the higher post.

a) late b) next c) latter d) later

30 It's impossible to initiate this project as only .... people in the town are computer literate.

a) few b) a few c) fewer d) fewest



Al-Adwaa Test



● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 This programme is not suitable for children over 6 years old. The antonyms of the word" suitable" are ....

a) violent b) inconvenient c) improper d) similar e) respectful

2 You have the .... of working full-time or part-time in our restaurants.

a) admittance b) licence c) necessity d) option e) choice

3 The opening ceremony of the championship started .... a huge fireworks display.

a) with b) in c) at d) by e) for

4 Some countries of south Asia, for .... Indonesia and Japan, have a lot of earthquakes.

a) example b) free c) cost d) division e) instance

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5 An estimated 200 people had attended the food .... in the local park.

a) gallery b) conference c) festival d) seminar

6 My elder brother often gets .... with his friends after work on Thursday.

a) together b) on c) over d) through

7 The decision to close the plastic factory should .... as a warning to factories that pollute the environment.

a) cook b) serve c) mend d) show

8 The hotel manager ordered the staff to .... the big hall ready for the conference in two days' time.

a) be b) do c) get d) design

9 The hotel was surprisingly cheap. I expected it to be ....

a) more expensive b) much expensive
c) cheaper d) cheap

10 The younger you are, the .... freedom you have.

a) most b) best c) more d) much

11 Box A is bigger than box B, box C is bigger than box A.

a) Box B is the smallest box. b) Box A is the biggest box.
c) Box C is the smallest box d) Box B is the biggest box.

12 Robert is never on time. He always arrives .... than the rest of us.

a) the latest b) later c) last d) latter

13 I thought this test would be difficult, but it's .... test I've ever taken.
a) much easier b) easier c) the easiest d) easy

14 Out of all the films I've seen, this one is ....
a) sadly b) a sad c) sadder d) the saddest

15 Your answer is not complete, but it's .... than the other students' answers.
a) more correctly b) more correct c) the most correct d) much correct

16 Carrots are good for you, cakes are bad for you. This means ....
a) Carrots are worse for you than cakes.
b) Cakes are good for you.
c) Cakes are better for you than carrots.
d) Carrots are better for you than cakes.

ead the following passage, then answer the questions:

Some people argue that the pressures on international sportsmen and sportswomen kill the essence[1] of sport—the pursuit[2] of personal excellence. Children kick a football around for fun. When they get older and play for local school teams, they become competitive but they still enjoy playing. However, the individual representing his/her country cannot afford to think about enjoying him/herself; he has to think only about winning. He/She is responsible for an entire nation's hope, dreams and reputation[3].

A good example is the football World Cup. Football is the world's most important sport. It is even more important now that the United States is seriously taking it up. Winning the World Cup is perhaps the summit of international sporting success. Mention "Argentina or Brazil" to someone and chances are that he/she'll think of football. In a sense, winning the World Cup "puts Argentina or Brazil on the map."

Sports fans and supporters get quite irrational[4] about the World Cup. People in England felt that their country was somehow important after they won in 1966. Years ago thousands of Scots sold their cars, and even their houses, and spent all their money travelling to Argentina, where the finals were played.

So, am I arguing that international competition kills the idea of sport? Certainly not! Do the Argentineans really believe that because eleven of their men proved the most skillful at football, their nation is in every way better than all others? Not really. But it's nice to know that you won, and that in one way at least your country is best.



(1) جوهر/خلاصة (2) مواصلة/تعقب (3) شهرة/سمعة (4) غير منطقي

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 According to the passage, the United States ....

a) has begun to give much attention to football

b) is fond of playing football

c) has won the football World Cup

d) is getting sick of football

18 In the second paragraph, the word "summit" means the ....

a) highest point
b) mountain top
c) award
d) summary

19 According to the passage, if a sportsman only thinks about winning, he will ....

a) fail to succeed
b) be successful
c) lose enjoyment
d) be irrational

20 What is the author's attitude towards international games?

a) Nations that meet on a football field are unlikely to meet on a battlefield.

b) Nations that win the football World Cup are regarded as best in all aspects.

c) Nations that win in international games prove best on the sports field at least.

d) Nations that give much attention to international competitions are world-famous in many ways.

21 Winning an international game can make the country ....

a) strong
b) weak
c) famous
d) occupied

22 In order to attend the final matches, the Scots ....

a) bought tickets online
b) sold their properties
c) rent their watches
d) bought TVs

23 According to the passage, people think that their country is important when ....

a) it comes first in a scientific competition

b) they support it in the stadium

c) they take the World Cup

d) they win a game

24 The best title for the passage is ....

a) The Importance of Football
b) The History of Football
c) How People Think of Sport
d) Sports and Argentina

25 Translate into English:

- البطالة مشكلة خطيرة جدًا، فهي لا تؤثر فقط على الأفراد، ولكن أيضًا على نمو البلد؛ حيث إن لها تأثيرًا سلبيًا على النمو الاقتصادى والاجتماعى، وتساعد على انتشار الجريمة فى المجتمع.

....

....

26 Translate into Arabic:

One must carefully weigh the positives and the negatives before engaging excessively in social media. If used in the correct way, social media can be a boon for mankind.

....

....

27 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Sports and their good impact on man's health."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress

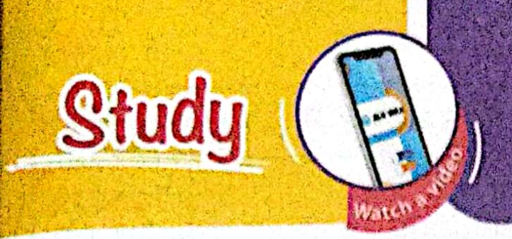
< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Unit 3



The future of food

Reading : Two articles about future sources of food and more sustainable farming
Writing : Essay with proposals for how to feed people more sustainably in the future; writing a summary
Listening : An interview with an expert on sustainable farming
Speaking : Speculating about the future
Language : Will/Be going to; Future continuous
Life Skills : Problem solving





Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

agriculture (n)	الزراعة
crop (n)	محصول
Earth (n)	الكرة الأرضية
innovation (n)	إبداع/ابتكار/فكرة مبتكرة
livestock (n)	ماشية
production (n)	إنتاج
sustainable (adj)	مُستدام
source (n)	مصدر
variety (n)*	تنوع/مجموعة متنوعة

* The coach has a variety of choices for the squad.

Vocabulary on Reading

burger (n)	شريحة هامبورجر
cause (n) (v) (d)	سبب/يسبب
chemical (adj) (n)	كيميائى/مادة كيميائية
climate change (n)	التغير المناخى
create (v) (d)	يخلق/ينتج
damage (n) (v) (d)	تلف/يتلف
dry (adj) (v) (y-ied)	جاف/يجف/يجفف
effect (n)	تأثير
electric (adj)	كهربى
electricity (n)	كهرباء
energy (n)	طاقة
increase (v) (d) (n)	يزيد/زيادة
instead (adv)	بدلًا من ذلك
involve (v) (d)	يتضمن/يتورط
laboratory (n)	معمل
land (n)	أرض
level (n)	مستوى
mention (v) (ed)	يذكر
negative (adj)	سلبى
percent (adv)	بالمائة
remove (v) (d)	يزيل
researcher (n)	باحث
save (v) (d)	ينقذ/يوفر
seriously (adv)	بجدية/بخطورة

solution (n)	حل	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
southern (adj)	جنوبى	the United Nations	الأمم المتحدة
space (n)	مساحة/فراغ/فضاء	vehicle (n)	مركبة/وسيلة

Vocabulary on Listening

decade (n)	عقد (عشر سنوات)	invest (v) (ed)	يستثمر
destroy (v) (ed)	يدمر	island (n)	جزيرة
education (n)	التعليم	organisation (n)	منظمة
environment (n)	البيئة	project (n)	مشروع
gas (n)	غاز	rainforest (n)	غابات استوائية (مطيرة)
grow (v)	ينمو/يزداد	stuff (n)	أشياء/مواد
guest (n)	ضيف	vegetarian (n)	شخص نباتى (لا يأكل اللحوم)

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

area (n)	منطقة/مساحة	local (adj)	محلى
capital (n)	عاصمة/رأس مال	persuade (v) (d)	يقنع
central (adj)	وسط/متوسط	petrol (n)	بنزين
charity (n)	مؤسسة خيرية	population (n)	السكان
encourage (v) (d)	يشجع	rainfall (n)	هطول المطر
extraordinary (adj)	مميز/رائع	success (n)	نجاح
furniture (n)	أثاث		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

according to	طبقاً لـ	make more money	يدر مالاً/يكسب المزيد من المال
as a result	نتيجة لذلك	run a programme	يدير برنامجاً
get worse	يسوء/يزداد سوءاً	tell the difference	يميز الفرق (الاختلاف)
cut down	يقطع/يزيل	years to come	لسنوات قادمة
tell the difference between	يميز الاختلاف بين	look for	يبحث عن
expert on/in	خبير فى	solution to/for	حل لـ
hope for	أمل لـ	taste of	مذاق لـ
increase ... by	يزيد ... بنسبة	variety of	تنوع من
instead of	بدلاً من	work with	يعمل مع
learn about	يعرف عن	heat up	يسخن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
produce	ينتج	production	إنتاج	productive	منتج
innovate	يبدع/يبتكر	innovation	إبداع/ابتكار/فكرة مبتكرة	innovative	مبدع/إبداعى/ابتكارى
vary	يختلف/يتنوع	variety	تنوع	various	مختلف/متنوع
sustain	يدعم/يتحمل/يمد	sustainability	استدامة	sustainable	مستدام
create	يخلق/ينتج	creation	خلق/إنتاج	creative	مبدع
affect	يؤثر على	effect	تأثير	effective	مؤثر
solve	يحل	solution	حل	solvable	يمكن حله
destroy*	يدمر	destruction	دمار/تدمير	destroyed destructive	مدمَّر (تم تدميره) مدمِّر
organise	ينظم	organisation	منظمة	organised	منظَّم
succeed	ينجح	success	نجاح	successful	ناجح

* The army destroyed the settlements of the civilians.
The destruction disappointed the soldiers.
The attacks were destructive.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
destroy	يدمر	smash/ruin	construct/create	يشيد
extraordinary	مميز/رائع	amazing/incredible	ordinary/common	عادى
increase	يزيد	raise/expand	decrease/reduce	يخفض
mention	يذكر	name/point out	ignore/neglect	يتجاهل
negative	سلبى	contradictory	positive	إيجابى
source	مصدر	origin	outcome	ناتج
success	نجاح	achievement/ accomplishment	failure/defeat	فشل
sustainable	مستدام	continuous	temporary	مؤقت
variety	تنوع	diversity/variation	similarity/uniformity	تشابه

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Unfortunately, a big area of forests was cleared to be used for .... and producing crops.
   a) economy b) agriculture c) education d) culture
2. We all believe that cycling is a totally .... form of transport.
   a) believable b) noticeable c) solvable d) sustainable
3. The company where I work sells a .... of gardening products.
   a) mixture b) variety c) combination d) collocation
4. The government should punish any factory that throws .... waste in the river.
   a) chemical b) useful c) effective d) valuable
5. The farmer bought a good horse at a market where .... is bought and sold.
   a) livestock b) dairy c) agriculture d) poultry

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text (1)

What do you think the impact of overpopulation on Earth is?

1) New solutions for our growing world



According to the United Nations, there will be almost 10 billion people in the world by 2050. As a result, we will have to increase our food production[1] by about 70 percent. However, farmers do not have space to keep more livestock[2] and grow more crops[3]. Instead, they'll need to look for more sustainable[4] solutions and this will involve producing a wider variety[5] of food.

How would you feel about eating a burger that was grown in a laboratory? Scientists think that it could be more sustainable than keeping livestock. Some of the people who have eaten these burgers say that they can't tell the difference between the new burgers and real meat.

(1) إنتاج
(2) ماشية
(3) محاصيل
(4) مستدام
(5) تنوع/مجموعة متنوعة
(6) الزراعة
(7) أفكار مبتكرة

2) Changes in agriculture that can save the land



Researchers from the United Nations have found that some kinds of agriculture[6] are seriously damaging the land. This is not sustainable. If farming continues to cause so much damage, there won't be enough land left for food production. In Europe, most of the damage is due to farmers using too many chemicals, so they will need to find new ways to help their crops grow without having to use so many chemicals. In southern Africa, the problem is that there is too much rain in the summer. In the future, we can expect that farmers in southern Africa will be using innovations[7] in technology to remove water from the land and use it elsewhere.

Why does farming cause damage to the land?

How do we benefit from trees?

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

The future of forests



The world has been losing millions of trees from the rainforests[1] every year for a long time. Many trees get cut down so that we have wood to make furniture, and many more get cut down because people need the land to grow food. However, there may be hope for the future because countries around the world are changing the way we think about these important areas[2].

Changes started a long time ago in Costa Rica. Around 60% of the rainforest in this small central[3] American country was lost in the 1980s. But in the 1990s, the government started working with local[4] farmers and persuaded them to look after the rainforest instead of cutting down more trees. This encouraged[5] tourists to visit the country, and soon the local people started to make more money from tourism[6] than from cutting down trees.

It was a great success[7], but things got worse in other parts of the world, such as the Amazon rainforest, until 2004. Then many people and governments around the world started to change how they thought about rainforests, and the number of trees cut down there has been getting smaller every year. Many parts of the Amazon rainforest are now protected[8] and, like Costa Rica, it is hoped that more people will be visiting and enjoying this extraordinary[9] place in the future. Finally, we can all hope that our children will be learning about the rainforests for many years to come.

غابات استوائية (مطيرة) (1)
مناطق (2)
الوسطى (3)
محلى (4)
يشجع (5)
السياحة (6)
نجاح (7)
يحمى (8)
مميز/رائع (9)

How did Costa Ricans make money after they stopped cutting down trees?

hat do you know about the
nportance of rainforests?

Listening Text (1)



Interviewer : Hello, everyone. In today's show, I'll be talking to my guest[1], Dr Sarita Parker, who's an expert on the rainforests in Borneo. Welcome to the show, Dr Parker.

Dr Parker : It's great to be with you, John.

Interviewer : Now, we all think that we know what a rainforest is, but how would you describe it?

Dr Parker : A rainforest has a lot of trees and many different types of animals and plants live in it. And it's a place that's usually very hot and it rains a lot, too.

Interviewer : And what can you tell us about the rainforests in Borneo?

Dr Parker : Well, Borneo is a large island[2] in South-East Asia, and it has one of the oldest rainforests in the world. However, recently the island has become hotter and there has been less rain than usual. And scientists think that there will be even less rainfall[3] on the island in the next few years.

Interviewer : Why is that?

Dr Parker : Unfortunately, some farmers are cutting down trees and starting fires so they can grow crops and keep livestock there. Now the rainforest is about thirty percent smaller today than it was forty years ago. And if there's less rainforest, there's less rain and the island will get even hotter, you see. So, we're very worried that farmers are going to continue to damage the rainforest over the next few decades. That would be terrible for the animals and plant life in the rainforest, and Borneo would heat up even more.

nterviewer : Do you think those farmers will keep cutting down so many trees in the future, or will they use more sustainable ways to grow crops and keep livestock?

Dr Parker : Well, it won't be easy. Of course, many farmers are just trying to feed their families, however, we hope that in a few years' time, more farmers will be using sustainable farming techniques and things will improve. They need more information about how they can plant new trees and move crops around from one field to another each year. But farmers won't change until they understand why they need to change and they have everything they need to do that. My organisation[4] will be running an education[5] programme next month to help them.

terviewer : Thank you very much for your time, Dr Parker.

(1) ضيف
(2) جزيرة
(3) هطول المطر
(4) منظمة
(5) تعليم

Why are the rainforests in danger?

Listening Text (2)

The population[1] of Egypt is growing[2] by nearly two percent a year. That means that there are one million more people living in its cities every six months. This is a problem in a country where 95 percent[3] of its population live on about four percent of its land. It is thought that the population of Egypt will be around 128 million by 2030. So what are the solutions[4] to these problems? One plan is to invest[5] billions of pounds in a new capital city outside Cairo. This is one of the big projects[6] that will help the 700,000 young people who start looking for work each year.

(1) السكان
(2) ينمو/يزداد
(3) بالمائة
(4) حلول
(5) يستثمر
(6) مشروعات

Golden Question

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I couldn't recognise him when he went into the army. His hair had been .... short and he looked different.

a) decreased b) cropped
c) continued d) kept

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Most big cities are .... rapidly which results in serious problems.
   a) removing b) making c) growing d) continuing
2. A .... is a person who does not eat meat or fish.
   a) vegetarian b) farmer c) creator d) researcher
3. The government will .... millions of dollars in new schools and new hospitals.
   a) increase b) invest c) move d) cause
4. Australia has a low .... density. That's why they welcome immigrants المهاجرين there.
   a) devastation b) invention c) pollution d) population
5. Before joining the university, I received my .... at private schools.
   a) exercise b) education c) training d) degree

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

agriculture الزراعة
- the practice or science of farming

crop محصول
- a plant such as wheat, rice, or fruit that is grown by farmers and used as food

earth الكرة الأرضية
- the planet that we live on

innovation إبداع
- the introduction of new ideas or methods

livestock ماشية
- animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm

production إنتاج
- the process of making or growing things to be sold, especially in large quantities

sustainable مستدام
- able to continue without causing damage to the environment

source مصدر
- a thing, place, activity, etc. that you get something from

variety تنوع/مجموعة متنوعة
- the differences within a group, set of actions, etc. that make it interesting

Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

Word	Meaning	Examples
cause	١- سَبَب (يتبعها حرف الجر of) ٢- يسبب	The major cause of these accidents is the high speed of vehicles. The fire caused serious damage to the factory.
reason	١- سبب/تبرير (يتبعها حرف الجر for) ٢- يفكر/يصل إلى رأى بعد تفكير	People have different reasons for wanting to change jobs. We reasoned that they would not leave before dark.
reason with	يقنع/يتجادل مع	I tried to reason with my friend to attend the party.
reason why + جملة	سبب لـ	I don't know the reason why he was absent.

Word	Meaning	Examples
earth	الكرة الأرضية/تراب	The earth is not flat as most people believed in the past.
ground	أرض فضاء/أرضية	On my way home, my bag dropped on the ground.
land	اليابسة	The earth consists of water and land.
soil	تربة (زراعية/رملية)	This kind of vegetables needs muddy soil, not sandy soil.
floor	طابق فى بناية/أرضية الحجرة	The floor of the flat needs cleaning. My flat is on the fourth floor.

Word	Meaning	Examples
local	١- محلى(خاص بمنطقة/قرية/مدينة) ٢- أحد السكان المحليين	Alaa worked in the local newspaper before he travelled to the city. We asked one of the locals to recommend a restaurant.
national	قومى (خاص ببلد)	Tourism helps to increase the national income of many countries.
international	دولى (بين أكثر من دولة)	The United Nations is the most important international organisation.

Word	Meaning	Examples
south **southern**	جنوب جنوبى الجهات الأصلية هى: (north – south – east – west) ولتحويل هذه الكلمات إلى صفات نضيف (ern).	My cousins live in the south of Egypt. In summer, temperatures are so hot in southern Egypt.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- .... so they will need to find new ways to help their crops grow.

تستخدم (will need to) بمعنى سيتوجب عليه بنفس استخدام (will have to).

- Many trees get cut down so that we have wood to make furniture.

تستخدم (get) بدلًا من (verb to be) فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول مع بعض الأفعال.

- But in the 1990s, the government started working with local farmers.

تستخدم صيغة (المصدر .to + inf) أو (verb + ing) بعد الفعل (start).

- .... and the number of trees cut down there has been getting smaller every year.

الجملة أصلها

.... and the number of trees which are cut down there has been getting smaller every year.

وتم حذف (which are) لأنها فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول.

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. On 6th October, our army began the attacks on the enemy by .... and sea.
   a) earth b) land c) floor d) soil
2. The .... anthems الأناشيد of different countries are played at the beginning of big football matches.
   a) national b) local c) global d) international
3. My grandmother is very ill. Her joints مفاصل .... her a great pain.
   a) reason b) apply c) cause d) share
4. The .... part of Egypt such as Aswan has very hot weather.
   a) southern b) southerly c) small d) shortest

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.



Vocabulary Exercises

After we memorised the new vocabulary and read the notes, we need to practise. I think number one will be (a), do you agree?

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 Cotton has always been an important .... in Egypt for a long time.
a) solution b) innovation c) crop d) exploration

2 The government hopes to achieve .... economic growth which can eventually lead to prosperity.
a) sustainable b) productive c) unreliable d) solvable

3 Students are offered a wide .... of courses in languages and computer software in this training centre.
a) team b) mixture c) region d) variety

4 A network of wind turbines were built in the area to supply it with .... power.
a) electric b) electronic c) updated d) serious

5 The government is making great efforts to encourage .... in industry.
a) excitement b) loss c) source d) innovation

6 Scientists fear that there won't be much land available for food .... in the future.
a) education b) organisation c) production d) inspection

7 The President has announced a plan of great national projects which can .... thousands of jobs.
a) take b) end c) involve d) create

8 The war in Ukraine proved the importance of .... to provide food for people if exports were stopped or delayed.
a) fishing b) agriculture c) invention d) researching

9 The test will .... answering questions about a photograph.
a) consist b) examine c) involve d) start

10 The new drug has some .... side effects such as drowsiness النعاس and headache.
a) positive b) negative c) organised d) successful

11 A/An .... is a person who studies something carefully and tries to discover new facts about it.
a) graduate b) explorer c) researcher d) conductor

12 The company decided that 2% of its profit goes to the .... for cancer patients.
a) newspaper b) increase c) cause d) charity

13 We should make more and more efforts to .... money for our new project.
a) spend b) attribute c) save d) waste

14 Scientists are working hard to find new .... for our environmental problems.
a) solutions b) causes c) designs d) sources

15 When we cut down rainforests, some of the animal habitats موطن are totally ....
a) saved b) created c) designed d) destroyed

16 Most governments invest more in renewable .... sources such as wind and wave power.
a) food b) reactor c) energy d) aviation

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

17 Some of the problems were mentioned in his report. The word "mention" is similar to the word ....
a) name b) neglect c) ignore d) invent

18 Cooperation and teamwork are two necessary qualities for the .... and progress of any society.
a) succeed b) success c) successful d) successfully

19 The population of Egypt increased .... about 2% last year.
a) out b) in c) by d) of

20 Eating fast food will eventually have a bad .... on your health.
a) affect b) effect c) effective d) affection

21 I decided to try tennis instead .... volleyball in the sports club.
a) in b) at c) of d) for

22 Unfortunately, as time passed, things .... worse in the shop until it was closed.
a) made b) got c) done d) devised

23 Success was achieved as a result of the good .... of the new manager.
a) organise b) organisation c) organised d) disorganise

24 The desired outcome of most services is a satisfied customer. The noun "outcome" is an antonym to the noun ....
a) source b) result c) explanation d) purpose

25 The young scientist became rich after he .... a lot of money out of his new invention.
a) did b) printed c) made d) declared

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

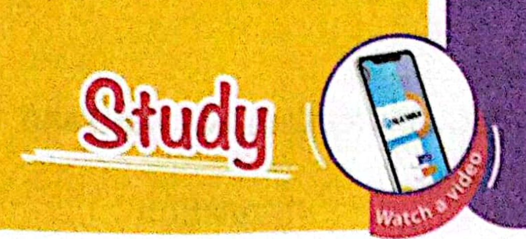
26 The bomb destroyed the building. The synonyms of the word "destroy" are ....
a) repair b) construct c) smash d) devastate e) touch

27 The market is full of farm fresh .... and the vegetables are not very expensive today.
a) affection b) produce c) innovation d) protection e) production

28 There are no simple solutions .... the problem of overpopulation.
a) to b) in c) at d) for e) by

29 The number of students at the college has .... from 2000 to over 5000.
a) grown b) increased c) reduced d) decreased e) planted

30 The new movie is supposed to be much better than the old one, but I can't .... the difference.
a) report b) say c) tell d) repeat e) ask





Lessons 1 & 2

B Language

Future Forms

1 Future simple المستقبل البسيط



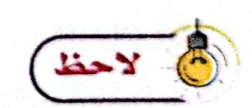
A will + inf.

Form will + inf.	• I will draw a picture in the test.
Negative won't + inf.	• I won't draw a picture in the test.
Question Will + subj. + inf. ...?	• Will you draw a picture in the test?
Passive will be + P.P.	• A picture will be drawn in the test.

(will + inf.) is used with the following

On-the-spot decisions (Quick decisions) القرارات الفورية	▸ I like these shoes. I'll buy them. ▸ **Father:** I'm thirsty. **Son:** I'll get you some water.
Future facts حقائق المستقبل (شيء لا نتحكم فيه)	▸ Mazen will be 9 years old next month. ▸ Today is the 10th of Sept. Tomorrow will be the 11th.
Predictions based on what we think (without evidence) التنبؤ القائم على الاعتقاد (بدون دليل)	▸ Egypt will win the next World Cup. ▸ It will rain heavily tomorrow.

Offer العرض	▸ I see that you have difficulty with these questions. Wait a minute and I'll help you. ▸ Since you're tired, I'll cook dinner tonight.
Request الطلب	▸ Will you help me with my homework, Hazem? ▸ Will you get me two kilos of sugar when you go to the market?
Threats التهديد	▸ If you make these mistakes again, I'll punish you. ▸ Behave well or I'll tell your father.
Warning التحذير	▸ Factories must stop polluting the air or we won't be able to breathe. ▸ If we don't arrive early, we won't find a place to park.
Some verbs, expressions and adverbs: مع بعض الأفعال والتعبيرات والأحوال	- Verbs: **think/ believe/ expect/ promise/ hope/ predict** ▸ I promise I will get higher marks on the next exam. ▸ I hope my brother will pass his driving test. ▸ My parents think that I'll become an artist one day. - Expressions: **be sure/ be afraid** ▸ I'm sure Osama will win the race. - Adverbs: **perhaps/ certainly/ probably/ possibly** ▸ **Perhaps**, my boss will punish me for being late. ▸ The police will **probably** find the criminal.



hoped, thought + would	- I thought (didn't expect) that she would visit us.
promise + to + inf.	- I have promised them to come early tonight.
just decided قرار سريع	- He has just decided that he won't join this club.
فعل أمر **+ or + will (won't)**	- Get up early or you won't catch the train.

Got it



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- If you are too tired to cut the grass, I .... it for you.

a) will cut **b)** am going to cut **c)** cut **d)** am cutting

الإجابة هي (a) لأن الجملة بها عرض للمساعدة.

B) be (am/ is/ are) going to + inf.

Form
(be) going to + inf. • I am going to fix my bike today.

Negative
(be) + not + going to + inf. • I am not going to fix my bike today.

Question
(be) + subj. + going to + inf. ...? • Are you going to fix your bike today?

Passive
(be) going to + be + p.p. • My bike is going to be fixed today.

(be going to) is used with the following

For plans and decisions we have already made للخطط والنوايا والقرارات التى اتخذناها بالفعل	▸ He's going to employ more staff. (plan خطة / intention نية) ▸ I'm going to move to a bigger house next year. (decisionقرار)
To make predictions with present reality or evidence: التنبؤ بدليل (شيء نراه أو نعرفه)	▸ Look at him! He is going to win the race. (He is ahead of the other runners). ▸ The wall is moving. It is going to fall.



C) Present simple المضارع البسيط

Form

- He/ She/ It/ singular + (v. + s, es, ies).
- I/ They/ We/ You/ plural + 1st form of the verb without "s".

(Present simple) is used with the following:

- When we refer to programmes or timetables (planes/ trains/ busses, etc.).

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل مع الجداول المحددة والبرامج والمواعيد الثابتة، مثل: مواعيد الطائرات والحافلات والقطارات والسينما والمسرح والتليفزيون والامتحانات ... إلخ.

- The film starts at 9 p.m. (cinema programme)
- The plane arrives at Cairo Airport at 7:30. (timetable)
- The train to Assuit leaves at 6 o'clock tomorrow morning. (timetable)

D) Present continuous (am/ is/ are + v-ing) المضارع المستمر

Form

- (am/ is/ are + v-ing)

(Present continuous) is used with the following:

- For fixed arrangements in the near future.

- يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل مع الأشياء التى تم الترتيب لها فى المستقبل القريب.

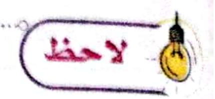
- I'm flying to London tomorrow morning. (I've got the ticket.)
- I can't watch the final match with you as we're giving a party tomorrow. (Everything has been arranged.)
- I am meeting Mr Ibrahim at his office at 10 a.m. tomorrow.

The time conjunctions used with future simple and perfect الروابط الزمنية

The future simple is used with the following time conjunctions:

Future simple (will/ be going to + inf.)	after, before, till/until, when, as soon as	Present simple Present perfect

- After Ahmed finishes/ has finished his exams, I'll take him for a picnic.
- The manager is going to see you as soon as he comes out of the meeting.
- Call me as soon as you get back.



الفعل الأمر يحل محل المستقبل.

- I won't touch (Don't touch) anything before the police arrive.
- He won't say anything until the boss tells him.

Extra points

١) الفعل think يأخذ will ولكن إذا كان هناك دليل نستخدم be going to

- Bahaa is a careless driver. I think he will have an accident one day.
- Look! Bahaa is driving dangerously fast. I think he is going to have an accident.

٢) تدل جمل التحذير (Be careful! – Look out! – Take care!) غالبـًا على قرب حدوث الفعل، فالشخص يرى شيئًا قريب الحدوث فيحذر منه لذلك نستخدم بعد هذه الأفعال be going to.

- Look out! We are going to crash! There is a car coming.

وأما إذا كان التحذير عامًا نستخدم will .

- Be careful or you will fall in the newly dug hole on your way to the market.

٢) بعد الأفعال think/ expect/ predict/ be sure نستخدم will.

أما بعد الأفعال thought/ expected/ predicted/ (was/ were) sure فنستخدم would.

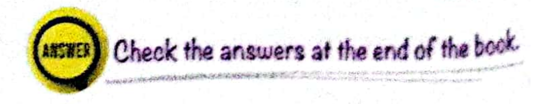
- I thought they would phone me that evening.

عند التحدث عن الآمال والطموحات الشخصية يمكن أن نستخدم be going to.

- I think I'm going to be a good football player.

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The band .... Denmark next May. They have already made arrangements.
   a) will visit b) are going to visit c) visit d) are visiting
2. They will move to another city after their father ....
   a) will retire b) retired c) retires d) retire
3. We .... to Alex in July. All things are okay.
   a) will be moved b) are moving c) move d) will move
4. My English lesson .... at ten tomorrow morning.
   a) starts b) is starting
   c) will start d) will be starting
5. It's arranged. We .... Sharm El-Sheikh this summer.
   a) are going to b) are going to go c) go to d) will go to





Language Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Practice is the best way to apply what we have learnt.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Someone is at the door. I .... who it is.
   a) am going to see b) will see c) am seeing d) would see
2. I'm sure my friend .... win the next school championship in swimming.
   a) should b) would c) is going to d) will
3. They've got the tickets; they .... to London.
   a) will have flown b) fly c) are flying d) will fly
4. The basketball team .... two games next week.
   a) play b) are playing c) have played d) plays
5. The programme .... at seven o'clock this evening.
   a) starts b) is starting c) will start d) will be starting
6. I think it .... hot tomorrow.
   a) is going to be b) will be c) is being d) would be
7. I .... the summer holiday in Marsa Matrouh as planned.
   a) am going to spend b) will spend c) am spending d) would spend
8. The train to Cairo is on platform No. 4 and it .... at 9.30.
   a) will be leaving b) will leave c) leaves d) is leaving
9. When he .... next week, he will give me some money.
   a) come b) will come c) is coming d) comes
10. Our manager .... dinner with the Minister next Thursday as appointed.
    a) has b) had c) is having d) is going to have
11. She is flying to Italy next week, her flight .... off at 7 a.m.
    a) took b) taking c) take d) takes
12. She .... to Spain next spring.
    a) is travelling b) travels c) has travelled d) would travel
13. **A:** Have you got any plans for tomorrow? **B:** Yes, I .... my grandparents.
    a) would visit b) visit c) am going to visit d) will visit
14. I feel terrible with a severe stomachache. I think I .... be sick.
    a) should b) am going to c) am to d) will

15 My brother has decided to immigrate يهاجر. He .... next month.

a) will travel
b) travels
c) is going to travel
d) travelling

16 I'm looking for my e-book reader. I .... an e-book on it.

a) will be read
b) am going to read
c) will read
d) read

17 There are a lot of people in the room. It .... difficult to find a chair.

a) will be
b) is going to be
c) is being
d) will have been

18 I predict that in the future mobile phones .... much smaller.

a) are going to be
b) are
c) will have been
d) will be

19 The fridge is empty. .... and get some food, please?

a) Will you go
b) You will go
c) Do you go
d) Are you going

20 It is getting hot. I .... the windows.

a) am opening
b) will be opening
c) open
d) will open

21 Ali will go to the park when he .... his homework. إدارة شبراخيت ٢٠٢٢

a) will finish
b) finish
c) had finished
d) finishes

22 They have intended to buy a big house. They .... buy it soon. إدارة أسيوط التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) are buying
b) are going to
c) may
d) will

23 I'm very late. .... me to the club, please? إدارة القناطر التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) Do you drive
b) Are you driving
c) Will you drive
d) Are you going to drive

24 What a wonderful shirt, I .... it. إدارة نجع حمادى ٢٠٢٢

a) buy
b) will buy
c) am going to buy
d) am buying

25 Most of our shopping .... on the internet. إدارة بني عبيد التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) will be doing
b) will do
c) will be done
d) is going to do

26 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:

a) It's cold here. I will close the window.
b) It's cold here. I will have closed the window.
c) It's cold here. I will be closing the window.
d) It's cold here. Shall you close the window?

27 Choose the best correct answer:

a) I will be helping you with your homework if you want.
b) I will help you with your homework if you want.
c) I will have helped you with your homework if you want.
d) I'm helping you with your homework if you want.

28 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:
a) Liverpool is winning the next match.
b) Liverpool will have won the next match.
c) Liverpool is going to win. They're three-nil already.
d) Liverpool will be winning the next match.

29 Choose one correct answer to the following sentence:
As it's cold and rainy, I ....
a) won't go out today
b) am going out today
c) will have gone out today
d) will be going out today

30 One of the following questions is grammatically incorrect:
a) What are you going to do next weekend?
b) What do you do next weekend?
c) What are your plans for next weekend?
d) What do you intend to do next weekend?

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

31 "Why have you got so much food?"
"Because I .... a meal for ten people."
a) was cooking
b) am going to cook
c) cook
d) will cook
e) have decided to cook

32 I promise .... hard and get high marks this year.
a) to study
b) I to study
c) I will study
d) to have studied
e) will study

33 It's very hot here ....
a) I'll turn on the air conditioner.
b) Will you turn on the air conditioner?
c) Are you going to turn on the air conditioner?
d) You will turn on the air conditioner.
e) You are going to turn on the air conditioner.

34 .... visit the Egyptian museum next weekend?
a) Do you
b) Do you offer to
c) Are you suggesting to
d) Are you going to
e) Do you intend to

35 "Since you don't know the way, I'll give you a lift." This is a kind of a/an ....
a) suggestion
b) On-the-spot decision
c) offer
d) request
e) excuse

Test Yourself in 20



Unit 3
Lessons 1 & 2

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Scientists always think of new ways to help farmers to promote .... agriculture.
a) sustainable b) real c) toxic d) unavailable

2 Toyota's latest car has just gone into .... for the Japanese market.
a) produce b) production c) productive d) produced

3 The battery of the new mobile I bought can store .... for one or two days.
a) gas b) atom c) chemical d) energy

4 The study about COVID-19 vaccine was carried out by .... at Oxford University.
a) researchers b) farmers c) helpers d) officers

5 There was a lot of rainfall this winter. As a/an ...., floods happened in the country.
a) reason b) result c) effect d) impact

6 Scientists warn us that .... down rainforests has a bad effect on the planet.
a) sitting b) breaking c) destroying d) cutting

7 The space project took a whole .... from 2010 to 2020 and it was successful.
a) reign b) area c) decade d) century

8 The train accident got much .... in the national newspapers because of its drama.
a) space b) area c) gap d) hole

9 We .... the meeting as soon as he arrives.
a) start b) have started c) started d) will start

10 There are no clouds in the sky today. I think that it .... very hot.
a) will be b) will have been c) is going to be d) is

11 Quick! Give me a paper tissue, I .... again!
a) will sneeze b) am going to sneeze
c) sneeze d) sneezed

12 Sayed thinks that his team .... next week's competition.
a) may be winning b) will be winning c) will be won d) will win

13 A: Oh! I haven't got enough money to pay! B: Don't worry. I .... you some.
a) am lending b) am going to lend c) will lend d) lend

14 A: Why do you want so many oranges? B: I .... make an orange juice.
a) am going to b) will c) would d) won't

15 The programme predicts what life .... in 20, 30 or 40 years' time.
a) will be like b) will be liking c) will have liked d) may be liking

16 'Aya is in hospital.' 'Oh really? I don't know. I .... and visit her.
a) will go b) am going c) am going to go d) will be going

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You are a citizen of the country you were born in. Usually, citizens live in their country as loyal[1] members of society. Many countries also have options so people who are not natural-born citizens can become citizens of those countries. When they complete the requirements, they are called naturalised citizens. As a citizen of your country, you have some rights, duties[2], and responsibilities. The law of any country should guarantee[3] the rights of all citizens and the rights should be the same for all citizens. The rights of citizens are protected in the constitution[4]. A citizen has the right to speak freely and the right to religious freedom. A citizen who is accused of a crime has a right to a fair trial.

In exchange for their rights, citizens have duties and responsibilities. They have a duty to serve in the army when asked. They should obey all laws. In wartime[5], they must serve in the armed forces when required to. They must pay taxes to support the services and programs of the government. Good citizens vote in elections to express their opinion on how the government should be run.

In addition to national citizenship, people are citizens of a state and a city. They have similar rights and responsibilities in each level of citizenship.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 What protects the rights of the citizen in any country?
- a) The citizenship.
- b) The responsibilities.
- c) The constitution.
- d) The trial.

2 The best title to the passage is "..................".
- a) Asking for the rights
- b) Paying taxes
- c) The responsibilities of the citizenship
- d) The citizen's rights and responsibilities

3 "Doing what you are told" means ....
- a) obeying
- b) agreement
- c) voting
- d) exchanging

4 People who vote in elections to express their opinion are ....
- a) volunteers
- b) respectable and noble
- c) greedy
- d) selfish

(1) مخلص (2) واجبات (3) يضمن (4) الدستور (5) وقت الحرب

5 Naturalised citizens are those who ....

a) were born in the same country
b) participate in the elections
c) have duties not rights
d) are asked for a set of requirements

6 When we pay taxes, we perform one of our ....

a) duties
b) rights
c) abilities
d) advantages

7 What is not mentioned about the citizens' rights?

a) To speak freely.
b) To adopt any religion.
c) To practise sports.
d) To be judged fairly.

8 The underlined word "taxes" means ....

a) money given to the bank
b) money given to the prisoners
c) money given to the government
d) services done to the state men

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. In the last fifty years, technology has really changed the way farmers produce food. Agriculture is now developed with the help of machines that save time and effort.

....

....

2. Modern food industries[1] play important roles in reducing food waste and improving food preservation, thus reducing the total environmental impact[2] of agriculture and improving food security.

....

....

3. Organising your life is a necessity if you want to achieve your most valuable[3] goals. Well-organised people are the most successful and effective members in life.

....

....

4. The migration[4] from the countryside to the city has its negative effects on the Egyptian society. That's because it leads to many serious economic problems.

....

....

5. Egypt had its leading role in the economic, political, and educational fields, especially in the Middle East. Thus, we should try to help restore this role.

....

....

6. Mass media[5] play an important role in forming public opinion and effective awareness[6] in our country. Therefore, they should be used properly for useful purposes.

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- مـن المهم أن يـدرك المزارعون أهمية الحفاظ على الزراعة المسـتدامة للمحافظة على إمـدادات الطعام لنا وللأجيال القادمة، وهكذا نستطيع حل مشكلة نقص الطعام.

....

....

٢- تؤثر الأعمال الدرامية كثيرًا فى الناس، لذا يجب استغلالها لتصحيح المفاهيم(٧) الاجتماعية ودعم القيم والأخلاق فى المجتمع.

....

....

٣- أحد أخطر عيوب الكمبيوتر والتليفون المحمول توسيع الفجوة(٨) بين الشباب ووالديهم، حيث يقضون ساعات طويلة فى استخدامهما دون التواصل مع الوالدين والعائلة، لذا لابد من التصدى لتلك الظاهرة الخطيرة.

....

....

٤- عُرفت مصر على مر التاريخ بأنها أرض التسامح(٩) الدينى والتعايش(١٠) بين المسلمين والمسيحيين الذين عاشوا بسلام لقرون عديدة مما يشكل عاملًا هامًا للوحدة بين شعبها.

....

....

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Our duty towards the people with special needs (the disabled)"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.
....	....	....	....	....

(1) صناعات	(3) قيم/ذو قيمة	(5) وسائل الاعلام	(7) concepts	(9) tolerance
(2) تأثير	(4) هجرة	(6) الوعى	(8) gap	(10) coexistence





Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

algae (n) طحالب	heat up (v) يزداد حرارة
available (adj) متوفر/متاح	introduction (n) مقدمة
boring (adj) ممل	link (n) رابط
chance (n) فرصة	lose (v) يفقد/يخسر
conclude (v) (d) يستنتج/يختتم/ينهي	notice (v) (d) يلاحظ
conclusion (n) استنتاج/ختام	ocean (n) المحيط
continent (n) قارة	replace (v) (d) يستبدل
efficiently (adv) بكفاءة	seaweed (n) الأعشاب البحرية
evidence (n) دليل	several (adj) عديد
fact (n) حقيقة	suggest (v) (ed) يقترح
factual (adj) واقعي/حقيقي	tasty (adj) ذو مذاق جيد
farm (v) ed يزرع / يفلح	topic (n) موضوع
fashion (n) موضة	unusual (adj) غير معتاد/غريب
giant (adj) (n) عملاق	

Vocabulary on Listening

argument (n) جدال/حجة	original (adj) أصلي
complete (adj) مكتمل/ تام	summarise (v) (d) يلخص
description (n) وصف	summary (n) ملخص
gap (n) فجوة/فراغ	underline (v) (d) ضع خطا تحت
include (v) (d) يشمل	word (n) كلمة

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

Antarctica (n)	القارة القطبية الجنوبية	leaves (n)	أوراق شجر
argue (v) (d)	يجادل/ يقدم حجة	main (adj)	أساسي
contain (v) (ed)	يحتوي على	outdoor (adj)	خارج المنزل
control (v) (led)	يسيطر على	predict (v) (ed)	يتنبأ بـ
earn (v) (ed)	يكسب	produce (n) (v) (d)	إنتاج زراعي/ينتج
flow (n) (v) (ed)	انسياب/ينساب	reuse (v) (d)	يعيد استخدام
focus (v) (ed)	يركز	roof (n)	سقف/سطح المنزل
fresh (adj)	طازج	specific (adj)	محدد
fruit (n)	ثمرة/فاكهة	surprisingly (adv)	من المدهش
hydroponics (n)	الزراعة المائية	urban (adj)	مدني/حضري
insect (n)	حشرة		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

to conclude	وفي الختام	make sense	ذو معنى
in fact	في الحقيقة/الواقع	over the next few decades	عبر العقود القليلة القادمة
in my view	في رأيي	grow to	ينمو إلى
available for	متوفر لـ	link to	رابط لـ
based on	معتمد (مرتكز) على	opinion on/about	رأي عن
focus on	يركز على	source of	مصدر لـ
good for	جيد لـ		

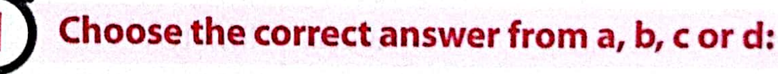
Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
argue	يجادل	argument	جدل	argumentative	جدلي
bore	يضجر/يمل	boredom	الملل	boring bored	ممل متضجر
describe	يصف	description	وصف	descriptive	وصفي
predict*	يتنبأ بـ	prediction	تنبؤ	predictable	يمكن التنبؤ به
replace	يستبدل	replacement	استبدال/بديل	replaced	مستبدل
specify	يحدد	specification	تحديد	specific	محدد
suggest	يقترح	suggestion	اقتراح	suggestive	اقتراحي

* - Scientists predict that the sun will explode one day.
- The prediction caused a lot of arguments.
- This case is not easily predictable.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

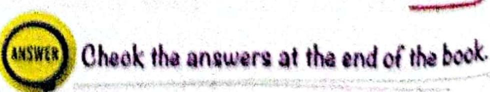
Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
boring	ممل	uninteresting/dull	interesting/exciting شيق
control	يسيطر على/يتحكم	dominate/command	neglect/obey يتجاهل/يطيع
factual	حقيقى/واقعى	real/actual	fictional/false خيالى/غير حقيقى
notice	يلاحظ	observe/regard	ignore/overlook يهمل/يتغاضى عن
predict	يتنبأ بـ	forecast/anticipate	disbelieve/misunderstand لا يصدق/يسىء فهم
specific	محدد	definite/particular	common/ambiguous شائع/غامض
suggest	يقترح	propose/advise	oppose/deny يعارض/ينكر
urban	مدنى/حضرى	civil	rural ريفى



Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The new electric car make ماركة will become .... for sale in April of next year.
   a) main b) suitable c) available d) reliable
2. Europe and Asia are two .... which lie next to each other.
   a) continents b) countries c) islands d) oceans
3. Workers should work .... in order to increase production.
   a) surprisingly b) efficiently c) negatively d) passively
4. Police officers are trying hard to find .... which proves the criminal's guilt.
   a) prediction b) description c) chance d) evidence
5. The problem of air pollution is especially serious in .... areas rather than villages.
   a) urban b) rural c) ocean d) desert



Check the answers at the end of the book.

What is the strangest type of food you have heard about? Would you like to try it?

Reading Text (1)

Is algae the future of food?

We will need to find sustainable sources of food in the future because there will be more people to feed and many places will be too hot and dry for agriculture. So, why don't we think about farms in the sea?

Algae[1] are plants that grow very quickly in water and wet places. They are eaten by everything from the smallest fish to giant whales. Some kinds of algae are called seaweed[2], and this is a very popular food in China and Japan.

Algae is very healthy and some scientists believe that a lot more people will be eating it in the future. They hope that farmers won't need to damage the environment, because they will be growing our food in the ocean[3]. In fact, scientists think that growing algae will help to clean the sea and improve the air that we breathe because algae makes a lot of oxygen.

But will you want to eat it? Well, you might not even notice[4]. Scientists are already using seaweed to replace[5] salt in bread and some other foods to make it much healthier.

(1) طحالب
(2) أعشاب بحرية
(3) المحيط
(4) يلاحظ
(5) يستبدل

Reading Text (2)

This essay will focus on the future of agriculture.

First, I will explain the reason why agriculture needs to change. After that, we will look at several ways that agriculture could change. Finally, I will give my opinion on what farmers should do to prepare for the future.

The Earth's surface is heating up and soon there will be less land that farmers can use.

In the case of Africa, the continent[1] could lose up to 18 percent of its farmland in the next fifty years. As a result, farmers will need to farm their land even more efficiently[2].

Due to the fact that there will be less land available[3] for agriculture in the future, farmers will need to grow a greater variety of crops. Evidence[4] suggests that keeping livestock will not be sustainable and we may start the production of new sources of food, like algae, instead.

In my view, farmers should see this is as a chance to try new things and to start using new technology, such as robots, on their farms. They should start doing this immediately so they're prepared for the future.

To conclude[5], agriculture is clearly going to change a lot over the next few decades and farmers will need to change the way they farm, too.

(1) قارة
(2) بكفاءة
(3) متوفر/متاح
(4) دليل
(5) يستنتج

Suggest 2 solutions for the problem of overpopulation and mention 2 effects on the environment.

Reading Text (3)

Hydroponics

With the population of the world predicted to grow to around 10 billion by 2050, one problem we will have is finding enough land for food production. A possible solution to this problem is using something called hydroponics[1].

Hydroponics is a way to grow plants without using any soil. Instead, farmers grow the plants in special water which contains[2] all the food that plants need to grow. This is a big help for farmers living in areas with poor soil[3]. Hydroponics uses a lot less space than traditional farming and, surprisingly, it also uses less water because any water that the plants do not use is reused. There are also fewer problems with insects[4]. Almost, any plant can grow using hydroponics and many plants produce more fruit[5] and leaves[6] this way.

Some people argue that hydroponics is not very good for large farms because they need expensive computers to control the flow[7] of water, light, etc. to the plants, but others argue that it could offer the best solution to future problems. Many scientists think that in the future; we will be using hydroponics to grow food even in places where nothing grows now, such as deserts, Antarctica[8] or even space.

(1) الزراعة المائية
(2) يحتوى على
(3) تربة
(4) حشرات
(5) ثمرة
(6) أوراق شجر
(7) انسياب
(8) القارة القطبية الجنوبية

What are the benefits of hydroponics and can we use it on a large scale?

What do you know about urban farming?

Reading Text (4) (Workbook)

Urban farming

This essay will focus[1] on something my uncle is planning to do to help food production: something called urban[2] farming.

My uncle lives in London and first, I will explain what urban farming is and why he wants to do it with a group of his friends. Urban farming is growing food in our cities. Of course, cities are not usually good for farming due to the fact that there is so little green space, but he says they will be using flat roofs[3], gardens and open spaces to grow what they can.

In the case of London, people already grow a lot of flowers in their gardens, but next year, the group of friends will be planting more fruit and vegetables in any open spaces they can use. At the end of the year, they will be eating fresh[4] fruit and vegetables from these spaces.

In my view, urban farming is a great idea. It will help my uncle and his friends to save money in the shops, and it might also help them to earn[5] money. They hope they will be selling some of the produce[6] to local restaurants and markets.

To conclude, urban farming is an interesting idea. All the evidence suggests that it could help us grow our own food in the future, even in cities without much outdoor[7] space.

(1) يركز
(2) مدنى
(3) أسطح
(4) طازج
(5) يكسب
(6) إنتاج زراعى
(7) خارج المنزل

What are the benefits of urban farming?

...u usually need help from
...end when you do your
homework?

Listening Text

...mir : Is that your homework, Hany?
...any : Yes. What's wrong with it? It took me ages.
...mir : I can see that. It's very long.
...any : So what?
...mir : Well, we were asked to write a summary[1], and yours looks longer than the text we're summarising[2]! You know it should be shorter, right?
Hany : Yes, I know that. But I didn't want to miss anything important.
Amir : So, what was the text about?
Hany : I can't remember, but it's all in my summary.
Amir : My friend, you need to think more and write less. Start by reading the whole text and try to understand as much as you can.
Ask yourself: What's the main idea? How would I explain it to a friend quickly? Don't start writing anything until you've done that.
Hany : But you know me. I always forget something important.
Amir : Then you should read the text again. But the second time, underline[3] the most important words or phrases in it. These are usually nouns for the things or people that the text is about, verbs for important actions, or phrases for times and places.
Hany : Okay.
Amir : After that, try to only look at the important words that you underlined when you're writing your summary. And just write complete sentences that fill in the gaps[4] between those words.
Hany : I see.
Amir : It's also helpful to use words or phrases that show the order in which things happen. Phrases like 'first', 'after that' or 'finally'.
Hany : And then?
Amir : When you've finished writing your summary, read it again. Check that it's clear, and then look back at the original[5] text to see if you've included[6] all the important information.

(1) ملخص
(2) يلخص
(3) يضع خطًا تحت
(4) فجوات
(5) أصلي
(6) يشمل

What are the most important points to follow on summarising a long text?

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

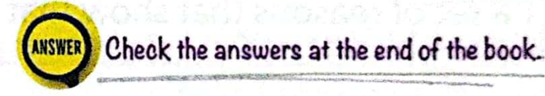
1. We need to provide a convincing .... as to why the system should be changed.
   a) debate b) argument
   c) summary d) disagreement

2. The murderer was sent to prison because a witness gave a detailed .... of him.
   a) description b) introduction
   c) conclusion d) infection

3. Their .... idea was to fix their old car, but they decided to buy a new one instead.
   a) factual b) original
   c) dispensing d) giant

4. I .... the essay's main points in the final paragraph.
   a) assimilated b) expected
   c) summarised d) divided

5. Unfortunately, there is a .... between the lifestyles of the old and the young in most societies.
   a) notice b) flow
   c) gab d) gap



Check the answers at the end of the book.

Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

conclusion خاتمة/استنتاج
- the end or final part of something

algae طحالب
- a very simple plant without stems or leaves that grows in or near water

link رابط
- a way in which two things or ideas are related to each other

summary ملخص
- a short description that gives the most important information in a text.

argument حجة
- a set of reasons that show that something is true or untrue, right or wrong

Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

1

tasty
ذو مذاق جيد (تستخدم للطعام فقط)
- My sister makes a really tasty dish with chicken and rice.

tasteful
ذو ذوق جيد (مختار بعناية)
- The hotel lobby is filled with tasteful furniture and original artwork.

earn يكسب (مالاً عن طريق العمل غالبًا)	▸ She was earning good money during her work at the bank.
gain يكتسب (شيئًا معنويًا)	▸ In her first job, she gained experience as a programme manager. لاحظ gain (speed - weight) ▸ I have gained a lot of weight because of eating fast food.
win يفوز بـ (مباراة/جائزة/مسابقة)	▸ It's supposed to be easier to win your home games. ▸ How does it feel to have won the gold medal?
beat يهزم/يتغلب على	▸ I always beat my friend at tennis; he gets annoyed.

2

lose يفقد/يخسر	▸ I lost my handbag at the airport because it was overcrowded. ▸ Our team lost the final match of the championship last year.
miss يفتقد/يفوته شيء	▸ I really missed my family when I was abroad last month. ▸ I missed the train because I got up very late.

3

fresh - طازج -جديد وشيق -حديث (تم أو يتم من وقت قصير) -نشيط/ملىء بالحيوية	▸ I like to have fresh juice with my breakfast. طازج ▸ Our teacher always encourages having fresh ideas about science. جديد وشيق ▸ The marks on the shirt are fresh. You should wash it immediately. حديث (تم أو يتم من وقت قصير) ▸ The players of the team still look fresh after the first half. They are very fit. نشيط/ملىء بالحيوية

4

outdoor بالخارج/خلوى (خارج الأماكن المغلقة) صفة يأتى بعدها اسم.	▸ Father has liked outdoor activities like camping and hiking since he was a child.
outdoors بالخارج (خارج الأماكن المغلقة) حال/ظرف يصف فعلًا.	▸ I asked my wife to have breakfast outdoors. It was sunny and nice.

5

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- .... and some scientists believe that a lot more people will be eating it in the future.

. تستخدم (a lot - much) قبل صفات المقارنة للتعبير عن الاختلاف الكبير بين طرفى المقارنة.

- Evidence suggests that keeping livestock will not be sustainable and ....

All the evidence suggests that it could help us grow our own food.

. تستخدم جملة كاملة بعد (suggest) ويمكن استخدام (verb + ing) أيضاً.

I suggested going to the cinema tonight.

- .... one problem we will have is finding enough land for food production.

- صيغة الفعل (finding) بعد (is) ليست مضارعًا مستمرًا، فصيغة (verb + ing) بمفردها تعنى الاسم (إيجاد).

- This is a big help for farmers living in areas with poor soil.

- هذه الجملة أصلها:

This is a big help for farmers who live in areas with poor soil.

- حذف ضمير الوصل (who) واستخدمت صيغة (verb + ing).

- I will explain what urban farming is and why he wants to do it with a group of his friends.

- استخدمت صيغة الجملة (فاعل + فعل) بعد أدوات الاستفهام (what - why) لأن الجملة فى صيغة غير المباشر.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. At least 600 employees will .... their jobs if the factory closes.
   a) miss b) gain c) increase d) lose
2. With the new players, our local team will be a tough team to ....
   a) win b) beat c) earn d) gain
3. Fast food can be ...., but it contains a lot of fat.
   a) tasty b) tasteful c) tasteless d) taste
4. Fouad wants a job that will let him work .... He doesn't like staying in offices.
   a) indoor b) indoors c) outdoor d) outdoors
5. The manager encourages all fresh and creative ideas for products."Fresh" here means ....
   a) new b) tasteful c) drinkable d) energetic



Check the answers at the end of the book.



Vocabulary Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 Seaweed and other .... are eaten in China and Japan especially by people who live near the ocean.
a) algae b) insects c) fruits d) meat

2 Tickets for the new movie are .... at the box office of most cinemas.
a) factual b) acceptable c) available d) probable

3 I think you have a good .... of getting the job because you have good qualifications.
a) topic b) chance c) study d) subject

4 The police came to the .... that the criminal was not telling the truth.
a) introduction b) experience c) argument d) conclusion

5 The shop assistant told me that long skirts are still in .... this winter.
a) flow b) fashion c) flood d) fact

6 The Panama Canal provides a .... between the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans.
a) gap b) travel c) space d) link

7 The .... of our research this month will be the new space stations.
a) topic b) reason c) object d) fact

8 At the end of the news programme, they often give you a/an .... of the main stories.
a) evidence b) research c) summary d) introduction

9 Although he practised hard, he couldn't .... the race, but came fourth.
a) beat b) win c) earn d) gain

10 Scientists are trying to .... what the Amazon will look like in 20 years' time.
a) protect b) conclude c) predict d) remove

11 I've always wanted to live in the countryside to enjoy the .... air and the beautiful views.
a) original b) dull c) renewed d) fresh

12 .... is the process of growing plants in water or sand, rather than in soil.
a) Agriculture b) Hydroponics c) Industry d) Botany

13 Children's television programmes are made mainly for a/an .... age group.
a) public b) available c) specific d) accepted

14 The doctor tried to stop the .... of blood from the wound that was bleeding.
a) produce b) downpour c) flow d) storm

15 In my ...., new ways of farming are very important for us.
a) view b) sight c) scene d) scenery

16 Many experts say that there is real .... that the economy is improving in Egypt.
a) fiction b) art c) evidence d) science

17 While the oven is .... up, you can prepare the sauce for the chocolate cake.
a) heating b) speeding c) hurrying d) descending

18 The tie my friend wore at the interview was simple, but very ....
a) tasty b) tasteful c) tasteless d) taste

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

19 Most young people don't like to watch news programmes saying that they are ....
a) bore b) boredom c) bored d) boring

20 The film is based .... a true story of an American soldier during the Second World War.
a) at b) for c) on d) about

21 The bank guard was punished for neglecting his duty. The word "neglect" is an antonym of the word "..................".
a) expect b) control c) employ d) dismiss

22 You must rewrite this sentence as it doesn't .... any sense to me.
a) do b) notice c) accept d) make

23 I asked my friends to give me their opinions .... my new watch.
a) for b) at c) about d) over

24 Dreams can sometimes seem very real. The word "real" is similar in meaning to the word "..................".
a) fictional b) factual c) available d) advised

25 The woman gave an accurate .... of the man who stole her bag.
a) describe b) description c) described d) descriptive

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 Newspapers predicted that the President would be re-elected. The synonyms of the noun"predict" are ....
a) develop b) forecast c) control d) anticipate e) neglect

27 The sports group will discuss a number of important .... about new sports in their meeting.
a) topics b) reasons c) subjects d) items e) searches

28 The police think they may have found some .... evidence that links him to the murder.
a) gradual b) fainting c) fresh d) faraway e) new

29 I noticed that he was fairly quiet during dinner. The antonyms of the verb"notice" are ....
a) note b) attend c) ignore d) interest e) overlook

30 At the .... of the meeting of the two groups, little progress has been made.
a) conclusion b) venue c) end d) place e) procedure





Lessons 3 & 4

B Language

Future continuous المستقبل المستمر

Form

will be + v-ing

- I'll be playing at 7 p.m. tomorrow.

Negative

won't be + v-ing

- I won't be waiting for you at 10 p.m. tomorrow.

Interrogative

Will + subj. + be + v-ing?

- Will you be painting your room at this time next week?

Usage الاستخدام

1 For actions that will be in progress at a stated future time.

يستخدم للأحداث التى ستكون مستمرة عند وقت محدد فى المستقبل.

- Don't phone me at 11 p.m. as I'll be sleeping at this time.

2 For actions that will definitely happen in the future as a result of a routine or arrangement (instead of the present continuous).

يستخدم للأحداث التى سوف تحدث بالتحديد فى المستقبل كنتيجة لروتين أو ترتيب. (بدلًا من المضارع المستمر).

- I'll be playing golf on Friday.
  (I play golf every Friday - it's part of my routine.)
- I'll be seeing Fathy tomorrow.
  (We work in the same office so we will definitely meet.)

3. **When we ask politely about people's arrangements to see if they can do something for us or because we want to offer to do something for them.**

يستخدم عندما نسأل بأدب عن ترتيبات الأشخاص لنرى ما إذا كانوا يستطيعون فعل شيء لنا أو لأننا نريد أن نفعل شيئًا لهم.

- Will you be going to the supermarket? Can you buy me some tea?

4. **We use may be + v-ing to refer to future events or trends which are possible but not certain:**

نستخدم may be + v-ing للتعبير عن الأحداث التى من الممكن أن تحدث ولكن لسنا متأكدين منها.

- Many more people may be living in Cairo in the next 50 years.

5. **The future continuous is used with the following time expressions:**

نستخدم المستقبل المستمر مع التعبيرات الزمنية الآتية.

- All night/ day tomorrow/ next week, etc.
- This time tomorrow/ next week - At + مدة tomorrow/next week - From .... to .... tomorrow.
- In an hour's time ....

- This time tomorrow, I will be watching a film with my family.

Extra Points

١) أفعال state لا تستخدم مع المستقبل المستمر ولكن إذا تغير معناها يمكن أن تستخدم فى الاستمرار.

- This time next year, I will have had my graduation certificate.

- لا يمكن استخدام will be having لأن الفعل يملك لا يستخدم مستمرًا.

- This time tomorrow, I will be having my dinner with my family.

- الفعل have هنا ليس بمعنى يملك بل بمعنى يتناول؛ لذلك استخدم فى الاستمرار.

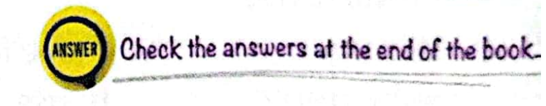
٢) لو كان الحدثان سيستمران فى المستقبل ووجد رابط زمنى فالحدث الذى بعد الرابط الزمنى يكون مضارعًا مستمرًا أو بسيطًا وليس مستقبلًا مستمرًا.

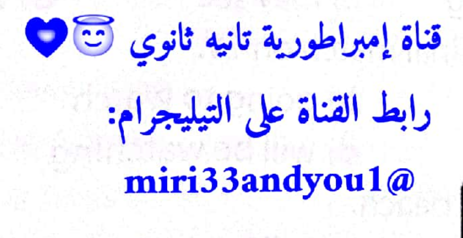
مضارع مستمر أو بسيط	+	رابط زمنى	+	مستقبل مستمر

- I'll be studying for my lessons while my father is watching the match tomorrow.

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In an hour's time, Ola .... home on the train.
   a) will travel b) travels
   c) has travelled d) will be travelling
2. Between now and next Thursday, I .... for an English exam.
   a) 'll revise b) may revise
   c) 'll be revising d) was revising
3. I wonder what he .... this time next year.
   a) 'll be doing b) shall do
   c) do d) 'll do
4. At 10 o'clock tomorrow, she will be in her office. She ....
   a) is going to work b) will work
   c) works d) will be working
5. In 20 years, Khaled .... his own business.
   a) will be running b) will run
   c) runs d) ran







Language Exercises

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analysing • Evaluating • Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I .... tomorrow. I've got my plane ticket.
a) will leave b) am leaving c) going to leave d) shall leave

2 My elder son says he .... a doctor. This is his ambition.
a) is being b) is c) will be d) is going to be

3 Tomorrow .... a cold sunny day, according to the weather forecast.
a) will be b) was going to be c) is being d) is

4 I want to buy a new villa, so I .... save a lot of money.
a) going to b) will c) am going to d) will be

5 I can't visit you because I .... for my sister's wedding all next afternoon.
a) might have b) going to prepare
c) will prepare d) will be preparing

6 I can't meet you tonight as I .... for the exam.
a) going to revise b) will have been revised
c) will revise d) am revising

7 Will you .... the phone for long? I want to make some calls.
a) be using b) use c) be used d) have used

8 I'll tell Hesham about the party. I .... him at work anyway.
a) will see b) will be seeing c) may see d) was seeing

9 From 6 to 8 tomorrow, I .... the final match on TV.
a) will watch b) going to watch
c) watch d) will be watching

10 This time next week, I .... on the beach.
a) will have sunbathed b) will be sunbathing
c) will have been sunbathing d) will be sunbathed

11 Will you .... into town this afternoon? Can you give me a lift?
a) be driving b) drive c) be driven d) have driven

12 Magdy .... in the school concert all next week.
a) will perform b) will be performing
c) performed d) has performed

13 I can't visit you because I .... my homework this evening.
a) will do b) will have done c) will be doing d) do

14 This flat is very hot, so we .... a flat that is far from the beach next time.

a) will rent
b) aren't going to rent
c) are renting
d) don't rent

15 Our last lesson .... at two o'clock this afternoon.

a) will be finishing b) is finishing c) will finish d) finishes

16 We .... a family party on Saturday. Would you like to come?

a) are having b) have c) will have had d) have had

17 The boys will watch the new film after they .... their pocket money.

a) are going to get b) get c) will get d) are sure to get

18 **A:** .... to the dentist this afternoon? **B:** Yes, why?

A: Can you make an appointment for me to see him?

a) Are you going
b) Will you have gone
c) Do you go
d) Shall you go

19 I think one day every new book .... as an e-book.

a) publish
b) will publish
c) will be published
d) will have published

20 Don't worry. I'm sure you .... them again soon.

a) see b) are seeing c) would see d) will see

21 I can't visit my cousins in June because I .... for a charity. إدارة شرق المحلة الكبرى ٢٠٢٣

a) will work
b) will be working
c) am being worked
d) will have worked

22 In the next week's radio programme, we .... to a famous scientist. البدارى الثانوية

a) will be talking b) talking c) talk d) have talked

23 People................ in houses under water in twenty years' time. الشبراوين الثانوية

a) may have lived
b) will be lived
c) may be living
d) are going to live

24 This time tomorrow, I .... for my father at the airport. منية النصر محافظة الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢

a) will be waited
b) will be waiting
c) going to wait
d) will have been waited

25 Don't phone me at 7 o'clock. I .... إدارة الواسطى ٢٠٢٢

a) will sleep b) will be sleeping c) am going to sleep d) sleep

26 Choose the best correct answer:

a) I will be met my friends for dinner after work tomorrow.
b) I will have met my friends for dinner after work tomorrow.
c) I am meeting my friends for dinner after work tomorrow.
d) I shall meet my friends for dinner after work tomorrow.

27 Choose one correct answer to the following sentence:

"Just a minute, please. I will be with you as soon as I .... this."

a) will do b) have done c) will be doing d) will have done

28 Choose one correct answer to the following sentence:

A: Let's meet at eleven o'clock tomorrow.

B: Sorry, I .... my boss at this time.

a) will have met b) will be meeting c) will meet d) meet

29 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:

A: Have you made plans for tonight?

B: Yes. I .... my sister after work. We need to discuss some family matters.

a) am going to visit b) will have visited c) will visit d) will be visited

30 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:

a) This time tomorrow, I will watch the new film.

b) This time tomorrow, I will be watching the new film.

c) This time tomorrow, I watch the new film.

d) This time tomorrow, I will have been watched the new film.

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

31 I'll help you as soon as I ....

a) finish b) had finished

c) am going to finish d) will finish

e) have finished

32 I can't come tomorrow as I .... the match at the stadium with my friends.

a) will watch b) will be watching

c) watch d) am watching

e) may watch

33 We don't think that the price of petrol ....

a) won't rise b) aren't going to rise

c) will be raised d) is raising

e) will rise

34 He promised .... me with my homework.

a) he would help b) to help

c) he will me d) that he will help

e) to have helped

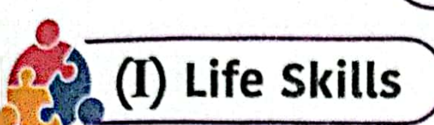
35 The rich man's plane .... Cairo next week.

a) reaches b) is going to reach

c) will be reaching d) will reach

e) has reached

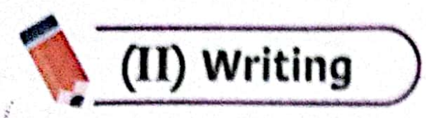
C Communication Skills



(I) Life Skills

The Problem Solving Process

Step	Characteristics
(1) Define the problem	• Differentiate fact from opinion. • Specify underlying causes. • Consult each faction involved for information. • State the problem specifically. • Identify what standard or expectation is violated. • Determine in which process the problem lies. • Avoid trying to solve the problem without data.
(2) Generate alternative solutions	• Postpone evaluating alternatives initially. • Include all involved individuals in the generating of alternatives. • Specify alternatives consistent with organisational goals. • Specify short-term and long-term alternatives. • Brainstorm others' ideas. • Seek alternatives that may solve the problem.
(3) Evaluate and select an alternative	• Evaluate alternatives relative to a target standard. • Evaluate all alternatives without bias. • Evaluate alternatives relative to established goals. • Evaluate both proven and possible outcomes. • State the selected alternative explicitly.
(4) Implement and follow up on the solution	• Plan and implement a pilot test of the chosen alternative. • Gather feedback from all affected parties. • Seek acceptance or consensus by all those affected. • Establish ongoing measures and monitoring. • Evaluate long-term results based on the final solution.
Reference	https://asq.org/quality-resources/problem-solving



(II) Writing

- **Write an essay about how to feed people sustainably in the future.**

Tips for writing the essay

Introduction	Reasons for keeping sustainable food: - Increase in the population. - Decrease of food production.
Main body (1)	- A modern way to grow food. - Aeroponics, definition, and basic rules.
Main body (2)	- Benefits of aeroponics to keep sustainable food.
Conclusion	- How aeroponics can secure food sustainable food. - How it is better than traditional methods of agriculture.

There is a big shortfall between the amount of food we produce today and the amount needed to feed everyone in 2050. There will be nearly 10 billion people on Earth by 2050. Moreover, as incomes rise, people will consume more and more. At the same time, we urgently need to decrease greenhouse gas emissions from agricultural production and stop the destruction of the remaining forests on earth. Hence, we need innovative and new ways to keep sustainable food in the future.

One of the most innovative ways to grow food is aeroponics. It is the process of growing plants in an air or mist environment without the use of soil. The seeds are planted in pieces of foam stuffed into tiny pots, which are exposed to light on one end and nutrient mist on the other. The foam also holds the stem and root mass in place as the plants grow. The plant's roots are sprayed with nutrient-rich water solution.

Aeroponics is suitable for growing many kinds of food. Tomatoes and herbs are the best examples. It enables us to grow food in all available spaces. Besides, the environment is kept free from pests and diseases so that the plants may grow healthier and more quickly. Last, it helps us save water resources.

Aeroponics is a better method of agriculture than the traditional soil-based ones. It provides faster growths, higher yields and also minimises or eliminates the need for herbicides and pesticides. It doesn't need special skills, so everyone can grow food wherever they find available space. In short, aeroponics is one of the most modern ways that can help us keep sustainable food in the future.

Test Yourself in 20 min

Take a Test

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You would have another .... to succeed in the test if you tried again and again.
a) topic b) chance c) study d) subject

2 On hearing about losing his job, Sameh was so angry that his speech didn't .... sense.
a) do b) notice c) accept d) make

3 The report's main .... was that global warming is a serious threat.
a) study b) conclusion c) attention d) experience

4 At present, we have no .... of life on other planets.
a) fiction b) art c) evidence d) science

5 Calvin Klein, Diesel and Christian Dior's .... shows attract a lot of attention as they are world-famous clothes designers.
a) wave b) fashion c) flood d) trend

6 The roof of the farmer's yard was in such bad condition that it needed to be completely ....
a) replaced b) placed c) disappeared d) destroyed

7 The research shows a .... between high cholesterol and an increased risk of heart attacks.
a) method b) link c) space d) travel

8 I thanked my friend for the .... meal she cooked for us.
a) tasty b) tasteful c) tasteless d) taste

9 You have no chance of getting the job. You .... your time if you apply for it.
a) be wasting b) will be wasting c) waste d) won't waste

10 This time next week, Hamid .... in a school football match.
a) will play b) may play c) will be playing d) will have played

11 I have made a decision. I .... the weekend in my village.
a) will spend b) will be spending c) am spending d) am going to spend

12 In five years' time, Ali will probably .... with his parents.
a) be lived b) still live c) be still living d) still living

13 A baby .... its mother's voice soon after its birth.
a) is going to recognise b) recognise
c) is recognising d) recognises

14 If you don't take a taxi, you .... on time.
a) won't arrive b) aren't going to arrive
c) aren't arriving d) don't arrive

15 Ahmed is a terrible driver. He .... an accident one day.
a) is having b) will have c) is going to have d) will be having

16 This time next year, Salma .... for her final exam.
a) will revise b) will be revising c) may revise d) revises

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

African lions are larger than other big wild cats, including leopards, cheetahs, and jaguars. In fact, only Asian tigers are bigger. The African lion is the only cat to live in cooperative groups. These groups are called prides. A pride usually has no more than three unrelated adult males. Together with adult females (lionesses) and young cubs[1], a pride has from three to over 30 members. The females are related, and they usually stay together for life.

Living in a pride gives African lions benefits other cats don't have. Other cats live alone, coming together only to mate. This means the mother must raise the young and provide all protection and food. African lion mothers, however, have a pride of lions to help. Pride members communicate vocally, by roaring, meowing, and snarling. They also use facial expressions, scent, and touch, including rubbing and licking.

The largest male lion's job is to protect the pride, especially the cubs. Males are usually gentle with cubs in their own pride, but not with the cubs in other prides.

Females, meanwhile, do most of the hunting. With their smaller size, they can sneak closer to prey through tall savannah grasses. They hunt mostly during the night and in the early morning when light is poor. Large, fast animals like zebras, buffalo, wildebeest, wild hogs, and gazelles are the lions' favourite prey. However, these fast animals often escape. So lions also hunt smaller animals such as hares, birds, and reptiles[2]. They also use their size and numbers to steal dead prey from other predators, including cheetahs and leopards. That's why cheetahs drag their kills[3] to hiding places and leopards pull theirs into trees.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 According to the article, how are lions different from any other wild cats?
- **a)** Lions are the largest wild cat species on earth.
- **b)** Lions are the only wild cats that live in Africa.
- **c)** Lions are the only wild cats that are endangered.
- **d)** Lions are the only wild cats to live in cooperative groups.

2 What is one reason why female lions, the lionesses, do the hunting instead of the males?
- **a)** The females run faster than the males and can catch up to their prey quicker.
- **b)** The females are stronger than the males and can take down their prey easier.
- **c)** The females are smaller than the males and can sneak closer to their prey in the tall savannah grasses.
- **d)** The females have better eyesight than the males to spot prey easier.



(1) صغار الأسد/ الأشبال (2) الزواحف (3) قتلى

3 Lions hunt ....

a) large, fast animals only
b) smaller animals only
c) dead animals
d) both small and large animals

4 The synonym of the word "prey" is ....

a) friend
b) victim
c) companion
d) mate

5 Living in groups is good for African mother lions because ....

a) the members of the group help them raise the cubs
b) the males are kind to them
c) they don't hunt, so they don't run
d) males take care of them

6 Cheetahs and leopards may hide their prey ....

a) to keep them fresh
b) to eat them with their families
c) to preserve them
d) because lions can eat the prey by force

7 The pride members can communicate through many ways except ....

a) odour
b) drawing
c) facial expressions
d) licking

8 The best title for the passage is "................".

a) The Life of the Lioness
b) The Species of Cats
c) The Prey
d) Prides and Individuals

A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Scientists are always researching new methods of food production. They believe that without new and creative[1] ways, the world will face severe hunger.

....

....

2. Many people believe that producing food in laboratories is only science fiction. They can't stand eating meat or fruit made in an artificial[2] way.

....

....

3. The United Nations regards using humans in laboratory experiments as a crime. It is also one of the most important medical ethics[3].

....

....

4. Nobody is born perfect or ideal. Parents and teachers need to double efforts to bring out the hidden potential[4] in a child.

....

....

5. Disabled people may amaze ordinary[5] ones by the marvelous things they themselves can't achieve. They can even score amazing records.

....

....

6. Society must look after homeless[6] children to help them have a better future. That's why most charities try to raise more money to help them.

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- تحاول الأمم المتحدة من خلال منظماتها توفير الدواء والغذاء الكافى لكل سكان الدول الفقيرة التى تعانى نقصًا حادًا، خاصة بعد تناقص الأرض الزراعية بسبب التصحر فى بعض هذه الدول.

....

....

٢- يزخر التاريخ بالكثير من الكتاب العرب البارزين(٧) الذين أثروا الأدب العالمى مثل طه حسين ونجيب محفوظ الكاتب العربى الوحيد الحائز على جائزة نوبل فى الأدب.

....

....

٣- تمثل الزيادة السكانية أحد أكبر عوائق(٨) التنمية فى المجتمع؛ لذا تعمل الحكومة على البحث عن حلول مناسبة لهذه المشكلة، من أهمها برامج تنظيم الأسرة.

....

....

٤- لابد من وجود قوانين صارمة(٩) لمعاقبة كل المصانع التى تتلاعب(١٠) بتاريخ الصلاحية(١١) على عبوات منتجات الأغذية المختلفة؛ لما تمثله من خطر على صحة المواطنين وسلامة(١٢) الغذاء.

....

....

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Trees are very useful. As well as giving us food, what are their other benefits?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

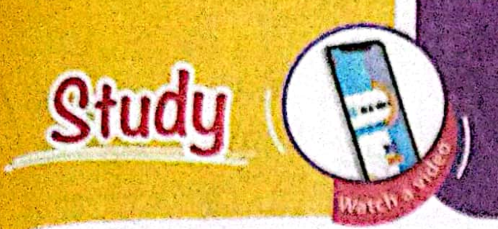
....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. | I used the right structure. | I used a topic sentence. | I wrote the conclusion. | I used the right punctuation.

(1) مبدع
(2) صناعي
(3) أخلاقي
(4) إمكانات
(5) طبيعي
(6) مشرد
(7) outstanding
(8) obstacles
(9) strict
(10) manipulate
(11) expiry date
(12) safety



King Lear
Act I, Scenes iii-iv

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

attack (v) (ed)	يهاجم	immediately (adv)	فورا/ فى الحال
attendant (n)	مضيف/خادم	lady (n)	سيدة
behave (v) (d)	يتصرف	mad (adj)	غاضب/مجنون
cart (n)	عربة الخيل	notice (v) (d)	يلاحظ
disguise (v) (d)	يتنكر	palace (n)	قصر
encourage (v) (d)	يشجع	pull (v) (ed)	يسحب/يشد
follow (v) (d)	يتبع	rude (adj)	وقح
fool (n)	مهرج	servant	خادم
guilty (adj)	مذنب	soldier (n)	جندى
hit (v)	يضرب	taste (n)	مذاق
hold (v)	يعلق/ يمسك	wise (adj)	حكيم/عاقل

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

have a taste of her own medicine	تجنى نتيجة عملها	have the power	يمتلك القوة و السلطة
make problems	يسبب المشكلات	the cart is pulling the horse	العربة تجر الحصان (تعبير عن انقلاب الأوضاع)



King Lear Exercises

Act I, Scenes iii-iv

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We'll have a/an .... with our sick son 24 hours a day to keep an eye on him.
a) adviser b) attendant
c) consultant d) guide

2 I hope the children will .... well during my brother's wedding.
a) behave b) relieve c) fight d) shout

3 The criminals who robbed the bank were .... in post office uniforms.
a) disliked b) discouraged
c) disguised d) dissented

4 I still feel .... about bad things I said to my little brother when I was a teenager.
a) guilty b) happy
c) pleased d) proud

5 Mum always .... us to discuss our problems with her.
a) discourages b) recognises
c) realises d) encourages

6 The man was .... a large package in his arms when he fell down the stairs.
a) kicking b) pulling
c) holding d) tying

7 When we entered the restaurant, I .... that my friend was sitting at the next table.
a) booked b) dissolved c) abused d) noticed

8 It's .... to keep people waiting outside your house for a long time.
a) rude b) polite c) bored d) honourable

9 The rich businessman treats his home .... kindly and also pays them well.
a) servants b) members
c) masters d) partners

10 There were several .... guarding the main gate of the army camp.
a) revolvers b) sailors c) soldiers d) instructors

11 The medicine had a slightly bitter ...., so the child refused to take it.
a) shape b) effect c) paste d) taste

12 Grandmother was a/an .... old woman, and we all valued her advice.
a) lazy b) wise
c) unreasonable d) wisely

Unit 3 Advanced & Open General Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Saline .... is a mixture of salt and water which has many medical uses.
   a) transmit b) transport c) solution d) deduction
2. 5,000 new flats are to be built, but this is just a drop in the .... for such a vast country.
   a) ocean b) lake c) sea d) rain
3. If you click on this ...., it will make you able to get to your bank account.
   a) connection b) contact c) link d) way
4. No doctor at the hospital was .... for comment about the accident as they were all busy.
   a) replaceable b) available c) helpful d) acceptable
5. These days, poor people find it very difficult to .... their keep.
   a) win b) award c) apply d) earn
6. When I read the job ...., I found it suitable for me and applied for it immediately.
   a) interview b) prescription c) description d) division
7. Competition between the two companies is .... up.
   a) warning b) cooling c) decreasing d) heating
8. The firefighters .... the fire in the building after three hours.
   a) contained b) involved c) enclosed d) included
9. The nursery teacher gets ready for a new .... of students every year.
   a) flock b) team c) crop d) line
10. The news of the promotion had a/an .... effect on the employees who were waiting for us.
    a) electronic b) electric c) shocked d) exclusive
11. The company is unable to buy modern machines due to cash .... problems.
    a) flow b) fault c) current d) blow
12. We all admire Safia Zaghloul for her efforts which served the .... of women's rights in the Arab World.
    a) reason b) cause c) opinion d) neglect
13. Water and insects can be .... of infectious diseases such as malaria.
    a) results b) effects c) vehicles d) planes
14. My uncle doesn't have the .... to start a new business, so he is going to get a loan from the bank.
    a) suggestion b) intention c) place d) capital
15. A data show is a machine which can .... motion pictures, presentations and videos onto a screen.
    a) invent b) design c) project d) reject

16 I like to have the radio on while ....

a) I study
b) I'm studying
c) studying
d) all are possible

17 Always turn your television off ....

a) before you leave home
b) when you went to bed
c) as soon as you got bored
d) after you have fallen asleep

18 He'll drink coffee while he .... for the bus.

a) is waiting
b) wait
c) was waiting
d) has waited

19 Now that the rain's stopped, ... to walk?

a) can you want
b) Are you wanting
c) do you want
d) have you wanted

20 I promised my father .... the full marks in the next exam.

a) will get
b) would get
c) to get
d) am going to get

21 My friend is very intelligent. He .... the test easily.

a) is going to pass
b) will pass
c) is passing
d) would pass

22 Look out! A car .... towards you.

a) is coming
b) is going to come
c) will be coming
d) will come

23 "Shall I carry your bag for you?" The right situation to the sentence is ....

a) request
b) promise
c) offer
d) on-the-spot decision

24 I don't think you .... any problems when you land in France.

a) will have
b) won't have
c) will have had
d) will be having

25 Once you take a nap, you .... a lot better.

a) feel
b) will feel
c) will have left
d) will be feeling

26 I will let you know the second the builders .... decorating the room.

a) have finished
b) finished
c) will finish
d) finishing

27 **A:** We haven't got any sugar. **B:** I know. I .... some this afternoon.

a) will buy
b) am going to buy
c) will be buying
d) will have bought

28 "I'll send you an email tomorrow." The right situation to the sentence is a/ an ....

a) request
b) offer
c) promise
d) threat

29 I'm sorry but I cannot come to the meal tonight. I .... work at 8 pm, so I .... arrive at the restaurant on time!

a) finish / am going to
b) will finish / will not be able to
c) am going to finish / am not being able to
d) finish/ will not be able to

30 **A:** Where are you going for your summer holidays?
B: We haven't decided yet. We .... Italy.

a) are probably going to
b) will probably go to
c) probably go to
d) will be probably going to



Al-Adwaa Test



Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 Most chemical factories are polluting and destroying the environment. The synonyms of the word "destroy" are ....

a) damage b) ruin c) create d) establish e) inspect

2 The coach didn't include the best player in the match list fearing that his injury might .... worse.

a) do b) get c) fall d) become e) detect

3 The profits of the company are expected to .... by two percent next year.

a) farm b) heat c) grow d) turn e) increase

4 Farouk El Baz is one of the greatest experts .... geology especially the field of remote sensing.

a) about b) for c) in d) with e) on

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5 The economic crisis which the world faced during coronavirus showed the importance of .... to assure food supply.

a) industry b) agriculture c) exploration d) deportation

6 Our teacher mixed two different chemicals with water to prepare the wanted ... .

a) transmit b) transport c) solution d) deduction

7 The government is making great efforts to encourage .... in industry.

a) destruction b) deterioration c) innovation d) frustration

8 When my brother failed the test, mother couldn't .... her anger and started yelling at him.

a) consist b) promote c) include d) contain

9 **A:** Why are you switching on the TV? **B:** I .... a football match.

a) will watch b) watch
c) am watching d) am going to watch

10 When I see you tomorrow, I .... you my new book.

a) will show b) will be showing c) am showing d) show

11 I can't go shopping on Monday morning because I ....

a) will work b) may work
c) will be working d) will be worked

12 The population of the world .... to around ten billion by the year 2100.

a) will increase b) will be increasing c) may be increasing d) increases

13 Ali .... a good job when he finishes his education.

a) may be getting b) will probably be getting

c) gets d) will probably get

14 Nader is going on holiday. This time tomorrow, he .... in the sea.

a) should swim b) will be swimming

c) will swim d) may swim

15 I'm sorry, but you need to stay in the office until you .... your work.

a) have finished b) will finish c) are finishing d) had finished

16 When you .... off the train, I .... for you by the ticket machine.

a) get/will wait b) get/will be waiting

c) have got/will wait d) get/am going to wait

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The weather forecast predicts what the temperature and air conditions will be in the near future. There is a wide variety of types of weather. The weather can be sunny or stormy. It can be warm or cool. It also can be rainy, cloudy or windy. Sometimes, the weather is severe.

A blizzard[1], a thunderstorm or a hurricane may happen quickly. When we get information ahead of time, we can prepare for it. Being prepared helps us stay safe.

A meteorologist[2] is a person whose job is to forecast the weather. There are many tools available to help the meteorologist do his job. A common tool for getting an accurate measurement of the temperature is a thermometer. A high temperature probably means plenty of sunshine for everyone.

In the rainy weather, a meteorologist uses a rain gauge[3]. A rain gauge gives numerical data about how much rain is falling outdoors. After it rains, you may be able to see a rainbow. A rainbow appears when the sun comes out and there is still rain in the air.

The wind brings us the weather. It blows clouds from one place to another. It is helpful to know which direction the wind is blowing. A wind vane[4] provides this information. Knowing the wind direction helps a meteorologist know what weather is coming.

Weather forecasts are not always right. As our knowledge about the weather gets better, the forecasts become more accurate.



(1) عاصفة ثلجية (2) عالم أرصاد الجوية (3) مقياس (4) دليل اتجاه الريح

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 When we are prepared for the forthcoming blizzard, we will be ....

a) happy
b) safe
c) in danger
d) strong

18 The person whose job is to forecast the weather is called a ....

a) psychologist
b) philologist
c) monologist
d) meteorologist

19 When the sun comes out and there is still rain in the air, we can see a ....

a) rainbow
b) blizzard
c) thunderstorm
d) hurricane

20 The other meaning of "comes out" is ....

a) hides
b) disappears
c) appears
d) eclipses

21 The weather forecast is ....

a) seeing the rainbow in the sky
b) having a lot of rain in a day
c) predicting the conditions of the weather
d) measuring the speed of the wind

22 If meteorologists don't have the gauge, ...

a) they won't predict the condition of the weather
b) they won't be able to measure the quantity of rain
c) they will work more effectively
d) the direction of the wind will be unknown

23 What is the relation between the wind and the weather?

a) The wind moves the sea waves.
b) The wind blows the clouds.
c) The wind raises the temperature.
d) The wind carries sand grains.

24 The writer's opinion about the weather forecast is that it ....

a) is not always right although it uses magic
b) is always right and accurate
c) is not always right and we need better knowledge about it
d) is not accurate at all and it is a waste of time

Translate into English:

لقد فشلت كل محاولات هدم المجتمع المصرى بسبب الوحدة الوطنية التى تمثل عقبة كبيرة فى وجه كل من يحاول العبث باستقرار الشعب المصرى.

....

....

Translate into Arabic:

Our society needs more individuals that possess good moral values in order to grow and develop the right way. Morals are really the good signs of a civilised society.

....

....

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"There have been several scientific inventions from time to time and these have made life more comfortable for human beings. Choose one or two of these inventions to talk about."

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Study

Revision (1)

Units 1, 2 & 3

Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

activity (n)	نشاط	immune system (n)	الجهاز المناعى
amount (n)	كمية	injured (adj)	مصاب
athlete (n)	رياضى	interview (n)	مقابلة شخصية
avoid (v) (ed)	يتجنب	local (adj)	محلى
boost (v) (ed)	يدعم/يعزز	meals (n)	وجبات
boxer (n)	ملاكم	prepare (v) (d)	يعد/يجهز
boxing (n)	ملاكمة	register (v) (ed)	يسجل
certificate (n)	شهادة	regularly (adv)	بشكل منتظم
college (n)	كلية	runner (n)	عدّاء
competition (n)	منافسة	sports centre (n)	مركز رياضى
course (n)	مقرر دراسى	teenager (n)	مراهق
distance (n)	مسافة	training (n)	تدريب
fantastic (adj)	رائع	understand (v)	يفهم
fatty (adj)	دهنى	variety (n)	تشكيلة
fight (v) (n)	يقاتل/قتال	wide (adj)	واسع
foods (n)	أطعمة		

Reading Text (1)

Kareem

I'm a runner who regularly runs very long distances. I need to eat large amounts of pasta, fruit, potatoes and other vegetables so I have enough energy to run for 30 or 40 kilometres each day. I also need to eat a lot of different foods that will make me stronger, such as meat, fish, and eggs. I drink a lot of orange juice to boost my immune system, which means that I'm less likely to get ill and have to stop training. I usually prepare my own food at home but when I want to eat out with my friends or family, I usually go to an Italian restaurant!

Amr

I'm a boxer, so I need to eat larger amounts of food than other athletes. When I started boxing, I started eating in a different way. Instead of three large meals a day, I usually eat six smaller meals, but I don't eat a wide variety of food. I usually eat eggs or white meat, like chicken, for almost every meal. Eating like this helps me to be stronger than the people I fight, which means I'm less likely to be injured. Before a big fight, I have to do a lot of training and I eat as much as possible, without eating unhealthy, fatty food, such as cakes and chocolate.

Reading Text (2)

To : aya@gmail.com
From : hadeer@gmail.com

Hi Aya,

How are you today? I think it's great that you're going to start cooking healthier food. I'm sure it will give you more energy and make you feel a lot better. I'd also like to learn how to cook meals that are healthier than the fast food that I usually eat. Do you want to do a cooking course with me so we can learn together? There's a new course that's going to start in two weeks' time at the local college. It's every Tuesday evening from 6 p.m. to 8 p.m. And it's only for teenagers!

You don't need to go to the college to register, you can do it on their website. Just search for the cooking courses and it's the first course you'll see. I can do the course on my own if you can't make it, but it would be a lot more fun to learn with a friend.

Talk to you soon!

Hadeer



Listening Text

Interviewer : Hello and welcome back to the show. Next, we're going to talk to Mariam Mohamed from Gizeh who has just started to do an interesting hobby. Could you tell us what you do, Mariam?

Mariam : Yes, sure. In my free time, I'm learning to help people who are ill or who have had an accident.

Interviewer : That sounds great. So you can learn new skills and help other people at the same time.

Mariam : Exactly. I'm doing a first aid course with about twenty other young people at our sports centre.

Interviewer : And will you receive a certificate at the end of the course?

Mariam : Yes. I have to go to at least fifty hours of lessons. Then I'll get my first certificate which shows that I can perform basic first aid.

Interviewer : Great! So you're learning simple techniques to start with and then you'll learn more techniques, is that right?

Mariam : Yes. At the start, you need to learn simple things like how to put a bandage on someone. You don't have to know how to perform CPR, for example. I'm sure I'll be taking courses for the next few years so I can learn as much as possible.

Interviewer : And why do you enjoy learning first aid so much? What's so interesting about it?

Mariam : Well, it's great to learn something you can use to help people in the future, and the course is really fun, too. You don't need to sit at a desk and read books to learn first aid, you need to do it. Our teacher understands that and he makes sure that the lessons are fun.

Interviewer : So you can learn something useful and have fun at the same time. Fantastic!



Al-Adwaa Test



Units 1, 2 & 3

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 My grandfather was in hospital for six months with a serious .... before he died.

a) treatment b) disease c) illness d) luxury e) care

2 The programme showed marvelous photos of the distant oasis. The synonyms of the word "distant" are ....

a) isolated b) spacious c) near d) strange e) remote

3 At least one member of the security staff should be trained how to .... first aid.

a) request b) do c) give d) confirm e) reform

4 In my ...., social media have done great harms to social relations

a) site b) scene c) sight d) view e) opinion

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5 Archaeologists now use modern .... such as ultrasonic rays.

a) tricks b) magic c) techniques d) designs

6 Most Egyptian families gather to .... important feasts such as Eid El Fitr and Christmas.

a) share b) celebrate c) sadden d) collaborate

7 Schools should not .... only on exam results to assess the students' progress.

a) manage b) encourage c) focus d) distract

8 Over the ....of the next few years, the steel industry was reorganized.

a) departure b) session c) training d) course

9 She is a really nice person – one of .... people I know.

a) the nicer b) the nice c) the most nice d) the nicest

10 I have to talk to Osama. I .... forget to call him.

a) must b) mustn't c) have to d) don't have to

11 **A:** Osama phoned while you were out. **B:** Yes, I know. I .... him back.

a) am calling b) will call c) am going to call d) will be calling

12 It's a very valuable painting. It's .... painting in the gallery.

a) the most valuable b) more valuable
c) the more valuable d) a valuable

13 Tomorrow afternoon, we're going to play tennis from 3 o'clock until 4:30. So at 4 o'clock, we .... tennis.

a) are going to play
b) will play
c) will be playing
d) play

14 The station was nearer than I thought. The station wasn't .... I thought.

a) near
b) far as
c) farthest
d) as far as

15 This is a valuable book. You .... take good care of it and you .... lose it.

a) must/don't need to
b) needn't/mustn't
c) must/mustn't
d) needn't/don't have to

16 Right now, I'm working in a café. In 10 years' time, I hope I .... one of my own.

a) run
b) will be running
c) am going to run
d) ran

ead the following passage, then answer the questions:

Failure is probably one of the most discouraging moments in our lives. Failure should not, however, break our spirit. Instead, we should use the lesson learnt from our defeat to spur us on to greater achievements.

It is understandably humiliating to admit you have failed. Yet, this is an essential criterion to success. To overcome the main barrier to your success, you have to admit that you are not the great person you envision yourself to be. Overconfidence can easily be mistaken for confidence. There is but a thin boundary between the two. Yet, the results can be shockingly different. While one can help you achieve your goal, the other can dash your dreams to pieces.

Confidence is a good trait to have where a person is sure about his course of action or activity and it comes from past success and right decisions. Overconfidence is excessive belief in their own abilities ignoring the fact that their decision can be wrong.

There is, therefore, a need to be modest and unassuming. The fruits of success will be sweeter. Using confidence and knowledge, strike firmly towards your goal, and never be diverted from it by a mild success. A premature celebration can easily obscure the task to be performed.

After you have succeeded, use that confidence to improve yourself. Then personal progress can be guaranteed.

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

17 Learning from our defeat is something good to ....

a) frustrate us
b) blame others
c) commit suicide
d) motivate us to do well

18 In order to achieve success, you should ....

a) admit your failure
b) insist on your failure
c) change your career
d) depend on all people

19 What do we need to succeed?

a) Overconfidence.
b) Confidence.
c) Failure.
d) Forgetting goals

20 The main idea in the passage is "................".

a) Failure and its benefits
b) Overconfidence is the key to success
c) How to achieve success
d) Failure leads to success

21 When we celebrate our success early, we ....

a) hide our work
b) do the tasks better
c) spread the words
d) perform the task hastily

22 According to the passage, overconfidence is ....

a) when you think that you don't mistake
b) when you believe in your abilities
c) the same as confidence
d) something good about achieving goals

23 It's recommended by the writer to use our confidence ....

a) before getting the task
b) during the interview
c) after we succeed
d) when we lack efficiency

24 The only good use of failure is to ....

a) torture yourself
b) learn from it
c) change your career
d) be overconfident

25 Translate into English:

- لكل بلد أسلوبه فى الطهى والمكونات التى يستخدمها الطهاة فى أطباقهم، فما يبدو غريبـًا فى بلد ما يصبح مألوفـًا ومحبوبـًا فى بلد آخر.

....

....

26 Translate into Arabic:

Food shortage is one of the most important problems that the world is expected to face in the next few years. That's why scientists are working on innovative ways to overcome it.

....

....

27 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"How can man's diet affect his health in general?"

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Unit 4



Changing English

Objectives

- **Reading** : An article about the effect of messaging on English today; Text messages; A text about Shakespeare and language; A blog post
- **Writing** : A blog post about mobile phone use and its effects
- **Listening** : A speaker talking about messaging tips on how to write a successful blog post
- **Speaking** : A debate
- **Language** : Reported speech: could/should have + past participle; reporting orders, requests and advice; abbreviations
- **Life skills** : Communication




Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

abbreviation (n)	اختصار	linguist (n)	عالم لغويات
emoji (n)	رمز تعبيرى	misunderstand (v)	يسيء الفهم
formal (adj)	رسمى	necessarily (adv)	بالضرورة
frown (v) (ed)	يكشر/يعبس	tone (n)*	نبرة صوت
innovator (n)	مبدع		

* Always speak in a friendly tone to your children.

Vocabulary on Reading

app (n)	تطبيق	messaging (n)	المراسلة
actually (adv)	بالفعل	punctuation (n)	علامات الترقيم
adults (n)	كبار/بالغون	require (v) (d)	يتطلب
appear (v) (ed)	يظهر	spelling (n)	الهجاء
basic (adj)	اساسى	suitable (adj)	مناسب
communication (n)	اتصالات	teenager (n)	مراهق
correctly (adv)	بشكل صحيح	text message (n)	رسالة نصية
everyday (adj)	يومى	warn (v) (ed)	يحذر

Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

acronym (n)	أوائل حروف الكلمات	arrangement (n)	ترتيب
admit (v) (ted)	يعترف	author (n)	مؤلف
advantage (n)	ميزة	basically (adv)	أساسًا
apply (v) (y/ied)	يتقدم بطلب	chat (v) (ted)	يدردش

Word	Meaning
conversation (n)	محادثة
deal (v)	يتناول/يتعامل
disadvantage (n)	عيب
expression (n)	تعبير
face-to-face (adj)	وجهًا لوجه
facial (adj)	وجهى (بالوجه)
immediate (adj)	فورى
increase (v) (d)	يزيد
lovely (adj)	جميل
message (v) (d)	يرسل رسالة
personal (adj)	شخصى
positive (adj)	إيجابى
response (n)	رد/استجابة

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

Word	Meaning
ability (n)	قدرة
blog (n)	مدونة
care (v) (d)	يهتم
copy (n) (v) (y ied)	نسخة/ينسخ
fail (v) (ed)	يفشل
fantastic (adj)	رائع
gift (n)	هدية
mark (n)	درجة/علامة
meeting (n)	اجتماع
online (adj) (adv)	على الإنترنت
parcel (n)	طرد بريدى
post (v) (ed) (n)	ينشر/منشورًا (على صفحات التواصل)
regret (v) (ted)	يأسف/يندم
reply (v) (y ied)	يرد
request (n)	طلب
selfie (n)	صورة شخصية أمامية
voice (n)	صوت بشرى

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

get upset	ينزعج	post personal information	ينشر معلومات شخصية
have much fun	يستمتع كثيرًا	stay in touch with	يبقى على اتصال مع
introduce new ideas	يقدم أفكارًا جديدة	take a selfie	يلتقط صورة شخصية (أمامية)
make communication quicker	يجعل الاتصالات أسرع	go back	يرجع
advice about	نصيحة بشأن	talk to	يتحدث إلى
apply for	يتقدم لوظيفة	thank ... for	يشكر على
chat with	يدردش مع	increase to	يزداد إلى
deal with	يتعامل مع	increase by	يزداد بنسبة
pass an exam	يجتاز اختبار	increase in	زيادة فى

Messages Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Full Form	Meaning
1. LOL	Laugh out loud	اضحك عاليًا
2. cul8r	See you later	أراك فيما بعد
3. gr8	Great!	رائع
4. plz	Please	من فضلك
5. idk	I don't know	لا أعرف
6. 2moro	Tomorrow	غدًا
7. thx	Thank you	شكرًا
8. ASAP	As soon as possible	بأسرع ما يمكن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
communicate	يتواصل	communication	اتصالات	communicative	اتصالى
express*	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	expressive	معبر
fail	يفشل	failure	فشل/شخص فاشل	failing	فاشل
innovate	يبدع	innovation innovator	إبداع مبدع	innovative	إبداعى
regret	يأسف/يندم	regret	أسف/ندم	regretful regrettable	نادم يؤسف عليه
require	يتطلب	requirement	متطلب	required	مطلوب
warn	يحذر	warning	تحذير	warning	تحذيرى

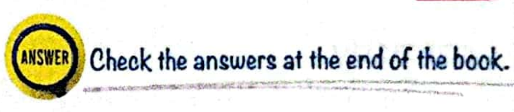
* - I'd like to express my gratitude to you.
- Your expression is meaningful and clear.
- Teachers' language should be expressive.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
basic	أساسى	main/primary	minor/extra	فرعى/إضافى
care	يهتم	pay attention/consider	ignore/disregard	يتجاهل
deal	يتعامل	handle	refuse/deny	يرفض/ينكر
frown	يكشر/لا يستحسن	disapprove	approve/smile	يقبل/يبتسم
misunderstand	يسىء الفهم	misjudge	understand/perceive	يفهم
regret	يأسف/يندم	repent	praise/delight	يمدح/يفرح
request	طلب	demand/seek	reply/answer	يرد
require	يتطلب	need/desire	offer/dislike	يعرض/يكره
response	رد/استجابة	reaction	request/question	طلب/تساؤل
warn	يحذر	alert	mislead/ignore	يخدع/يتجاهل

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In English 'Dr' is written as a/an .... of 'Doctor'.
   a) form b) emoji
   c) abbreviation d) replacement
2. The minister will be the host at a/an .... dinner to welcome the new ambassadors tonight.
   a) normal b) formal
   c) informal d) expressive
3. A/An .... is someone who studies or teaches the science of languages.
   a) linguist b) botanist
   c) astrologist d) author
4. The money the poor family earned did not even cover their most .... needs such as food and clothes.
   a) suitable b) extra
   c) additional d) basic
5. My grandfather is very sick and .... continuous health care.
   a) requires b) acquires
   c) inquires d) protects





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- It was a big crash but fortunately, not everyone needed to be .... to hospital.
  a) required b) admitted
  c) applied d) requested

Reading Text

Have you used anything other than the alphabet to write?

Plz read this article ASAP. It's gr8. Hope u  it! 🙂

For any readers who can't understand the language of text messaging, the translation is: *Please read this article as soon as possible. It's great. I hope you like it.*

In text messages, abbreviations[1], emojis[2] and numbers are all used to make communication quicker. The language of text messages doesn't require[3] correct spelling, or difficult grammar and punctuation.

Messaging language is appearing in everyday English more often. When people write emails, many of them use a lot of abbreviations and emojis 😄. Some people use less punctuation, but others use more than they need!!!!!!

(1) اختصارات
(2) رموز تعبيرية
(3) يتطلب
(4) مراهقون
(5) لغويون
(6) مبدعون
(7) رئيسى/أساسى

So, is messaging language damaging English? Messaging language may be fun to use with friends, but it isn't suitable in formal emails. And now teachers are worried that some teenagers[4] are no longer able to speak or write using English correctly.

However, some linguists[5] suggest that people who use messaging language are actually language innovators[6], introducing new ideas into English.

They argue that messaging language is quick, short and communicates a lot in a small space.

Whether or not you like messaging language, English is continuing to change. Perhaps it would be a good idea to learn some of the basic[7] abbreviations so you can enjoy talking to your friends with fun, short messages!

Is messaging language damaging the English language?

Do you prefer talking to and meeting your friend or just messaging them?

Listening Text



Presenter : Hello everyone, thanks for joining me today on Afternoon Talktime. And today we are talking about messaging. My guest today is Dr Magda Morsy. She is the author[1] of the book *A Guide to Messaging* which encourages us to use messaging positively. Welcome to the programme, Magda.

Dr Magda : Thank you. It's lovely[2] to be here.

Presenter : So, many parents are worried about their children and messaging. I myself have a 15-year-old daughter and we had an example of a messaging problem just yesterday when she came down to dinner very upset. She couldn't stop crying. Eventually, she admitted[3] that she was upset because of her friend. They were messaging and having fun, but then my daughter, Talia, had written LOL - laugh out loud - in response[4] to a photo her friend, Mona, had posted of herself. Talia thought it was a funny photo. She waited for an hour, but Mona didn't reply. Talia couldn't understand what the problem was and was worried that Mona was upset with her.

(1) مؤلف
(2) جميل
(3) اعترف
(4) رد فعل
(5) مميزات
(6) وجها لوجه
(7) أساسا
(8) يكشر
(9) نبرة صوت

Dr Magda : This is a good example of why we need to be aware of the advantages[5] and disadvantages of messaging, and how it can very easily make us worried and upset if we get it wrong.

Presenter : Because messaging is different to speaking face-to-face[6], isn't it?

Dr Magda : Exactly! Sometimes face-to-face communication can be confusing, it's easy to feel the other person isn't listening for example, or isn't interested in what you are saying, but messaging can be much more confusing. And this is basically[7] because you can't see the other person's face – is he or she smiling or frowning[8]? And you can't hear their voice – are they angry? Are they making a joke? Are they feeling sad? And you can't see their body movements. When we speak to someone face-to-face, we notice all these things; facial expressions, body movements, and the tone[9] of what they are saying. When we message, we have to guess a lot of these things. This means we can often misunderstand what the other person is trying to communicate.

Presenter : So, that's the negative side of messaging. Is there a positive side?

Dr Magda : Yes, of course. Messaging is great for staying in touch with friends but remember that messaging is designed to be short and quick so don't expect to have long conversations, and don't get upset when you get one word or even an abbreviation or acronym[10] as a response to your message.

أوائل حروف الكلمات (10)

Presenter : So, what should my daughter, Talia, have done yesterday evening?

Dr Magda : Well, first of all, she shouldn't have got upset so quickly. Just because you don't get an immediate reply does not necessarily mean that the person is not interested in chatting with you. People are busy and they have got other things to do. So, she shouldn't have sat in her room for an hour looking at her phone and waiting for Mona to reply. She should have put her phone down and done something else and checked her phone later. And of course, if she was really worried, she could have called and spoken to Mona. She could have messaged and said, 'Can I call you?'

Presenter : So, I think Dr Magda is telling us to remember that sometimes more traditional communication is important.

Dr Magda : I am! Absolutely. Messaging is one form of communication, not the only form of communication.

Presenter : Great – thank you, Dr Magda Morsy. Next on the programme

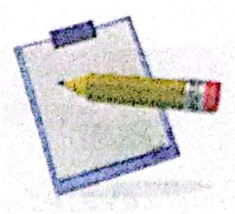
What are the disadvantages of messaging?

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The lazy student finally .... that he made a lot of mistakes.
   a) expressed b) warned c) disbelieved d) admitted
2. When Samy behaved badly, his mother .... and shook her head.
   a) frowned b) laughed c) regretted d) chatted
3. One .... of this new city is the lack of public transport.
   a) advantage b) merit c) disadvantage d) form
4. You are so lucky to live here with all this .... countryside around you.
   a) hateful b) lovely c) confusing d) pleased
5. We must take .... steps to deal with the problem of water pollution.
   a) passive b) reflexive c) negative d) positive

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Vocabulary in Use



FOCUS on Vocabulary

abbreviation اختصار
- a short form of a word or expression

innovator مبدع
- someone who introduces changes and new ideas

formal رسمى
- made or done officially or publicly

emoji رمز تعبيرى
- an icon, similar to an emotion, used in electronic messages and on websites, originally in Japan

linguist عالم لغويات
- someone who studies or teaches linguistics

tone نبرة صوت
- the change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking

not necessarily ليس بالضرورة
- a response to something that has been said that may not be true or correct

frown يكشر
- to have an expression on your face that shows you are not happy

misunderstand يسيء الفهم
- to not understand properly

Notes on Vocabulary

1 **everyday (adj)** يومي (صفة يأتي بعدها اسم)	Doing exercises should be part of your everyday activities.
every day (adv) كل يوم (ظرف)	My father drives us to school every day.
2 **communicate** يتواصل/يتفاهم	People use more than words when they communicate with each other.
contact يتصل بـ/يحتك بـ/اتصال	As my friend is abroad, we contact by email. There is very little contact between the two cities.
connect يصل/يربط بين شيئين	The railway connects Cairo with most cities in Egypt.
3 **meeting** اجتماع (لأشخاص غالبًا ينتمون لمكان واحد)	The staff are having a meeting next week to discuss the company's problems.
conference مؤتمر (لأشخاص غالبًا من أماكن مختلفة)	The Arab Summit Conference is held in March every year.
interview مقابلة شخصية (لوظيفة/صحافة/إذاعة)	Mary has an interview next week for a teaching job in Paris. A famous reporter is having an interview with the president tonight.
appointment موعد (مع صديق/طبيب)	I'd like to make an appointment to see the doctor.
4 **make** يستخدم الفعل (make) بمعنى يجعل بأكثر من صيغة:	1. make + مفعوله + (to) المصدر بدون We make our children read simple stories. 2. make + مفعوله + adjective The actor's new film made him famous. 3. make + مفعوله + adjective + (to) + المصدر The internet makes it easy to communicate with our friend.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- Some people use less punctuation, but others use more than they need!

- تستخدم (others) بمعنى الآخرين وتشير إلى الاسم المذكور قبلها (people).

- .... people who use messaging language are actually language innovators, introducing new ideas into English.

- الجملة أصلها

people who use messaging language are actually language innovators, who introduce new ideas into English.

- حذف الضمير واستخدمت صيغة (verb + ing) لأن الجملة مبنية للمعلوم.

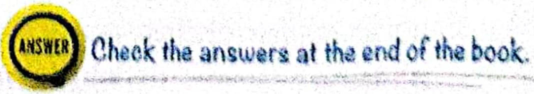
- Talia couldn't understand what the problem was ....

- لاحظ استخدام صيغة الجملة (فاعل + فعل) بعد أداة الاستفهام (الربط) (what) لأن الجملة فى الصيغة الخبرية وليست الاستفهامية.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Egypt will host the UN Climate Change .... in November 2022.
   a) Meeting b) Conference c) Interview d) Appointment
2. Most villages in Upper Egypt are now .... by roads.
   a) connected b) contacted c) communicated d) chattered
3. The internet has become part of all young people's .... life.
   a) every day b) everyday c) day d) days
4. My parents always .... me do my homework before I go to bed.
   a) make b) advise c) blame d) ask
5. I have to look my best as I'm having a/an .... for a new job.
   a) review b) conference c) interview d) meeting





Vocabulary Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Practice makes perfect!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 A/An .... is an icon used in electronic messages and on websites.
a) picture b) emoji c) number d) app

2 Our boss is very ...., he doesn't call anyone by their first name.
a) personal b) cheerful c) patient d) formal

3 Mrs Ashraf .... at her children, who were getting mud all over their clothes.
a) smiled b) rewarded c) frowned d) introduced

4 Sayed Darwish was one of the greatest .... of the 20th century music.
a) players b) editors c) explorers d) innovators

5 Our neighbour is an excellent .... who teaches French at Cairo University.
a) linguist b) astronomer c) astronaut d) biologist

6 Education must .... be about learning and developing skills.
a) correctly b) improbably c) necessarily d) excitedly

7 The headmaster kept his .... friendly with the students who came to talk to him about the school trip.
a) sound b) tone c) intention d) note

8 Most people nowadays are aware of some of the .... rules of healthy living.
a) improper b) unimportant c) trivial d) basic

9 Television, radio and other forms of mass .... have made the world a global village.
a) punctuation b) connection c) affection d) communication

10 People whose job .... staying up late suffer a lot in life.
a) appears b) inquires c) requires d) applies

11 Some recent studies .... against drinking too much caffeine.
a) recommend b) fail c) deal d) warn

12 Being tall gave the young player a/an .... over the other players.
a) disadvantage b) care c) advantage d) experience

13 I drank coffee with my friend and .... about our experiences at work.
a) copied b) chatted c) admitted d) read

14 Choosing a new car is a matter of .... preference which differs from one to another.
a) personal b) common c) public d) general

15 The cost of the trip to Sharm El Sheikh is 1000 pounds for .... and 5000 pounds for children.
a) sons b) friends c) adults d) doctors

16 A .... is a young person between thirteen and nineteen years old.
a) kid b) teenager c) grown up d) toddler

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

17 She warned us not to go too close to the fire. The verb "warn" is a synonym for the verb ".................." .
a) apply b) ignore c) deny d) alert

18 There was an .... of fear on the child's face when she saw the lion.
a) express b) expression c) expressive d) expressing

19 I usually use Facebook and Twitter to .... in touch with all my friends.
a) lose b) miss c) pass d) stay

20 I really .... upset when father cancelled our trip to Alexandria because he had to go to work.
a) went b) made c) got d) did

21 The police fired a number of .... shots to make the people move away.
a) warn b) warning c) warring d) warned

22 A customer service clerk must be good at dealing .... people of different ages.
a) in b) at c) with d) of

23 My daughter is in the habit of .... a selfie in each place she visits for the first time.
a) taking b) doing c) drawing d) making

24 Working hard all the year-round will help you .... all exams.
a) succeed b) pass c) fail d) degrade

25 He seemed to approve of my choice. The verb "approve" is an antonym for the verb ....
a) agree b) accept c) frown d) expire

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 She lacks the most basic skills necessary for the job. The synonyms for the word "basic" are ....
a) minor b) primary c) extra d) unnecessary e) main

27 It was obvious from her .... that she didn't like my idea.
a) tone b) sound c) breathing d) voice e) shout

28 When I was in Paris, I .... a selfie in front of the Eiffel Tower.
a) did b) took c) made d) leave e) had

29 Most people now agree that computers are a part of our .... life.
a) yearly b) everyday c) daily d) helpful e) strange

30 Mona spent a long time talking .... her grandmother as she likes her much.
a) on b) to c) for d) with e) in





Lessons 1 & 2

B Language

Direct Speech الكلام المباشر

هو الكلام الذى يأتى على لسان الشخص مباشرة كما ينطقه هو، ويوضع الكلام المباشر بين علامات اقتباس " ".

My brother said to me," Call me when you go home".

Indirect/Reported Speech الكلام غير المباشر

- الكلام غير المباشر هو نقل كلام شخص فى وقت غير وقت الكلام وهذا يستلزم تغيير الأزمنة والضمائر والظروف الزمنية وظروف المكان

My brother asked me to call him when I went home.

Reporting orders, requests and advice تحويل الأمر والطلب والنصيحة إلى غير المباشر

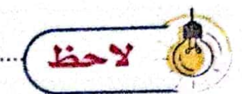
لتحويل الأمر والطلب والاقتراح والنصيحة لغير المباشر

١) يتحول فعل القول فى الجملة الأمرية إلى أحد الأفعال الآتية:

advise	ينصح	invite	يدعو
ask	يسأل	order	يأمر
encourage	يشجع	teach	يعلم
expect	يتوقع	tell	يخبر
help	يساعد	want	يريد
instruct	يوجه/يعلم	warn	يحذر

٢) تُلغى علامات الاقتباس فى الجملة الأمرية المحولة ونربطها بـ to/not to ويأتى بعدهم المصدر.

- The teacher said to us, "Stop talking."
  The teacher told/asked/ordered us to stop talking.
- My mother said to me, "If I were you, I'd have a holiday and relax."
  My mother advised me to have a holiday and relax.
- My father said to me, "Don't waste time."
  My father advised me not to waste time.
- Ali said to his friend, "Study science at university."
  Ali encouraged his friend to study science at university.



- لكى تختار بين to أو not to يجب أن ترجع بالجملة إلى أصلها قبل التحويل فهناك أفعال ممكن أن تتحير فى الربط بعدها لأن المعنى باللغة العربية يمكن أن يتماشى مع الجملة مثل:

▸ He warned his daughter (to/not to) walk in the dark alone.

- فلربما تترجم وتقول: «هو حذر ابنته أن تمشــى فى الظلام» وتختار to وهذا خطأ لأن أصل الجملة إما مثبت فنختار to أو منفى فنختار not to وأصل الجملة هنا هو «... Don't walk» فيكون الاختيار بالطبع not to.

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

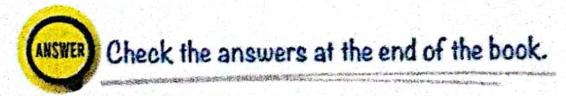
1 The flight attendant instructed us .... our safety belts before taking off.
a) not to fasten
b) fastening
c) to fasten
d) don't fasten

2 My friend advised me .... nervous before the sports match.
a) not to be
b) to be
c) be
d) that I be

3 Ola said to Reham," .... the hotel your CV to apply for the job".
a) not to send
b) to send
c) sending
d) Send

4 Fatma .... Huda to revise for the test.
a) said
b) advised
c) encouraged
d) b&c

5 The teacher warned the students .... to write their names at the top of the page.
a) to forget
b) forgetting
c) not to forget
d) that they forget



could/couldn't have + P.P.

A) could have + P.P. - تستخدم could have + P.P. كالآتى:

1 Something was possible in the past.

شىء كان ممكنًا حدوثه فى الماضى (احتمال ضعيف) تساوى might

- My friend was absent yesterday. He could/might have been ill.
- I didn't see Omar at the party last night. He could have left early.

2 Someone had the ability to do something that they didn't do.

كان فى مقدور شخص أن يفعل شيئًا، ولكن لم يفعل، وتستخدم للانتقاد أحيانًا.

- We travelled to Aswan by train. We could have travelled by plane.
- You didn't pass the exam. You could have studied harder.

B) couldn't have + P.P. - تستخدم couldn't have + P.P. كالآتى:

1 Something wasn't possible in the past.

شىء لم يكن محتملًا حدوثه فى الماضى أو مستحيلًا.

- My father's keys are on the table. He couldn't have gone to work by car.

لاحظ أن معنى couldn't have + P.P. هو نفس معنى الاستنتاج المنفى فى الماضى can't have + P.P.

- He couldn't/can't have known about the party from me. I haven't told anyone yet!

لاحظ

أيضا يمكن استخدام could/couldn't have + P.P. :

After wish/If only to refer to the past.

بعد wish/If only للتعبير عن أمنية لم تتحقق أو ندم فى الماضى.

- I wish I could have helped but I was so busy that I didn't have the time.
- I wish I couldn't have bought that expensive mobile.

If ⟶ past perfect ⟶ could/couldn't have + P.P.

فى جواب شرط الحالة الثالثة بعد if.

- If he had known that I was ill, he could have visited me.
- Unless he had woken up early, he couldn't have caught the train.

could/couldn't + inf.

A) could + inf.

- Refers to the general ability to do something in the past.

استطاعة فعل شيء في الماضي (مقدرة بدون مجهود).

- Our team could beat the star team last week.

للمقدرة في موقف معين نستخدم : was/were able to – managed to

- Sameh and Kareem played a match yesterday. Kareem played well, but Sameh managed to beat him.

B) couldn't + inf.

1 Unable to do something in the past.

عدم استطاعة فعل شيء في الماضي.

- I couldn't get the full mark in Maths yesterday as the exam was for giants.

2 It was forbidden/against the law.

لم أستطع لأنه كان غير قانوني.

- I couldn't park in Adly Street as it wasn't allowed.

Check Point 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I can't play football now, but I .... when I was younger.
a) couldn't b) could have
c) should have d) could

2 The copier isn't working. You .... the ink in a wrong way.
a) should have changed b) could change
c) couldn't have changed d) could have changed

3 If Sami had trained harder, he .... well.
a) should have played b) could have played
c) played d) couldn't have played

4 He .... at work yesterday. I looked for him in all buildings.
a) shouldn't have been b) could have been
c) couldn't have been d) could be

5 I was so sick yesterday that I .... get out of my bed.
a) can't b) couldn't c) shouldn't d) could



Check the answers at the end of the book.

should/shouldn't have + P.P.

A) should have + P.P./ought to have + P.P.

- We use should have/ought to have + past participle to talk about things we regret.

تستخدم should have/ought to have + past participle للتعبير عن الندم (كان ينبغي فعل شيء لم نفعله).

- He was thirsty during the trip. He should have bought more water.
- I ought to have left earlier to catch the train. I will take the next one.

B) shouldn't have + P.P./oughtn't to have + P.P.

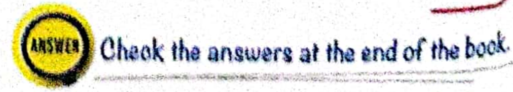
- We use shouldn't/oughtn't to have + P.P. to express feeling sorry about something that happened in the past.

تستخدم shouldn't/oughtn't to have + P.P. للندم على شيء تم/حدث فى الماضى (لم يكن واجبًا فعله).

- I shouldn't have insulted him. He was angry and I'm sorry.
- She oughtn't to have revealed her friend's secret. She was dishonest.

Check Point 6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The report is late. It .... on his desk by 2 o'clock.
   a) shouldn't have been b) should have been
   c) had to d) could be
2. Ahmed rode his bike in the middle of the road. He .... that.
   a) didn't have to do b) should have done
   c) could have done d) shouldn't have done
3. I missed the meeting in Assuit. I .... an earlier train.
   a) should have caught b) shouldn't have caught
   c) needn't have caught d) must have caught
4. You .... those books back to the library two days ago. You'll be fined.
   a) shouldn't have taken b) should have taken
   c) could take d) couldn't have taken
5. Ramy .... the pencil case at his sister. He might have harmed her.
   a) should have thrown b) should throw
   c) shouldn't have thrown d) didn't have to throw



Check the answers at the end of the book.



Language Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You .... the boat if you had been here at one o'clock, but it's gone now and it's too late.
a) could have caught b) could catch
c) might catch d) shouldn't have caught

2 They .... to China 2 years ago because of COVID-19.
a) couldn't have gone b) could go
c) should have gone d) should go

3 Fatma .... phoned me before going out. It was desirable.
a) shouldn't have b) needn't have c) should have d) must have

4 I was sitting at the back of the theatre and .... very well.
a) shouldn't hear b) can't hear
c) shouldn't have heard d) couldn't hear

5 She warned her daughter .... near the campfire because it was dangerous.
a) not to go b) to go c) that she go d) going

6 Ahmed's father advised him .... the front door at night.
a) locking b) that he locking c) to lock d) for locking

7 Samir was an excellent tennis player when he was younger. He .... anybody.
a) couldn't have beaten b) could beat
c) can beat d) shouldn't beat

8 He .... much harder during the term. He wasted much time.
a) should work b) shouldn't have worked
c) could work d) should have worked

9 My brother .... to Cambridge University, but he decided to study in Egypt.
a) shouldn't have gone b) could have gone
c) could go d) couldn't have gone

10 I .... more quickly if my suitcase hadn't been heavy.
a) could walk b) could have walked
c) walked d) shouldn't have walked

11 Sara's mother warned her .... the oven because it was hot.
a) not to touch b) to touch
c) touching d) don't touch

12 You .... yourself yesterday. It was the right thing to do, but you didn't do it.
a) could behave b) ought to have behaved
c) shouldn't behave d) shouldn't have behaved

13 The situation was bad, and it .... worse.

a) could have been
b) should have been
c) shouldn't have been
d) could be

14 The tour guide warned the tourists .... into the desert on their own.

a) going
b) to go
c) that they go
d) not to go

15 If I had known about the traffic problems, I .... a different route.

a) could take
b) might have taken
c) might take
d) couldn't have taken

16 I wasted the time doing nothing at the airport. I .... a book to read.

a) shouldn't have brought
b) should have brought
c) could bring
d) should bring

17 Galal was lucky. He .... hurt himself when he fell, but he was OK.

a) could
b) should have
c) couldn't have
d) could have

18 What made the police suspicious مرتاب was that I .... the number of my own car.

a) shouldn't have remembered
b) should remember
c) couldn't remember
d) could have remembered

19 You .... his phone ringing. He hasn't got a phone.

a) couldn't have heard
b) could have heard
c) should have heard
d) shouldn't have heard

20 You .... bought a new camera; it wasn't necessary. I could have lent you mine.

a) should have
b) could have
c) shouldn't have
d) must have

21 I .... my car in a "No parking area". I had to pay a fine. إدارة أسيوط التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) shouldn't have parked
b) couldn't have parked
c) couldn't park
d) shouldn't park

22 He has got 80% only. He .... 90% if he had studied more. إدارة شرق الزقازيق ٢٠٢٢

a) could get
b) should have got
c) must have got
d) could have got

23 Mr Youseif .... at school yesterday. He is on sick leave for a week. إدارة المنيا ٢٠٢٢

a) might have been
b) shouldn't have been
c) could have been
d) couldn't have been

24 I missed the first lecture; I .... up late last night. القناطر - بنها

a) should have stayed
b) could have stayed
c) shouldn't have stayed
d) needn't stay

25 Julie .... the book, but she borrowed it from the library instead. إدارة السادات التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) could buy
b) shouldn't have bought
c) could have bought
d) was able to

26 It wasn't good of you to leave me in that critical situation. You .... me at least.

a) could phone
b) could have phoned
c) should phone
d) shouldn't have phoned

?7 Choose the best correct answer:

a) I warned my daughter to avoid walking in dark streets alone.
b) I warned my daughter to walk in dark streets alone.
c) I warned my daughter not to avoid walking in dark streets alone.
d) I warned my daughter not to walking in dark streets alone.

8 One of the answers to the following sentence is grammatically incorrect:
Yasser was ill and stayed in bed, so he .... to Aswan with his friends.

a) shouldn't have gone
b) can't have gone
c) could have gone
d) couldn't go

9 Choose the best correct answer:
The fire spread through the building very quickly, but fortunately everybody .... escape.

a) managed to
b) should
c) must
d) could

0 One of the answers to the following sentence is grammatically correct:
The building was empty when the firemen entered. The workers .... through the exit doors.

a) couldn't have escaped
b) were able to escape
c) shouldn't have escaped
d) can't have escaped

hoose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 He .... his son not to make friends with bad people.

a) spoke
b) advised
c) suggested
d) recommended
e) warned

2 My son applied for a job as an accountant, but he .... his own business.

a) could have set up
b) could set up
c) must have set up
d) should have set up
e) had to set up

3 "Could" is used at present to function as a .... and a ....

a) request
b) blame
c) suggestion
d) necessity
e) prohibition

4 The opposing team were struggling all the time to win, but we .... beat them at the end.

a) might
b) managed to
c) can
d) were able to
e) should have

5 You .... punished her. She didn't deserve it.

a) needn't have
b) shouldn't have
c) couldn't have
d) mustn't have
e) oughtn't to have

Test Yourself in 20



● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The young couple gave each other some .... at Christmas.
a) prizes b) gifts c) emojis d) marks

2 Many people don't buy newspapers anymore as they read them ....
a) everyday b) inline c) offline d) online

3 The postman brought a/an .... and some letters for you.
a) icon b) sale c) parcel d) invention

4 I .... selling my car. It was the worst decision I've ever made.
a) regret b) admit c) recommend d) wish

5 It is said that dolphins use sound to .... with each other.
a) contact b) connect c) communicate d) link

6 All staff members are expected to attend the next important .... about the company's future.
a) conference b) interview c) meeting d) appointment

7 You should .... for the job of a receptionist in person as there will be a primary interview.
a) deal b) apply c) comply d) imply

8 The customer complained that he .... the store six weeks ago and didn't receive his order yet.
a) messaged b) warned c) chatted d) regretted

9 Our neighbours .... down the tree in their garden. It was a really beautiful tree.
a) shouldn't have cut b) mustn't have cut
c) could have cut d) could cut

10 A: I had to walk home yesterday. I had no money for my fare.
B: Why didn't you tell me! I .... you the money!
a) shouldn't have lent b) couldn't have lent
c) could have lent d) could lend

11 .... you speak French when you went to the university in Paris or did you learn later?
a) Can b) Could c) Couldn't d) Should

12 You look tired! You .... to bed earlier last night.
a) must have gone b) shouldn't have gone
c) should have gone d) might go

13 I .... remembered to take an umbrella. I am totally washed by the rain.
a) must have b) shouldn't have
c) should have d) might

14 His health condition got worse and worse. He .... a doctor earlier.
a) shouldn't have seen
b) ought to have seen
c) could see
d) shouldn't see

15 Ola .... left school before the end of the day. She was punished.
a) could have been
b) must be
c) should have
d) shouldn't have

16 This team .... have trained well otherwise, they would have won the game.
a) could
b) should
c) couldn't
d) shouldn't

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A desert is a special region where only certain kinds of plants and animals can survive. All deserts have very little water. This means that only animals and plants that can do without water for long periods of time can exist[1] in the desert. Plants in the deserts are particularly adapted to the dry and hot environment. One well-known desert plant is the cactus[2]. Like many desert plants, this plant has very tiny leaves. As plants lose most of their water through their leaves, the small leaves of the cactus help to cut down water evaporation. There are other desert plants that do not have leaves at all. Some desert plants survive by avoiding the dry season altogether. During the dry season, this plant remains as a seed[3] and does not emerge[4] from the soil at all. When the rains come, this seed would grow very quickly into a plant. It would bloom rapidly and then scatter its seeds before the dry season returns.

Desert animals have also learnt to adapt well to life in this region. The camel, for example, survives well in the desert because water can be stored in its body. Other desert animals include rodents[5]. These animals need very little water as they can get all the water they require from their food.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The climate in the desert is ....
a) mild and windy
b) hot and dry
c) rainy and windy
d) hot and wet

2 The plants found in the desert must have ....
a) long leaves to store water in them
b) deep roots to get water easily
c) either tiny leaves or no leaves at all
d) few leaves

3 To avoid the dry season, some plants ....
a) remain as seeds and do not emerge from the soil
b) hide under other plants to get protection
c) drink much water throughout the year
d) remain in far and wet regions under the sand

(1) يوجد/يحيا
(2) الصبار
(3) بذرة
(4) ينشأ
(5) قوارض

4 The antonym for the word "include" is "................".
a) enclose b) consist c) contain d) exclude

5 The camel can survive in the desert because it ....
a) stores water
b) hides under trees
c) digs the ground for water
d) drink rain drops

6 The cactus is one of the plant that .... in the desert.
a) doesn't grow
b) can't store water
c) survives
d) grows underground

7 What are the qualities of the animals and plants which exist in the desert?
a) They are yellow.
b) They are long and thick.
c) They can't be eaten by human.
d) They stay without water for long.

8 The best title for the passage is "................".
a) Life in the Oceans
b) Rodents and Camels
c) Life on Earth
d) The Desert Hard Life

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Although using abbreviations and emojis is not acceptable in any formal learning or writing, most young people use them in their everyday chats with their friends.

....

....

2. Learning foreign languages especially English widens[1] the horizon and scope[2] of learning. That's because most of the researches and information on the internet are written in English.

....

....

3. Competition[3] in our modern life affects everybody in society and sometimes leads to evil deeds[4]. Greed[5] for money and power is the root of many crimes.

....

....

4. We use messaging daily to communicate with friends and family, and its convenience[6] has made us want to use it to communicate with businesses too.

....

....

5. World Youth Forum , held annually[7] in Sharm El Sheikh, is a platform built by promising youth. It sends a message of peace, prosperity, harmony, and progress to the entire world.

....

....

6. Most young people today are substandard[8] in culture and knowledge. That's because they neglected[9] reading and even watching cultural programmes.

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- أصبح تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية جزءًا هامًا من التعليم فى كثير من الدول، وذلك لأنها لغة دولية تساعد فى كثير من الأغراض العلمية والترفيهية.

....

....

٢- يجب أن يختار كل شخص الوظيفة التى تناسب[10] قدراته وتميزه عن الآخرين؛ ولا يبحث فقط عن الوظيفة ذات المرتب الكبير حتى يحقق النجاح فى الحياة.

....

....

٣- أثبتت أزمة كوفيد-١٩ والحرب الروسية الأوكرانية أهمية أن تحاول مصر تحقيق الاكتفاء الذاتى[11] من إنتاج الغذاء وأن تقلل استيراده.

....

....

٤- يحصل الأبطال المصريون فى الألعاب الفردية[12] على الميداليات والكئوس، ومع ذلك لا يلقون الاهتمام والدعم مثل الألعاب الجماعية التى لم تحقق الكثير من الإنجازات الكبيرة.

....

....

4 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

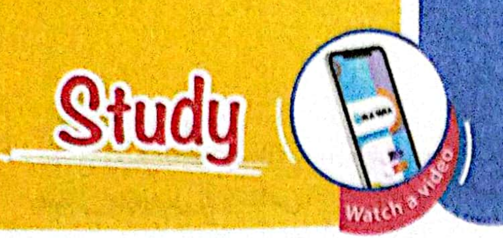
"Your friend wants to improve her English and asks your advice the best ways to do so. Give her your advice."

Your friend's name is Manal and her email address is: manal10@gmail.com.

Your name is Leila and your email address is: leila10@yahoo.com

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. | I used the right structure. | I used a topic sentence. | I wrote the conclusion. | I used the right punctuation.

(1) يوسع (2) مدى (3) المنافسة (4) الطموح (5) معايير (6) ملاءمة (7) سنويًا (8) ذو مستوى متدنى (9) أهمل (10) suit (11) self-sufficiency (12) individual





Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

anymore (adv)	لم يعد	prefix (n)	بادئة (مقطع يُضاف لأول الكلمة)
debate (n)	مناظرة	procedure (n)	إجراء
disagree (v) (d)	يعترض/يخالف	proper (adj)	مناسب/صحيح
findings (n)	اكتشافات	receive (v) (d)	يتسلم/يتلقى
grandparents (n)	أجداد	society (n)★	مجتمع
headline (n)	عنوان	suffix (n)	لاحقة (مقطع يُضاف لآخر الكلمة)
modern (adj)	حديث/عصرى	uncomfortable (adj)	غير مريح

★ We should follow the customs of our society or at least respect them.

Vocabulary on Listening

blog post (n)	منشور على مدونة	key (adj)	رئيسى
check (v) (ed)	يراجع/يفحص	partner (n)	شريك/رفيق
cite (v) (d)	ينوه/يذكر	section (n)	قسم
conclusion (n)	خاتمة/خلاصة	sub-heading (n)	عنوان فرعى
frequently (adv)	بشكل متكرر	thesaurus (n)	موسوعة مفردات
image (n)	صورة	tips (n)	نصائح

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

age (n)	عمر/عصر	hobby (n)	هواية
aim (n)	هدف	interest (n) (v) (ed)	اهتمام/يثير اهتماما
Angles (n)	قبائل الأنجلو الإنجليزية	Latin (n) (adj)	اللغة اللاتينية/لاتينى
comment (n) (v) (ed)	تعليق/يعلق	member (n)	عضو/فرد
compare (v) (d)	يقارن	powerful (adj)	قوى ذو نفوذ
Greek (adj)	يونانى	recognisable (adj)	يمكن تمييزه/مميز
helicopter (n)	طائرة مروحية هليكوبتر	record (n) (v) (ed)	سجل/يسجل

remain (v) (ed)	يبقى/يظل	site (n)	موقع
report (n) (v) (ed)	تقرير/يبلغ عن تقرير	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
result (n)	نتيجة	summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
reuse (v) (d)	يعيد استخدام	survey (n)	دراسة/تقييم
Romans (n)	الرومان	title (n)	عنوان
Russian (n) (adj)	روسي	Vikings (n)	غزاة الشمال (الفايكنج)
Saxons (n)	قبائل الساكسون الإنجليزية		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at that time	في ذلك الوقت	in general	بشكل عام
do the same	يفعل نفس الشيء	keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال مع
ever since	منذ ذلك الحين	make different sounds	يصدر أصواتا مختلفة
feel special	يشعر أنه مميز	take notes	يدون ملاحظات
give advice	يعطي نصيحة	take ... away	يأخذ بعيدًا عن
give an opinion	يعطي رأيًا	that's why	لهذا السبب
add to/into	يضيف إلى	suitable for	مناسب لـ
disagree with	لا يتفق مع	talk about	يتحدث عن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
compare	يقارن	comparison	مقارنة	comparative	مقارن
disagree	يخالف/يعترض	disagreement	عدم اتفاق	disagreeable	غير مستحب
find	يجد	finding	اكتشاف	found	مكتشف
interest	يثير الاهتمام	interest	اهتمام	interesting interested	شيق مهتم
recognise	يتعرف على/يميز	recognition	تمييز	recognisable	مميز يمكن تمييزه
record	يسجل	record	سجل	recorded recordable	مسجل قابل للتسجيل

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
compare	يقارن	contrast/analyze	discard/neglect يستبعد/يهمل
debate	مناظرة	argument/controversy	agreement/harmony اتفاق/انسجام
interest	اهتمام	concern/passion	indifference/boredom لا مبالاة/ملل
modern	حديث/عصري	contemporary/ modernised	old/ancient قديم
procedure	إجراء	method/proceeding	inaction/inactivity عدم إجراء/عدم نشاط
proper	مناسب/صحيح	convenient/suitable	improper/inappropriate غير مناسب
recognisable	مميز	definite/obvious	ambiguous/indefinite غامض/غير محدد
report	يبلغ	inform/record	hide/conceal يخفي
survey	دراسة/تقييم	analysis/inquiry	negligence إهمال

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... a bill containing 10% service for the new bed I bought.
   a) received b) disagreed c) sent d) designed
2. Parents should teach their children to have .... behaviour with strangers.
   a) probable b) recognisable c) proper d) careless
3. I recommend this book to anyone with an .... in chemistry.
   a) agreement b) interest c) invention d) argument
4. Facebook and Twitter are the most famous social .... websites.
   a) competition b) service c) course d) media
5. It's important that you always follow the correct .... of doing research.
   a) concept b) means c) procedure d) record

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

What do you know about Shakespeare?

Reading Text (1)

Shakespeare and the English language

Language is always changing, and new words are created all the time. We need new words to describe new technology, ideas, and situations. For example, before people took photos of themselves on their phones, we didn't need a word for that. But when everyone started doing it, the word 'selfie' became very useful, and it was added to dictionaries[1] in 2013. Many famous dictionaries add new words every year, and sometimes they remove words and phrases that we don't use anymore[2].

(1) قواميس

(2) لم يعد

(3) بادئة

(4) لاحقة

(5) غير مريح/غير مرتاح

Shakespeare was a great innovator with language, and he added more words and phrases into the English language than anyone else. He made new words by changing verbs into adjectives, changing nouns into verbs, and connecting words to make new words. He also added prefixes[3] and suffixes[4], for example, he created 'uncomfortable[5]' from 'comfortable'.

Today the language that Shakespeare used can sound difficult, but he was writing in a way that made his stories easy for people to understand at that time.

Like messaging language, Shakespeare made new words from other words that everyone already knew. Then he used his words to describe the things that people most wanted to talk about.

Why was Shakespeare considered innovative?

How old were you when you sent your first message?

Reading Text (2)

Emoji fun!













Yesterday, my four-year-old sister sent her grandparents some text messages from my phone. The problem is, there are no words[1], just a long line of emojis. This is confusing[2] because our grandparents[3] think the messages were from me! Should I have taken the phone away from my sister?

When a child begins to learn how to speak, they first make different sounds. It seems that children do the same with messaging. They use emojis rather than proper[4] words to communicate what they want to say.

But is this a good thing? Yes! Young children are learning to communicate. With text messages, children can receive[5] and read replies which are written just for them. I'm sure this will make them feel special and they will want to communicate more.

So, instead of taking phones away from children, perhaps we should give them our phones more often and say, "Send your grandparents a message".

(1) كلمات

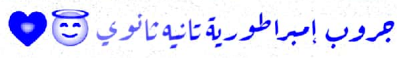
(2) مربك

(3) أجداد

(4) مناسب/صحيح

(5) يتسلم/يتلقى

Why should we give the phones to our children much often?





Reading Text (3)

What is the oldest language on Earth?

Endless change

The Romans spoke a language called Latin[1] and they first took it to the country they called *Britannia* almost two thousand years ago. However, the English language came from Germany when people called *Angles* and *Saxons* arrived about 500 years later. Soon the *Land of the Angles* became known as England and the English have been using and misusing[2] foreign words ever since.

For example, words like cake, eggs, and happy all come from *Old Norse*, which was the language spoken by the *Vikings*[3] who came to England a few years after the Angles. However, many more English words came from the French, who arrived in 1066.

Unlike the poor people, who continued speaking English, all the rich and powerful people spoke French. That's why there are so many words in English with similar meanings. French words are recognisable[4] because they usually describe something which is better. For example, the word house is an English word, but a big house is called a mansion[5], which is a French word.

In the modern age, we often reuse[6] old words from the past to make new international words for technology. For example, the first part of the word helicopter[7] is Greek and the second part is Latin, but the word was first used by a Russian speaker living in America.

(1) اللغة اللاتينية

(2) إساءة استخدام

(3) غزاة الشمال (الفايكنج)

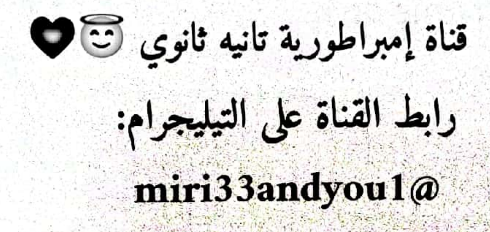
(4) مميز/يمكن تمييزه

(5) قصر

(6) يعيد استخدام

(7) طائرة مروحية هليكوبتر

What are the words imported from other languages?

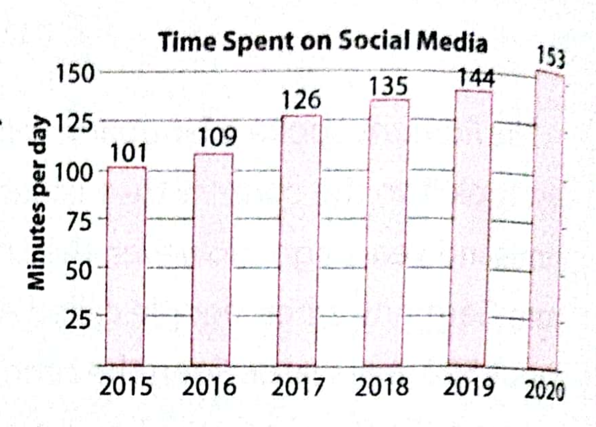


How often do you use social media?

Reading Text (4) (Workbook)

How to write a brilliant blog

1. (✓) Choose an interesting title.
2. ( ) Don't worry about spelling grammar or punctuation mistakes.
3. ( ) You shouldn't use images or photos.
4. ( ) Include a few links to other sites.
5. ( ) Don't organise your ideas dearly.
6. ( ) Give your personal opinion.



The aim of this report is to summarise[1] the findings of the survey[2] into the time students spend using social media[3].

Between 2015 and 2020, we asked 1,200 students about the amount of time they spent using social media. We also asked them how they used social media, and what they liked and disliked about using it. We recorded[4] our results and compared[5] them.

Most of the students that we spoke to were surprised by how much time they spent on social media when they thought about it carefully.

Many students thought that they were spending too much time on social media and some students said that they would try to spend less time on social media. Some students reported[6] that at least one member of their family had made a negative comment[7] about it.

(1) يلخص
(2) دراسة/تقييم
(3) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
(4) سجل
(5) قارن
(6) أخبر
(7) تعليق
(8) يبقى على اتصال مع
(9) اهتمامات
(10) بشكل عام

However, almost all of the students reported that they enjoyed using social media and most of the students did not want to stop using it.

Most students used social media on their phones. The students used social media to keep in touch with[8] their friends, and to follow their interests[9] or hobbies.

In general[10], students enjoy social media and they are using it more often. However, it is making a small number of students worried because they feel that they are spending too much time on it.

Why were the students surprised?

o you usually write blog
osts?

Listening Text



Speaker 1: Tips[1] on how to write a successful blog post:

1. Start with your topic. Think about what will interest and inform your reader.
2. Start with a headline[2] for your blog. A headline should tell the reader what the blog is about. It should be short, give information, be interesting and make the reader want to read the rest of the blog.
3. Find a suitable photo or picture that will show the reader what the blog post is about.
4. Plan the sections[3] of your blog. Add a sub-heading[4] for each section/new point.
5. Write your introduction paragraph. Be clear what the purpose of this blog post is. Speak to the reader – use first and third person. Include a question.
6. Write the main body of the blog. Keep sentences and paragraphs short. Include images[5] where useful. Do research to find facts to include.
7. Write a conclusion. Refer back to your headline and your introduction. Do not include new information in your conclusion. Speak to your reader again and include yourself; use 'we'.
8. Read and correct your blog post. Check spelling, grammar and punctuation. Check that you have not repeated key ideas too frequently[6]. Use an online thesaurus[7] to avoid repeating the same word too many times.
9. Ask a friend to read your blog post. Does it make sense to them?
10. Cite[8] all your sources of information.

(1) نصائح
(2) عنوان رئيسى
(3) أقسام
(4) عنوان فرعى
(5) صور
(6) بشكل متكرر
(7) موسوعة مفردات
(8) يذكر

What sources of information would you resort to for your blog post?

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There is no reason to doubt the information in the articles .... above.
   a) searched b) removed
   c) recorded d) cited

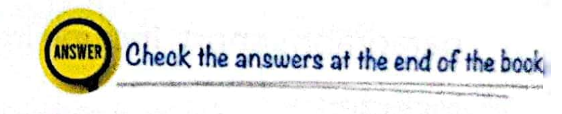
2. Passengers complained that trains were .... cancelled.
   a) properly b) rarely
   c) frequently d) politely

3. I just had time to scan the newspaper .... before leaving for work.
   a) captions b) headlines
   c) articles d) analysis

4. Advertising is a/an .... element in the success of a product.
   a) key b) minor
   c) unimportant d) aimless

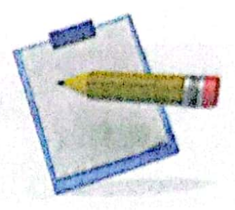
5. The air hostess told me that the first class seats are in the front .... of the plane.
   a) carriage b) section
   c) aisle d) route







Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

debate مناظرة
- discussion of a particular subject that often continues for a long time and in which people express different opinions

procedure إجراء
- a way of doing something, especially the correct or usual way

headline عنوان رئيسى
- the title of a newspaper report, which is printed in large letters above the report

blog مدونة
- a web page containing information or opinions from a particular person or about a particular subject, to which new information is added regularly

thesaurus موسوعة مفردات
- a book in which words are put into groups with other words that have similar meanings

Notes on Vocabulary

1

prefix

البادئة هى جزء من كلمة تضاف قبل الكلمة لتعطى معنى جديدًا ومنها (mis – re – un)، واستخدام كل منها كما هو موضح بالجدول:

Prefix	Meaning	Examples	
mis	تعطى معنى يسىء	misunderstand يسىء الفهم	misuse يسىء الاستخدام
re	تعطى معنى مرة ثانية	reread يعيد قراءة	rewrite يعيد كتابة
un	تعطى العكس	undo يلغى العمل	unrecognisable لا يمكن تمييزه

suffix

اللاحقة هى مقاطع تضاف إلى آخر الكلمة لتكوين كلمة جديدة لإعطاء معنى جديد أو لتحديد نوع الكلمة، ومنها (able - er - less)، واستخدام كل منها كما هو موضح بالجدول:

Prefix	Meaning	Examples	
able	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	understandable يمكن فهمه	recognisable يمكن تمييزه
er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	carer مهتم/مراع	writer كاتب
less	تعطى العكس	careless غير حريص	useless بلا فائدة

2

debate

مناظرة (جدال) غالبًا أطراف الجدال مختلفون

- The two politicians السياسيان will have a debate about their different economic ideas.

discussion

مناقشة (إعطاء آراء عن شيء مهم)

- Our English teacher sometimes starts his lesson with a short discussion about the new topic.

3

society

المجتمع (عموم الناس الذين يربطهم قانون واحد وتنظيمات واحدة)

- The Egyptian society has been shocked by the violent murder.

community

المجتمع/الجالية/جماعة (الناس الذين يعيشون فى منطقة أو مدينة واحدة)

- The president met representatives of the Egyptian community in New York.

4

title

١- عنوان (كتاب/مقال/مسرحية)
٢- لقب
٣- مسمى وظيفى

- The title of the play we study this year is "King Lear".
- The title "Mrs" is used with a married woman.
- My father's official title is the editor of the newspaper.

address

١- عنوان (مكان)
٢- عنوان موقع إنترنت أو بريد إلكترونى
٣- خطاب/يخاطب

- I wrote my address in detail in the application form.
- You shouldn't post your website address on unknown pages.
- The manager addressed the clerks in his first speech.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- .... and he added more words and phrases into the English language than anyone else.

- تستخدم (else) بعد تعبيرات تحتوى على (some - any - no).

- He made new words by changing verbs into adjectives, ...
So, instead of taking phones away from children, ...

- تستخدم صيغة (verb + ing) بعد حروف الجر.

- Yesterday, my four-year-old sister sent her grandparents some text messages from my phone.

- تستخدم صيغة المفرد وليس الجمع (four-year-old) فى التعبير السابق لأنها تعتبر صفة لكلمة (sister).

- .... we asked 1,200 students about the amount of time they spent using social media.

- تستخدم صيغة (verb + ing) بعد الفعل (spend).

- .... and most of the students did not want to stop using it.
Most students used social media on their phones.

- تستخدم (most of the) بمعنى (معظم) عند التحدث عن فئة محددة.
- تستخدم (most) بدون (of the) بمعنى (معظم) عند التحدث عن مجموعة عامة.

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... of the newspaper's main articles are usually at the front page.
   a) addresses b) titles c) ranks d) awards
2. There was a series of .... between the two main candidates of the elections.
   a) discussions b) debates c) fights d) battles
3. I asked the customer service clerk about the .... of the bank's new branch.
   a) address b) title c) headline d) award
4. After a long .... with his father, Ahmed agreed to wash the car himself.
   a) debate b) fight c) discussion d) dispute
5. The government built a new hospital to serve the rural .... near the Siwa Oasis.
   a) society b) government c) community d) business

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.



Vocabulary Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Practice makes perfect!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 All over the world, there is a great .... whether we should use animals in scientific research or not.
a) agreement b) debate c) search d) finding

2 The house where my .... lived is being demolished because it was old.
a) grandchildren b) sons c) grandparents d) visitors

3 The newspaper .... about the match was so exciting that I read it twice.
a) conclusion b) report c) conference d) procedure

4 The manager hopes he will become a .... in our company.
a) part b) surgeon c) servant d) partner

5 This .... of the hypermarket sells meat products like hot dogs and burgers.
a) site b) centre c) section d) aim

6 The .... of the research is to find new ways of cleaning polluted water.
a) report b) procedure c) article d) aim

7 The website warned all participants that any rude or racist .... will be deleted.
a) comment b) interest c) content d) record

8 Scientists .... the results of both scientific experiments carefully.
a) divided b) compared c) cited d) remained

9 Stamp collecting has been a .... of mine since I was a child.
a) result b) challenge c) hobby d) tip

10 The young painter paints real .... of working-class communities.
a) photos b) images c) procedures d) descriptions

11 The doctor advised her to .... in bed for a week after the surgery.
a) remain b) remind c) last d) check

12 The referees .... the times of all competitors to decide the winner.
a) resulted b) explored c) received d) recorded

13 Jürgen Klopp, the Liverpool manager, is an excellent coach who knows how to get great ....
a) reasons b) purposes c) conclusions d) results

14 To be successful, the .... of a sports team must cooperate with each other.
a) organs b) callers c) members d) helpers

15 I recommend that you buy a more .... computer to get the project ready soon.
a) helpless b) powerful c) updated d) ancient

16 The author's name is usually printed below the .... of his or her novel.

a) title b) address c) speech d) text

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

17 We contrasted the two characters of the story. The word "contrast" is similar in meaning to the word ....

a) compare b) sum up c) record d) find

18 My hometown is hardly .... to me as I last visited it in 2001.

a) recognise b) recognition c) recognisable d) forgettable

19 I don't have any clothes which are suitable .... the party.

a) for b) about c) on d) over

20 The two boys had a major .... over who should clean their father's car.

a) disagree b) disagreement c) disagreed d) disagreeable

21 Girls like to .... special, so they often buy new clothes and accessories.

a) feel b) make c) work d) help

22 Do you want to add your name .... the waiting list for the tickets?

a) with b) for c) in d) to

23 The journalists who attended the conference .... notes of the most important points.

a) filled b) drew c) gave d) took

24 The blood samples have been sent away for comparison. The noun "comparison" is the opposite of the noun "..................".

a) debate b) application c) survey d) negligence

25 My younger sister always asks me to .... her my opinion of her clothes.

a) take b) give c) receive d) deliver

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 In modern times, advances in technology have made the world smaller. The antonyms of the adjective "modern" are ....

a) updated b) old c) fashionable d) ancient e) helpful

27 Angela Merkel, the German leader, had been one of the most .... politicians in Europe.

a) extra b) available c) important d) additional e) powerful

28 The .... of the educational survey will be published online.

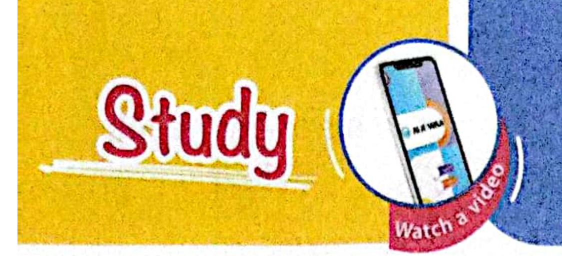
a) reasons b) failures c) findings d) explorations e) results

29 Recycling is an excellent .... for getting rid of toxic waste.

a) procedure b) operation c) forum d) process e) seminar

30 It is important to .... in touch with the latest technology.

a) play b) keep c) make d) leave e) stay





B Language

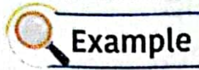


Important Notes



1 could/could have for other usages

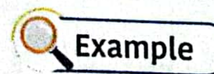
Rule	Usage
could be (inf.) might be (inf.) may be (inf.)	When we are uncertain about something at present. عندما نكون غير متأكدين من شيء في المضارع.



Example

- **A:** Where is dad? **B:** I don't know. He could be at the swimming pool or in the park.

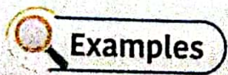
Rule	Usage
can't have + P.P. couldn't have + P.P.	I'm certain that something didn't happen. (past deduction). شيء لا يمكن أن يكون حدث في الماضي (استنتاج قوى في الماضي).



Example

- She can't have left the house yet because her car is still outside.

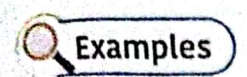
Rule	Usage
could have + P.P. may have + P.P. might have + P.P.	The speaker is not sure whether something happened or not. المتحدث غير متأكد مما إذا كان شيء ما قد حدث أم لا.



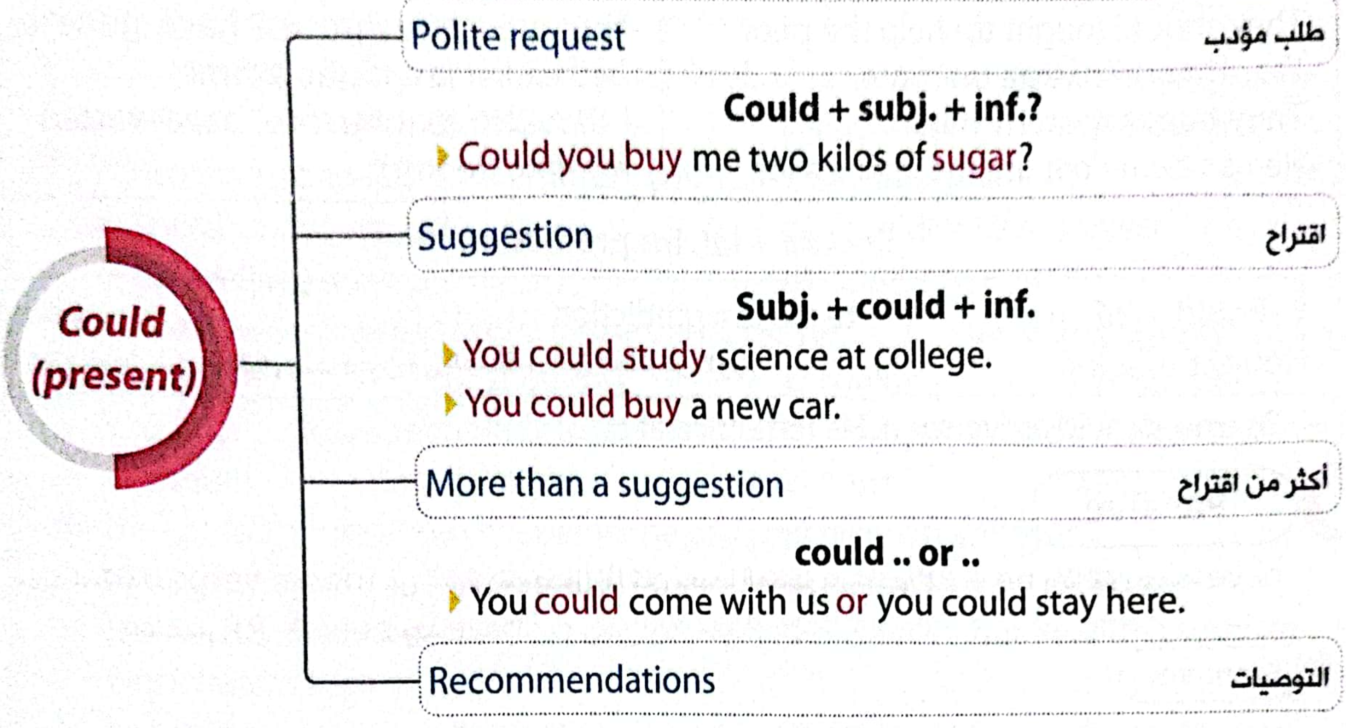
Examples

- The copier isn't working. It might have run out of paper.
- She could have gone to the shops. I'm not sure.

Rule	Usage
could + inf.	After wish/If only to refer to the present and the future If ⟶ past simple ⟶ could + inf. بعد wish/if only للتعبير عن أمنية في المستقبل أو المضارع، وجواب شرط الحالة الثانية بعد If.



- I wish/If only I could play the piano.
- I wish I could help, but I am so busy that I don't have the time.
- He could go with us if he weren't ill.

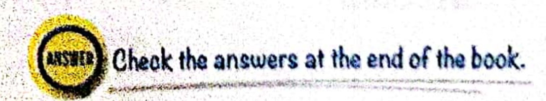


could + inf.

- You could visit the citadel. It's interesting.

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They .... at school. I'm not sure.
   a) could still be b) are still c) have still been d) must still be
2. Ali .... to Alexandria this morning. He is ill in bed!
   a) can travel b) can't have travelled
   c) must travel d) should have travelled
3. Why didn't Salah come to our party? He .... have forgotten or travelled.
   a) should b) might c) must d) mustn't
4. Last week, we .... enter the train without a face mask. It was against the law.
   a) mustn't b) can't c) couldn't d) shouldn't
5. If Yasser got up late, he .... the train on time.
   a) can't have taken b) couldn't take
   c) couldn't have taken d) may take



2 should for advice/should have for regret/blame

Advice	Regret/Blame
should/ought to/had better + inf. •They should (ought to) help the poor. •We shouldn't waste our time. •They ought to study hard. •He had better not use the phone a lot.	**should/ought to/have + P.P.** •You should (ought to) have gone to bed earlier last night (blame). •I shouldn't (oughtn't to) have wasted my time (regret).

Should + inf. for prediction

should + inf. ought to + inf.	to make a prediction للتنبؤ توقع حدوث شىء بحلول وقت معين فى المستقبل (من المفترض/لازم).

- Osama should arrive soon. He left office at 6.

Passive

-عند استخدام modal verbs فى المبنى للمجهول إذا كان بعدها المصدر نستخدم be + P.P. وإذا كان بعدها have نستخدم been + P.P. بعد have.

Examples

- The Pyramids could be visited tomorrow. We aren't sure.
- The bills should have been paid two weeks ago.

Check Point 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 They are our best friends. They .... be invited to the party.
a) can't b) should c) shouldn't d) might

2 Ahmed .... to live without a job even if he has got a lot of money.
a) shouldn't b) had c) oughtn't d) mustn't

3 You .... your friend yesterday as he was in a big problem.
a) should have helped b) should help
c) could help d) oughtn't have helped

4 You .... waste your time or money.
a) should b) may c) can't d) shouldn't

5 He .... have worn such heavy clothes. It wasn't cold outside.
a) could b) shouldn't c) must d) might



Check the answers at the end of the book.



Language Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I .... have booked the tickets last week. I feel sorry for not booking the ticket.
a) can't b) should c) couldn't d) shouldn't

2 When you go to Paris next month, you .... with my cousin.
a) should have stayed b) shouldn't have stayed
c) could have stayed d) could stay

3 Hossam wasn't at the scene of the crime , so he .... have been guilty.
a) couldn't b) shouldn't c) could d) should

4 You .... have seen Hady in the park this morning. We were in Cairo together.
a) should b) might c) must d) couldn't

5 He .... have asked me before he took my bike. I'm annoyed.
a) oughtn't b) should c) needn't d) must

6 He .... have been a great doctor. He had the ability but he didn't want to work hard.
a) can't b) must c) could d) might

7 Ali .... have forgotten about the meeting. I told him this morning.
a) can't b) must c) might d) should

8 **A:** I can't decide what to make for dinner tonight.
B: You .... meat or chicken with some soup.
a) couldn't make b) could make
c) could have made d) should have made

9 You .... have been rude to him. He did nothing wrong.
a) shouldn't b) couldn't c) can't d) should

10 We .... have donated some money to the poor. It was the right thing to do, but we didn't do it.
a) ought to b) shouldn't c) must d) might

11 He .... a lawyer, but he didn't and lost the case.
a) might have consulted b) must have consulted
c) consulted d) could have consulted

12 She's late. She .... have taken the wrong road.
a) might not b) may c) can't d) should

13 I .... have eaten so much chocolate! I feel sick!
a) couldn't b) could c) should d) shouldn't

14 They .... smoke there. They aren't allowed.

a) can't　b) must　c) couldn't　d) might

15 He .... have been more tolerant. Everyone was angry with him.

a) must　b) ought to　c) shouldn't　d) might

16 We were totally free. We .... what we wanted.

a) couldn't have done　b) should do

c) couldn't do　d) could do

17 **A:** How did the robbers get in?

B: We don't know yet. The old woman .... have forgotten to lock the door.

a) must　b) might　c) can't　d) should

18 You .... have taken this job. I can see you're not enjoying it.

a) couldn't　b) should　c) shouldn't　d) could

19 .... you possibly give me a lift to the next village?

a) Didn't　b) Shouldn't　c) Should　d) Could

20 He .... been working in the garage when we arrived. That might be why he didn't hear the bell.

a) could have　b) has

c) can't have　d) shouldn't have

21 I wish I .... go to the stadium tomorrow. الشبراوين الثانوية

a) can　b) could　c) will　d) may

22 You .... me that the meeting has been cancelled. إدارة نجع حمادى ٢٠٢٢

a) should inform　b) should have informed

c) shouldn't inform　d) shouldn't have informed

23 Mum warned me .... play with matches. إدارة إدفو ٢٠٢٢

a) not to　b) don't　c) to not　d) did

24 Hamid was working with me all day, so you .... seen him at the park.

إدارة جنوب - السويس ٢٠٢٢

a) should have　b) couldn't have

c) could have　d) shouldn't have

25 I .... downloaded that program. Now I have a virus on my laptop. إدارة غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) can't have　b) could have　c) shouldn't have　d) will have

26 Don't ring the doorbell when you get there. Ola's baby .... sleeping.

a) can't be　b) may not be　c) may be　d) should be

27 Salah should have saved much money to buy a new car. This means that he .... it.

a) didn't buy　b) regrets buying

c) saved but didn't buy　d) was wrong to buy

28 I called her, but there was no answer. She .... for Alexandria.

a) has probably left
b) should have left
c) can't have left
d) might have left

29 Fady .... his exam as he seems happy.

a) could have passed
b) shouldn't have passed
c) could pass
d) can't have passed

30 He .... his exams. I'm not sure.

a) must have finished
b) can't have finished
c) shouldn't have finished
d) might have finished

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

31 These flowers should be watered twice a week, but I always forget to water them. This means it's ....

a) important
b) advisable
c) unnecessary
d) necessity
e) must

32 I .... speak English fluently until I was 20 when I travelled to England and met native speakers.

a) couldn't
b) was able to
c) didn't succeed in
d) wasn't capable of
e) wasn't able to

33 I shouldn't have wasted my time playing and having fun. This can be a/an ....

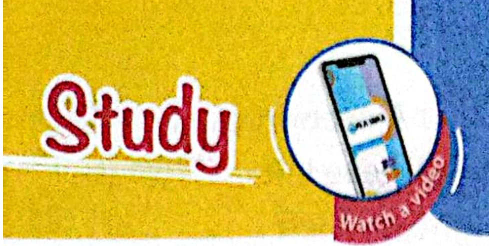
a) suggestion
b) regret
c) request
d) blame
e) offer

34 A: You bought the tickets, didn't you?
B: No. I ...., but I didn't have enough money.

a) couldn't
b) ought to have been
c) was supposed to
d) should have
e) must have

35 "Doctors are supposed to help sick people" means ....

a) They can't help sick people.
b) They should help sick people.
c) They must be helping sick people.
d) They might have helped sick people.
e) They ought to help sick people.

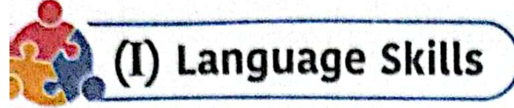




Lessons 3 & 4

C Communication Skills

المزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى
الرجوع لملحق المهارات



Communication

Communication is simply the act of transferring information from one place, person or group to another.

Every communication involves (at least) one sender, a message, and a recipient. This may sound simple, but communication is actually a very complex subject.

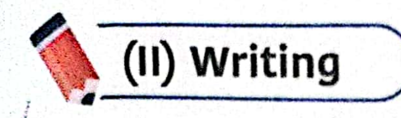
The transmission of the message from senders to recipients can be affected by a huge range of things. These include our emotions, the cultural situation, the medium used to communicate, and even our location. The complexity is why good communication skills are considered so desirable by employers around the world: accurate, effective and unambiguous communication is actually extremely hard.

Categories of communication

1. **Spoken or verbal communication**, which includes face-to-face, telephone, radio or television and other media.
2. **Non-verbal communication**, covering body language, gestures, how we dress or act, where we stand, and even our scent. There are many subtle ways that we communicate (perhaps even unintentionally) with others. For example, the tone of voice can give clues to mood or emotional state, whilst hand signals or gestures can add to a spoken message.
3. **Written communication:** which includes letters, emails, social media, books, magazines, the internet and other media. Until recent times, a relatively small number of writers and publishers were very powerful when it came to communicating the written word. Today, we can all write and publish our ideas online, which has led to an explosion of information and communication possibilities.
4. **Visualisations:** graphs and charts, maps, logos and other visualisations can all communicate messages.

Reference: https://www.skillsyouneed.com/ips/what-is-communication.html

When we want the bus to stop, we use which category of communication?



(II) Writing

Blog post writing

Write a blog post on the topic of mobile phone use and its effects today.

Tips for writing the essay:

Consider the following points:

- What is a healthy amount of time to spend using your phone?
- What are the effects of spending too much time on your phone?
- What solutions or advice can you offer your reader on how to use their mobile phone in the most positive way?





Mobile phone! Take care!

Yesterday I phoned my friend Nahla to ask her about the title of our English assignment this week. Her phone was busy. I continued to try to get her on the phone, but it was busy for 6 hours. Imagine! She had been talking with a friend all that time. Although there is no exact amount of time set for using your phone, experts warn us not to use a mobile that long.

Spending too much time on your phone has dangerous effects on your health as well as your social life. People who use their phones for long suffer health problems such as sleep trouble and obesity. In addition, it can take you away from your family and friends.

There are some things you can do to use your mobile phone positively. You can use it to communicate with your friends, but don't forget to get together with them. You can use it to play games, but don't neglect physical exercises. In short, you should make your mobile phone a means to be controlled, not a device to be controlled by.

Test Yourself in 20 min



Unit 4
Lessons 3 & 4

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I asked my friend about the .... of this week's writing as I was absent.
a) address b) title c) site d) location

2 To ensure high quality, all products of the food factory go through strict testing ....
a) procedures b) findings c) results d) records

3 Experts advise all people to eat .... meals instead of fast-food takeaways.
a) probable b) interested c) comfortable d) proper

4 Some sociologists carried out research into the roles of men and women in today's ....
a) organisation b) society c) association d) interview

5 The .... of your essay should be clear and brief so that readers finally understand your view.
a) introduction b) tip c) conclusion d) start

6 Social .... have really changed the way people communicate, work, and shop.
a) service b) media c) status d) work

7 The interview with the new minister was .... on the front page of the newspaper.
a) summarised b) commented c) reduced d) increased

8 The hospital conducted a/an .... asking patients to suggest ways in which the service could be improved.
a) inspection b) search c) survey d) estimation

9 I'm really cold! I .... have brought my coat.
a) can't b) shouldn't c) should d) might

10 If I had gone with my friends to the Red Sea, I .... scuba diving lessons.
a) must have taken b) can't have taken
c) could take d) could have taken

11 Really, I can't remember you, but I .... you before.
a) should have met b) shouldn't have met
c) might have met d) must met

12 Ahmed waited for you outside for a long time and was angry. You .... to have met him.
a) oughtn't b) should c) ought d) must

13 A: I threw your old books into the recycling bin.
B: Oh, no! You .... have done that. I need some of them for school.
a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) can't d) couldn't

14 I wonder why Ali hasn't come to my party. I suppose he .... have received the invitation.

a) must b) might not c) might d) shouldn't

15 You .... believe everything you read in the newspapers.

a) need b) must c) aren't d) shouldn't

16 Tamer walked into a wall. He .... have been looking where he was going.

a) couldn't b) must c) might d) could

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Albert Einstein found school very difficult. His teacher **would tap her pointer against the blackboard impatiently** while she waited for him to answer her questions. But Albert always had to think about many things before he could answer. After all, he would say to himself, there are many different things to think about before you can say anything is absolutely certain. When his teacher wasn't asking Albert a question, Albert would think of a question to ask her. And often when he did, she would get red in the face and angry at Albert for thinking up questions she couldn't answer. The more Albert learned, the more ideas he found to think about. The more he thought, the more questions he asked.

He knew that the Earth, other planets, the moon, and the sun are just a part of what we call the universe. He knew that the universe is also made up of all the stars we can see with our eyes and millions and millions more than we can see only with the largest telescopes. He thought there must be some rules to explain why everything in the universe acts as it does. Finally, he believed he had some of the answers. And then people started asking him questions because he had answers for many things that scientists had been trying to figure out for many, many years.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The phrase **"would tap her pointer against the blackboard impatiently"** means ....

a) she was very happy
b) she was very angry
c) she was very ill
d) she was bored with teaching

2 When he was young, Albert Einstein ....

a) didn't care about learning
b) was very stupid
c) always made his teacher cry
d) was clever enough to think about everything

3 If Albert Einstein's teacher hadn't raised questions, ...

a) Albert would have asked her difficult questions
b) Albert would have left the class happily
c) Albert would have been angry
d) Albert wouldn't have answered them

4 The best title for the passage is "..................." .
a) Albert Einstein's stupidity
b) Albert Einstein and his teacher
c) Albert Einstein and his deep thinking
d) Albert Einstein's early childhood

5 Albert Einstein concluded that ....
a) there is something called the Earth
b) the Earth is oval
c) we live in a massive universe
d) asking questions is useful

6 Albert took time to answer questions at school because ....
a) he was busy
b) he was stupid
c) the questions were difficult
d) he thought a lot

7 Albert's teacher's face got red when he asked her because ....
a) she didn't know the answer
b) the questions were embarrassing
c) the questions were off point
d) he was making fun of her

8 People always asked Albert about a lot of things as ....
a) he claimed prophecy
b) he was a physician
c) he knew many things
d) he was a clever student

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Experts warn all people not to post a lot of personal information on Facebook and Twitter. This can be misused by criminals and enemies as well.

....

....

2. Most famous people have their own Facebook pages in which they post their news and pictures. These blogs are followed by millions of people around the world.

....

....

3. Corruption[1] and indiscipline[2] are the main factors that lead to the deterioration[3] of our economy. That's why the government is trying hard to fight them.

....

....

4. The Egyptian students need real chances to prove themselves as leaders and inventors; there is much evidence that they can do wonders[5].

....

....

5. Disputes[5] and wars in the whole world have resulted in many problems. One of them is the problem of refugees[6] which increases every day.

....

....

6. Cooperation and teamwork are two necessary qualities for the success and progress of any society. They must be taught at an early age.

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- يحذر الخبراء من اســتخدام الأطفال المفرط للإنترنت؛ لأن ذلك يؤدى إلى آثار سـيئة على صحتهم؛ لذا يجب تعليمهم ترشيد(٧) هذا الاستخدام.

....

....

٢- إن تطوير التعليم من أهم القضايا التى تهتم بها الحكومة، وهذا يساعد على خلق أجيالٍ قادرة على مواجهة التحديات(٨) المعاصرة وبناء مجتمع منتج يتسم بمهارات القرن الحادى والعشرين.

....

....

٣- للأصدقــاء تأثيــر كبير فى حياة المراهقين؛ لذلك يجب على الآباء تشــجيعهم على الصحبــة(٩) الجيدة، فالصديق الجيد يساعد الشخص على النجاح فى الحياة.

....

....

٤- تحاول الحكومة إيجاد حلول غير تقليدية لمشكلة الطاقة؛ لذلك تتوسع فى إنشاء محطات الطاقة الشمسية، وبدأت فى إنشاء محطة الضبعة للطاقة النووية(١٠).

....

....

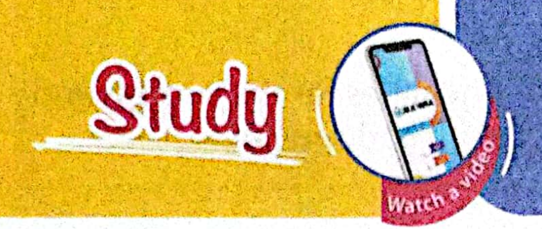
4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The reasons for happiness differ from person to person."

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. — I used the right structure. — I used a topic sentence. — I wrote the conclusion. — I used the right punctuation.

(1) الفساد (2) عدم الانضباط (3) تدهور (4) عجائب (5) نزاعات (6) لاجئين (7) rationalise (8) challenges (9) company (10) nuclear



King Lear
Act II, Scene i

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

arrest (v) (ed)	يقبض على	inherit (v) (ed)	يرث
back (n)	ظهر	injured (adj)	مصاب/ مجروح
beggar (n)	متسول/ شحاذ	persuade (v) (d)	يقنع
blood (n)	دم	plot (v) (ted)	يتآمر
call out (v) (ed)	يصرخ	port (n)	ميناء
disbelief (n)	جحود/عدم ثقة	pretend (v) (ed)	يتظاهر
duty (n)	واجب	profit (v) (ed)	يربح/يستفيد
faithful (adj)	مخلص	reward (v) (ed)	يكافئ
follow (v) (ed)	يتبع	stab (n)	طعنة
get (to) (v)	يصل	stocks (n)	عمود خشبى فى التعذيب
guard (n) (v) (ed)	حارس/يحرس	warn (v) (ed)	يحذر

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

a stab in the back	طعنة فى الخلف (الظهر)	change one's mind	يغير رأيه
(be) in a fight	يكون فى قتال	feel angry	يشعر بالغضب
faithful to	مخلص لـ	Pick up	يلتقط
go back	يرجع/ يعد	plot against	يتآمر ضد



King Lear Exercises

Act II, Scene i

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The young man has been .... on suspicion of using a stolen credit card.
a) arrested b) rewarded c) offered d) demanded

2 A .... is someone who is very poor and lives by asking people for money or food.
a) teller b) beggar c) blogger d) follower

3 The first reports about the plane crash were met with .... and people refused them.
a) rejoice b) belief c) disbelief d) cheer

4 My mother has always remained .... to the good values she learned as a child.
a) hateful b) lawful c) legal d) faithful

5 The stadium was protected by armed police .... during the match for security measures.
a) gangs b) enemies c) guards d) workers

6 My eldest son has .... his mother's patience.
a) merited b) inherited c) harmed d) tricked

7 Nobody could .... her to change her mind to leave the job.
a) persuade b) make c) defy d) deny

8 The spies were accused of.................... against the country.
a) potting b) putting c) plotting d) parting

9 The little girl closed her eyes and .... to be asleep.
a) prohibited b) inhibited c) attended d) pretended

10 There was a rise in the company's .... this year. They made good money.
a) profits b) losses c) publicities d) publishers

11 Parents often give their children .... for passing exams.
a) awards b) rewards c) punishments d) medals

12 The old man was killed with a .... to the heart by a fierce criminal.
a) pull b) stick c) slab d) stab

13 The ferry was about to leave the .... when the machine broke down.
a) platform b) port c) pavement d) road

14 If new employees are unable to carry out their ...., they may be fired.
a) meals b) rights c) duties d) offices

Unit 4

Advanced & Open

General Exercises

Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Building the New Capital in Egypt took a great .... of time and effort.
a) part b) quality c) section d) deal

2 Our team has won six basketball .... in the local championships.
a) titles b) names c) headings d) addresses

3 My wife wasn't well enough to .... visitors, so we cancelled the party.
a) receive b) deliver c) invite d) enlist

4 Opening remarks are important since they set the .... for the rest of the job.
a) music b) tone c) sign d) report

5 My cousin, Sameh has a/an .... for making friends easily.
a) comment b) present c) gift d) image

6 The story of the murder was important enough to make the ....
a) differences b) interests c) addresses d) headlines

7 The architect drew the new shopping centre in ....
a) section b) general c) progress d) record

8 The runner won a gold medal and broke the Olympic .... by 44 records.
a) prize b) headline c) record d) medal

9 He joined the Egyptian Cancer .... to be able to help other people.
a) Community b) Society c) District d) Area

10 The advertisements are intended to improve the company's ....
a) photo b) location c) site d) image

11 The narrow windows in the walls .... little light into the room.
a) expects b) regrets c) admit d) makes

12 Keeping the accounts is part and .... of my job.
a) whole b) parcel c) pixel d) lance

13 My application got lost in the ...., so I wasn't on the list of applicants.
a) post b) past c) drawer d) message

14 The news is shocking, but we may find out that the stories we've heard so far are just the .... of the iceberg.
a) top b) middle c) bottom d) tip

15 The lion, the tiger, and the cheetah are .... of the cat family.
a) ancestors b) organs c) members d) grandchildren

16 That was a question nobody .... answer.
a) could b) cannot c) can d) should

17 You .... the job. Why didn't you use a chance?
a) may take b) can take
c) had to take d) could have taken

18 It rained heavily every day during their holiday, so they .... have had a very nice time.
a) can't b) must c) should d) could

19 Two hundred years ago, not many people .... read or write.
a) couldn't b) could c) can't d) could have

20 She could have taken the underground to save time and money, but she ....
a) couldn't b) doesn't c) hasn't d) didn't

21 Nader .... have carried the desk by himself. Someone must have helped him.
a) shouldn't b) should c) could d) couldn't

22 Why did you tell your friends about the secret? You .... nothing about it.
a) should have said b) could have said
c) shouldn't have said d) couldn't say

23 My younger brother .... swim 4 years ago, but he .... swim very well now.
a) could/can b) can/could c) could/can't d) couldn't/can

24 In a hundred years' time, we .... out of water to drink.
a) must have run b) could have run
c) should have run d) may have run

25 This application .... last week.
a) should be sent b) must have sent
c) ought to have been sent d) should have sent

26 The flower is dead. Maybe I .... it more water.
a) might have given b) needed to give
c) should have given d) had to give

27 "You weren't supposed to do that." means: ....
a) You should do that, but you don't.
b) You should have done it, but you didn't.
c) You shouldn't have done it.
d) You shouldn't do that, but you do.

28 They should have shown me more consideration. I ought ....
a) been shown more consideration
b) be shown more consideration
c) to have been shown more consideration
d) to have shown more consideration

29 You should have your visa .... before it expires.
a) extended b) been extended c) be extended d) to be extended

30 Hilal suggested that he .... a party next week.
a) will have b) should have c) can have d) has



Al-Adwaa Test



Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 On giving a presentation or a speech, you should start by giving the .... facts or ideas.

a) unusual b) basic c) improper
d) main e) minor

2 In his report, the young inventor could .... many new ideas about the new approach to robotics.

a) introduce b) receive c) present
d) depict e) refuse

3 We didn't have the proper tools to do the job right. The synonyms of the adjective "proper" are ....

a) updated b) suitable c) fashionable
d) convenient e) helpless

4 As a linguistic innovator, Shakespeare could add many words and phrases .... the English language.

a) at b) for c) with
d) to e) into

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5 The movie has a comic .... throughout although it has some adventure scenes.

a) scenery b) sound c) voice b) tone

6 Children must be taught the .... rules of hygiene and sanitation at school.

a) fictional b) extra c) additional d) basic

7 The teacher .... angrily at the lazy student who said that he didn't bring his book to school.

a) smiled b) rewarded c) frowned d) introduced

8 Some new scientific theories take a very long time to .... in our real life.

a) apply b) reply c) imply b) intensify

9 As soon as I walked into the room, I .... gas.

a) could have smelt
b) must have smelt
c) can't have smelt
d) could smell

10 Many people are demanding that something .... about the problem.

a) should have done
b) should do
c) should be done
d) shouldn't be done

11 Reham .... have got my message. Otherwise, she would have replied.

a) mustn't
b) couldn't
c) shouldn't
d) could

12 I have an idea: we .... all go in one car. That would save us money.

a) could
b) need
c) would
d) have to

13 We went the wrong way and got lost. We .... have turned right, not left.

a) shouldn't
b) couldn't
c) should
d) can't

14 Why did you stay at a hotel when you were in Paris? You .... have stayed with Tamer.

a) shouldn't
b) might
c) must
d) could

15 We didn't know where Mohamed was, but we .... find him in the end.

a) can
b) were able to
c) should
d) might

16 You could have left your phone at work. This means ....

a) it's impossible that you left it there
b) it's necessary that you left it there
c) it's advisable that you left it there
d) it's possible that you left it there

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Glass is a pure compound of sand melted at a very high temperature with the help of catalysts. Silicate, the main component of sand, is heated till it is red-hot. When it has been sufficiently heated, it is wound around a blowing pipe. Specially trained men, who have learnt to control their intake and output of air, will then blow cups, bowls, vases, and bottles from the heated silicate. These men never make a mistake while blowing glass, for any deviation from their methods could burst their lungs or seriously harm their internal organs. Glass makers work for years before achieving the status of master craftsmen. They join the glass works from a young age, working for minimal pay as apprentices.

They soon learn the trade and become ordinary craftsmen. With the benefit of practice and experience, they will one day become master craftsmen. If a particular cup or vase requires a special rim or design, the master craftsman will handle it himself. Otherwise, mass-produced glasses may be moulded in die casts.

Great patience is needed to make a glass, for after it is shaped and left aside to cool, it has to be given along interval to 'contract'. If it is not 'aged' sufficiently, it will crack and disjoint.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The main component of sand is ....

a) glass
b) bottles
c) silicate
d) cups

18 Glass makers become craftsmen ....

a) at a very early age
b) after three-year experience
c) when they join glass works
d) after a lot of practice and experience

19 Someone who works for an employer for a fixed period of time in order to learn a particular skill or job is called a/an ....

a) apprentice
b) craftsman
c) patient
d) professional

20 One of the following isn't mentioned in the passage ....

a) making glass needs a lot of patience
b) making glass needs a lot of money
c) making glass needs a lot of experience
d) making glass needs a lot of heat

21 The silicate is heated to produce ....

a) sand
b) glass
c) moulds
d) apprentices

22 Mistakes in this industry is unacceptable as craftsmen may ....

a) lose money
b) harm their lungs
c) lose their voice
d) be disabled

23 The master craftsman are asked to ....

a) handle special rim
b) take courses
c) sell their products
d) teach older craftsmen

24 The best title for the passage is "........................".

a) The History of Glass
b) The importance of Sand
c) Glass Industry
d) Trade

25 Translate into English:

- أن تكون غير أنانى ومتواضعا وذكيا وصبورًا فى ساعة المعاناة وقويا فى وقت المشاكل وشخصا مخلصا ومحبًا، فأنت إذًا إنسان ناجح حقًا، وتتحلى بكثير من الصفات الحميدة.

....

....

26 Translate into Arabic:

It is really hard to understand why some people enjoy dangerous hobbies such as mountaineering and motor racing. They can lose their lives in them.

....

....

27 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Having free time is something you should value and spend in useful things."

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Unit 5



Being smart online

Objectives

- **Reading** : An article about an online video channel; An Article about how to use the internet for research
- **Writing** : An email and an essay on how to use social media sensibly
- **Listening** : Two boys discussing how to use social media; Five teenagers talking about the effects of the internet on young people
- **Speaking** : A presentation
- **Language** : Seems to, (be) meant to, (be) supposed to
- **Life skills** : Critical Thinking; Resilience





Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

banner adverts (n)	إعلانات البانر (اللافتة)	subscribe (v) (d)	يشترك فى موقع
consult (v) (ed)	يستشير	take down (v)	يزيل ملفات سبق رفعها للإنترنت
cookies (n)	ملفات تعريف الارتباط	targeted advertising (n)	الدعاية الموجهة
download (v) (ed)	يقوم بتنزيل ملفات	update (v) (d)	يحدث
follower (n)	متابع	upgrade (v) (d) (n)	يرقى/ترقية
reliable (adj)*	موثوق فيه	upload (v) (ed)	يحمل ملفات إلى الإنترنت
search result (n)	نتيجة البحث	up-to-date (adj)	حديث
sponsored adverts (n)	الإعلانات الممولة	views (n)	مشاهدات

* I always get my information from reliable sources.

Vocabulary on Reading

advertiser (n)	معلن	junk food (n)	الطعام السريع
avoid (v) (ed)	يتجنب	keywords (n)	كلمات رئيسية
confused (adj)	مرتبك	knowledge (n)	معرفة
effectively (adv)	بفاعلية	mega meal (n)	وجبة كبيرة (بمطعم)
experience (n)	خبرة/تجربة	research (n)	بحث
extra (adj)	إضافى	resource (n)	منبع/مورد
honest (adj)	مخلص/أمين	save (v) (d)	يحفظ
information (n)	معلومات	scan (v) (ned)	يتصفح (يقرأ) للبحث عن شىء محدد

skim (v) (med)	يتصفح (يقرأ) بسرعة
smartphone (n)	هاتف ذكى
source (n)	مصدر
task (n)	مهمة
URL (uniform resource locator)	عنوان URL (على الإنترنت)

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

access (n)	مدخل/إمكانية الوصول
adapt (v) (ed)	يتأقلم
app (n)	تطبيق
browser (n)	متصفح
button (n)	زر
character (n)	شخصية/حرف أو رمز بالكمبيوتر
collect (v) (ed)	يجمع
common (adj)	شائع
excuse (n)	عذر
fake (adj)	مزيف
identity (n)	شخصية/هوية
influence (n) (v) (d)	تأثير/يؤثر على
install (v) (ed)	يركب جهازًا/يثبت برنامجًا
instant (adj)	فورى/عاجل
Irish (adj)	إيرلندى
journalist (n)	صحفى
moral (n) (adj)	مغزى/أخلاقى/درس أخلاقى
musician (n)	موسيقار
obvious (adj)	واضح
perfect (adj)	كامل/تام
print (v) (ed)	يطبع
professional (n) (adj)	محترف/احترافى
provide (v) (d)	يوفر/يزود
publish (v) (ed)	ينشر (كتبًا/مجلات)
series (n)	سلسلة
sociology (n)	علم الاجتماع
software (n)	برامج الكمبيوتر
spread (v)	ينشر
stamp (n) (v) (ed)	وسم/يوسم/يختم
steal (v)	يسرق
suppose (v) (d)	يفترض/يظن
trust (n) (v) (ed)	ثقة/يثق فى
version (n)	إصدار/نسخة (من برنامج)

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at the same time	في نفس الوقت	go online	يستخدم الإنترنت
at the touch of a button	بلمسة زر	have access to	يمتلك (يحصل على) وسيلة للوصول إلى
do research	يقوم ببحث علمي	have experience in	لديه خبرة بـ
do things	يقوم بأشياء	keep ... safe	يحافظ على ... آمنًا
adapt to	يتأقلم مع	knowledge of	معرفة بـ
careful about	حريص بشأن	information about	معلومات عن
find out	يكتشف	read on	يستمر بالقراءة
full of	ممتلىء بـ	worry about	يقلق بشأن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
adapt	يتأقلم	adaptation	تأقلم	adaptable	متأقلم
advertise	يعلن عن	advertiser advertisement	معلن إعلان	----------------	
apply	يطبق/يتقدم لوظيفة	application (app) applicant	تطبيق/طلب وظيفة متقدم لوظيفة	applicable	يمكن تطبيقه
collect	يجمع	collection	مجموعة	collective	جماعي
consult *	يستشير	consultation	استشارة	consultative	استشاري
influence	يؤثر	influence influencer	تأثير شخص مؤثر في تفكير الآخرين	influential	مؤثر/ذو نفوذ
rely	يعتمد	reliance	اعتماد	reliable	موثوق فيه
suppose	يفترض/يظن	supposition	افتراض	supposed	من المفترض

* - I prefer to consult old people to young people.
- Farmers always hold consultations about the agricultural techniques.
- There is a consultative group to ask about your inquiries.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
adapt	يتأقلم	adjust/modify	reject/abandon يرفض/ينبذ/يهجر
fake	مزيف	forged/false	genuine/real/original أصلى/حقيقى
honest	مخلص/أمين	sincere/truthful	deceitful/dishonest مخادع/غير حقيقى
instant	فورى/عاجل	immediate/urgent	delayed/slow مؤجل/بطىء
obvious	واضح	apparent/evident	ambiguous غامض/مشكوك فيه
professional	محترف	expert/experienced	amateur/incompetent هاوٍ/غير كفء
reliable	موثوق فيه	trustworthy/respectable	dishonest/unreliable غير أمين/غير موثوق
speed	سرعة	quickness/acceleration	slowness/delay بطء/تأخير
task	مهمة	duty	irresponsibility اللامسئولية
upgrade	يرقى	promote/improve	reduce/decrease يقلل/يخفض

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You can .... a copy of some programmes from many websites for free.
   a) collect b) detach c) duplicate d) download
2. My parents always advise me to buy food from a .... shop or market.
   a) doubtful b) distant c) reliable d) disorganised
3. My elder brother always .... my father about his important decisions.
   a) consults b) supports c) encourages d) checks
4. Most famous actors use social media such as Facebook to attract more ....
   a) beginners b) followers c) bullies d) enemies
5. Advertising experts depend on .... to target their customers' needs.
   a) viruses b) hackers c) cookies d) shares

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text (1)

How do you decide which website to choose when doing research?

Doing research online

Your teacher has given you a homework task[1]. Where do you start your research? The internet is very useful with lots of information, but how do you avoid spending hours reading unhelpful websites? Read on to find out how to use the internet effectively.

1 Look for websites by people, companies or universities, who have experience[2] in or knowledge of the topic you are researching. If you know who wrote the website, try to find out more about their experience.

2 Think about who has written the website. Is it a company who may be trying to sell you something?

3 Check if the website is up-to-date[3]. Is the information still reliable[4] and useful? When was it updated[5]?

4 Always consult[6] more than one website. The advantage of looking at few different sites is that you can check the information and you may find extra facts.

5 What does the website look like? If it is badly designed and is full of grammar and spelling mistakes, then it is probably not very reliable.

6 Websites that have named their sources[7] are usually more reliable and useful than sites that do not name their sources.

7 Save the URL (uniform resource locator)[8] of any useful pages or images so you can find them easily.

(1) مهمة
(2) خبرة/تجربة
(3) حديث
(4) موثوق فيه
(5) محدث
(6) يستشير
(7) مصادر
(8) عنوان الموقع (على الإنترنت)

How do you make sure the information you get from websites is reliable?

Reading Text (2)

Do you think advertising products is important? Why?

Targeted advertising

Our computers and smartphones keep small pieces of information called cookies[1], which tell websites where we've been online and what we were looking at. Cookies are meant to make it easier for us to find things that interest us, but they also help advertisers[2] to sell things to us. So, when we see an advert for something that seems to be exactly what we want, it is because advertisers know what we like. This kind of advertising is called targeted advertising[3].

(1) ملفات تعريف الارتباط

(2) معلنون

(3) الإعلانات المستهدفة

(4) إعلانات البانر (اللافتة)

(5) الإعلانات الممولة

(6) نتائج البحث

Sometimes advertisers know where you like to go and when you like to do things, so they can advertise to you when you are most interested. For example, they advertise places to eat when you're hungry. They can also send adverts to your friends at the same time if they think you'll go together.

Sometimes it's easy to see that something is an advert, like those large banner adverts[4] that always seem to appear on websites when you're trying to read. And there are adverts that seem to appear in the strangest places, like the small sponsored adverts[5] that you find in search results[6].

Adverts are supposed to be honest, but we must be careful. When you see an advert online, think about why you might be seeing it and whether you can believe what it says.

How do advertisers know what we need?

Have you forgotten your password before?

Reading Text (3) (Workbook)

Are you internet smart?

Do you really know how to protect yourself online? There are several things you can do to stay safe.

- Choose a strong password. Did you know the most common password in the world is '123456'? The best passwords should have numbers, letters and even a special character e.g. TI342mS!* It will be easier to remember if you make it personal in some way.
- When you go online, make sure you have upgraded your browser[1] with the latest software update before you open a webpage.
- Be careful what you upload. Check what others can learn about you from what they can see behind you, and take down any photos you do not want others to download.

All of these tips[2] seem obvious[3], but you'll be surprised how many people are careless online. Stealing[4] someone's identity[5] is more common than you think. Do not make the mistake of thinking that it can't happen to you.

(1) متصفح

(2) نصائح

(3) واضح

(4) سرقة

(5) هوية

How will you choose your password now?

What is the first fake news you've ever heard?

Reading Text (4) (Workbook)

Don't believe everything you read!

The title of this article is a piece of advice which we may have heard from our parents or grandparents. Although it was true in the past, the speed[1] at which we have access[2] to new information means that this warning is even more important now.

In the past, professional[3] journalists[4] always checked the facts that they wanted to publish against at least two reliable sources to make sure the story was correct. Checking sources, and the time needed to print[5] something in a newspaper, meant that the news, which was meant to be new, was actually a day or two old.

Today the internet provides[6] instant[7] news and is a place where anyone can share information with the rest of the world at the touch of a button[8]. This means that journalists often need to publish their stories quickly, so fact-checking isn't as good as it is meant to be. This is why not everything you read is what it seems to be.

Even serious newspapers, which are supposed[9] to be reliable, can make mistakes. Shane Fitzgerald, an Irish sociology[10] student, wanted to test the influence of the internet. He posted a fake[11] phrase online. It was supposed to be something that a French musician who had recently died had said. Almost immediately several newspapers published the phrase and it was read all over the world.

The moral[12] of the story is to listen to those with more life experience than you and remember not to trust everything you read online without checking it first.

(1) سرعة
(2) مدخل/سبيل
(3) محترف
(4) صحفي
(5) يطبع
(6) يوفر
(7) فوري/عاجل
(8) زر
(9) من المفترض
(10) علم الاجتماع
(11) مزيف
(12) مغزى

What are the reasons behind fake news on the internet?

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

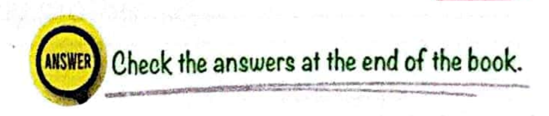
1. Being successful is not an easy .... You should work hard.
   a) right
   b) play
   c) section
   d) task

2. The young player couldn't .... to living in another country.
   a) adapt
   b) adopt
   c) exchange
   d) update

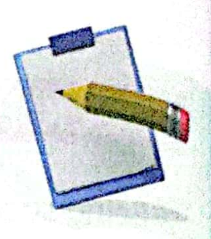
3. An electrician is coming tomorrow to .... the new washing machine.
   a) break
   b) smash
   c) attach
   d) install

4. The main .... of the story is a rich man of about fifty years old.
   a) role
   b) character
   c) part
   d) servant

5. It is believed that yoga can help relieve stress ....
   a) affectingly
   b) effectively
   c) impressively
   d) excitedly



Vocabulary in Use



FOCUS on Vocabulary

consult — يستشير
- to ask for information or advice from someone

download — يحمل ملفات من الإنترنت
- to move files from the internet to a phone, tablet or computer

reliable — موثوق فيه
- someone or something that is reliable can be trusted or depended on

take down — يزيل ملفات سبق رفعها للإنترنت
- to take something that you have posted online off the internet

update — يحدث
- to make something more modern and relevant by adding new information

upgrade — يرقى/ترقية
- to improve or make more efficient

upload — يحمل ملفات إلى الإنترنت
- to move files from a computer, phone or camera to the internet

up-to-date — حديث
- including all the latest information

Notes on Vocabulary

Word	Example
load يحمل (بضائع/برامج)/حمولة/عبئًا	The farmers were loading some vegetables into the cars. Newcomers couldn't afford the load of the work.
unload يفرغ حمولة	The driver unloaded some boxes from the back of the truck.
overload يفرط في التحميل (الاستخدام)	Be careful not to overload the washing machine.
download يحمل ملفات من الإنترنت	There are some games that can be downloaded free from the internet.
upload يرفع إلى الإنترنت	It might take 10 minutes to upload this video to the website.

Word	Example
effective مؤثر/فعّال (له تأثير)	The new vaccine is highly effective against the disease.
impressive مؤثر (يترك/ترك انطباعًا جيدًا)/رائع	Mohammad Salah has an impressive career which makes him a legend.
affecting مؤثر (يوحي بالشجن)	The film about the poor girl was so affecting that it made my mother cry.

Word	Example
experience ١- خبرة (اسم غير معدود) ٢- تجربة حياة (اسم معدود)	He had no previous experience for the job he applied for. The two children in this story have suffered a lot from difficult experiences in their life.
experiment تجربة (علمية/معملية)	Scientists usually do experiments on animals for new medicines.

Word	Example
publish ينشر (عملًا فنيًا/جريدة/تقريرًا)	The novel was published last year.
spread ١- ينتشر/يمتد/يفرد ٢- ينشر (خبرًا/إشاعة/مرضًا)	Fire quickly spread through the building. The disease spread rapidly amongst the village. Mum spreads sandwiches with cheese like a chef. How dare you spread such evil lies!

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- If you know who wrote the website, **try** to find out more about their experience.

لاحظ استخدام صيغة الأمر فى جواب الشرط للحالة الأولى لـ (if).

- **Is** the **information** still reliable and useful?

تعامل (information) معاملة المفرد باستخدام الفعل (Is) لأنها اسم غير معدود.

- Check **what others can learn** about you.

لاحظ استخدام صيغة الجملة (فاعل+ فعل) بعد (what) لأن الجملة فى الصيغة الخبرية.

- **Stealing** someone's identity **is** more common than you think.

لاحظ استخدام صيغة (verb+ing) كفاعل للجملة بمعنى (سرقة) ولاحظ استخدام الفعل فى صيغة المفرد (is).

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The young woman was not accepted for the job because she lacks ....
   a) condition b) experiment c) experience d) licence
2. Some diseases can .... by different insects such as flies and mosquitoes.
   a) spread b) publish c) extract d) spray
3. Software updates can be .... from the company's website.
   a) loaded b) overloaded c) uploaded d) downloaded
4. The poet's first book of poems for children was .... last year.
   a) spread b) published c) sprayed d) defined
5. The most .... solution to traffic jam is to build more roads.
   a) effective b) impressive c) affecting d) pleasant



Check the answers at the end of the book.



Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 Nahdet Misr is a famous organisation which .... different kinds of books.
a) spreads b) hides c) publishes d) believes

2 Many YouTubers resort to legal and illegal ways to make people .... to their channels.
a) subscribe b) adopt c) activate d) take part

3 The company's name is .... across the top of the letters they send.
a) carved b) published c) printed d) spread

4 All animals have their own ways to .... to their environments , whether cold or hot.
a) adapt b) adopt c) exchange d) update

5 It might take some minutes to .... these high definition photos to the website.
a) load b) download c) upload d) overload

6 Most websites use .... that enable them to show adverts which makes them a lot of money.
a) comments b) posts c) cookies d) shares

7 The website doesn't seem to be ....; there are lots of grammar mistakes.
a) available b) expectable c) avoidable d) reliable

8 .... advertising is those advertisements which appear to people out of their interest and activity on the internet.
a) Banner b) Commercial c) Amateur d) Targeted

9 Users have to pay to be able to .... the trial antivirus to the full version.
a) diffuse b) upload c) upgrade d) secure

10 Celebrities' posts on Twitter usually receive millions of .... of their fans.
a) sights b) views c) refuses d) excuses

11 .... will pay higher rates to be able to use the prime-time entertainment shows عروض الترفيه الاعلى مشاهدة.
a) Customers b) Consumers c) Advertisers d) Rivals

12 You can find the site by typing the .... "forest bird" on the search page.
a) keys b) keywords c) images d) results

13 Unfortunately, most young people get all their .... about politics only from social media.
a) fancy b) concept c) election d) knowledge

14 China is a country which has few energy .... such as oil of its own.
a) stations b) reactors c) resources d) wells

15 I .... the waiting list quickly for my name.
a) scanned b) researched c) applied d) replied

16 Email password should be at least 8 .... long and not more than 15 ones.
a) personalities b) characters c) personnel d) photos

17 The actor was wearing .... moustache and beard for the role of an old warrior.
a) fake b) figured c) updated d) covered

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

18 The text message was ambiguous as it was written in a secret code. The adjective "ambiguous" can be the opposite of the adjective ".................".
a) smart b) updated c) vague d) obvious

19 We must watch for our children who .... online a lot so as to be careful that they aren't misled.
a) come b) go c) travel d) view

20 My young brother can play video games and talk on the phone .... the same time.
a) at b) in c) for d) by

21 As a young actor, you have to be careful .... the roles you accept.
a) at b) on c) in d) about

22 You can run this .... on a computer and a mobile phone if you like.
a) apply b) application c) applied d) applicable

23 Nowadays, almost every young man or woman .... access to the internet through their mobiles phones.
a) do b) make c) have d) win

24 This essay can be considered a .... document for everyone who uses the social media.
a) consult b) consultation c) consultative d) consultant

25 Please, accept our sincere thanks. The adjective "sincere" is a synonym of the adjective ....
a) obvious b) fake c) honest d) clear

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 We should find instant solutions to water pollution. The synonyms of the word instant are ....
a) urgent b) slow c) easy d) immediate e) original

27 As part of their test, a student must .... a 180-word essay before Friday.
a) design b) do c) make d) write e) research

28 Sami .... through the television programmes in the local newspaper.
a) rejected b) skimmed c) tested d) leave e) scanned

29 We removed the bath and .... a shower instead to make space.
a) expected b) perplexed c) put on d) installed e) fixed

30 The secretary has the .... of preparing the agenda for the manager's meetings.
a) task b) passion c) profession d) job e) mission





Lessons 1 & 2

B Language

be meant to + inf.

be meant to + inf.

- to talk about what the purpose or truth of something should be. للحديث عن الغرض أو الحقيقة من شيء ما.
  - The finished project is meant to be more than just a power station.
  - This building was meant to be a huge museum.
- to talk about something that is expected. للحديث عن شيء متوقع.
  - They were meant to arrive by now.
  - He was meant to get home now.
- to talk about something that is intended. للحديث عن شيء مقصود.
  - It was meant to be a chocolate cake, but I dropped it.
  - Her child's present was meant to please her, but she was sad.

be supposed to + inf.

be supposed to + inf.

- to talk about obligation. للحديث عن الالتزام والاضطرارية.
  - I'm supposed to get up early tomorrow to catch the train.
- to talk about what something or someone is likely or expected to do or be. للحديث عن شيء ما أو شخص ما يحتمل أو يتوقع أن يفعل أو يكون.
  - It is supposed to rain this afternoon.
- to talk about arrangements. للحديث عن الترتيبات.
  - I'm supposed to meet my colleagues on Monday evening.
- to talk about our beliefs about something. للحديث عن معتقداتنا عن شيء ما.
  - Samsung is supposed to be the best phone that you can buy.

Seem/seem to/seem that

To talk about how something or someone appears to be when we cannot be completely sure.

للحديث عن كيف يبدو شيء ما أو شخص ما وخاصة عندما لا نكون متأكدين تماما

- He seems to be keen on football.
- Ali seems to enjoy his new game.
- She hasn't said anything, but she seems to be having fun.

Seem+ adj./Seem to + inf.

- Mona seems happy (to be happy) today. ✓
- He seemed angry (to be angry) at the party. ✓

لاحظ ان الفعل seem لا يستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة ولا يبنى للمجهول

- Mona is seeming happy today. ✗
- He was seemed to be angry at the party. ✗

Seem to + inf. = it seems that + subj. + verb

- He seems to know a lot about politics = It seems that he knows a lot about politics.

Seem/seems to be + v.ing

إذا كان لديك شك أن حدثًا ما مستمر

- He seems to be coming towards us. = It seems to be raining.

seem/seems to have + P.P. معلوم

seem/seems to have been+ P.P. مجهول

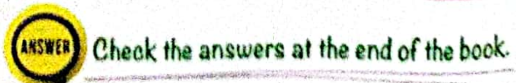
عند الحديث عن الماضي

- He seems to have visited many countries.
- It seems to have rained a lot.
- The tree seems to have been cut with a sharp saw.
- The car seems to have been repaired by a clever mechanic.

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What are you doing here? You .... be inside the classroom.
   a) are supposing to b) seem to c) mean to d) are supposed to
2. He .... to have been studying for the test all night.
   a) is supposing b) supposed c) seems d) meant
3. The hospital .... to help the local people, but everyone came to it.
   a) supposed b) was meant c) is seemed d) was meaning
4. The flight was .... at 8 a.m. Why was it late?
   a) supposed to arrive b) suppose to arrive
   c) supposing to arrive d) suppose to arrived
5. I am supposed .... for the job advertised in the local newspaper before next week.
   a) applying b) will apply c) apply d) to apply





Language Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The Eiffel Tower .... to attract people to one of the exhibitions, but it has become one of the monuments.
a) was meaning b) seems c) was meant d) is supposed

2 There were some problems at first, but they .... to have been solved.
a) meant b) seem
c) supposed d) will be supposed

3 I shouldn't eat too much. I .... to be on a diet.
a) 'm supposed b) 'm not supposed c) seem d) was meant

4 It .... to be an apology, but it only made her angry.
a) is seemed b) is meant c) supposed d) was meant

5 The wedding .... to be a secret, so how did you find out about it? Did Leila tell you?
a) meant b) is seemed c) was supposed d) was supposing

6 Ali always reaches his office before the appointed time. He .... to be enjoying his job.
a) is meant b) seems c) supposed d) is seemed

7 The food .... to feed the poor, but everyone had a share of it.
a) was meant b) was seemed c) was supposing d) is supposed

8 Collecting money .... to make us happy, but to some people it has become an aim.
a) means b) is meant c) is seeming d) supposed

9 Yasser's phone never stops ringing. He .... to know a lot of people.
a) seems b) was meant c) was supposed d) is seeming

10 The garbage .... today. Please take it out.
a) didn't suppose to collect b) is supposed to collect
c) is supposed to be collected d) was meant to collect

11 What are you doing at work? You .... to be on holiday.
a) seem b) mean c) are meaning d) 're supposed

12 They stay at home all the time. They never .... to go anywhere.
a) supposed b) seem c) are supposed d) are meant

13 The boss is asking for a technician. The photocopier doesn't .... to be working.

a) mean b) suppose c) seem d) need

14 That piece of cloth .... to be a shirt, but the tailor made it a pair of trousers.

a) seemed b) was meant c) supposed d) was supposing

15 My teacher is pleased with me nowadays. My English .... to be getting better.

a) was supposed b) is seemed c) seems d) means

16 The open space .... to be a playground for youth, but it has turned into a market.

a) seems b) meant c) supposed d) was meant

17 I'd better hurry. I .... to be meeting Ahmed in ten minutes.

a) seem b) 'm supposed c) was meant d) was supposed

18 The burglars must have come in through the window as the lock .... to be forced.

a) seems b) is meant c) is supposed d) needs

19 Mohamed is much better after his illness, but he's still .... to do any heavy work.

a) meant b) not supposed to c) seemed d) supposed

20 All my friends .... to congratulate me when I got married, but only a few of them phoned me.

a) were supposed b) seemed c) meant d) are supposed

21 The match .... to start at 8.30, but it was cancelled. إدارة شرق الزقازيق ٢٠٢٢

a) seemed b) is meant c) was supposed d) wanted

22 Schools .... to follow rules of safety. إدارة القناطر التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) supposed b) are meant c) are seemed d) must

23 The car engine is meant .... إدارة شرق المحلة الكبرى التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) to check b) to be checked
c) be checking d) to have checked

24 Cookies are .... to make it easier for us to use the internet. إدارة المنيا ٢٠٢٢

a) seems b) meant c) suppose d) meaning

25 Students .... to do their best to succeed. إدارة نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٢

a) suppose b) are supposed c) supposed d) are supposing

26 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct.

a) Our guests were supposing to come at 7:30, but they were late.
b) Our guests were seemed to come at 7:30, but they were late.
c) Our guests were supposed to come at 7:30, but they were late.
d) Our guests were seeming to come at 7:30, but they were late.

27 One of the following answers gives the same meaning to this sentence:
"We are supposed to wear a uniform at work." This means ....
a) it's necessary to do so
b) we aren't allowed to do so
c) it's impossible to do so
d) it's kind of us to do so

28 One answer to the following sentence is grammatically incorrect:
"You are supposed to obey your parents." This means that ....
a) it's necessary to do so
b) it's your duty to do so
c) it's forbidden to do so
d) it's advisable to do so

29 Choose one correct answer to the following sentence:
"My friends .... to wait for 2 hours, but they left after an hour."
a) were supposed
b) were meaning
c) seem
d) mean

30 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct.
a) He was meant to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.
b) He was meaning to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.
c) He seemed to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.
d) He was supposing to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

31 Let's go to the party. It .... interesting.
a) is meant
b) is supposed to be
c) supposes
d) means
e) seems to be

32 You .... problems with your washing machine.
a) seem to have
b) are supposed to have
c) are seemed to have
d) seem to be having
e) are meant to have

33 The new method .... improve agriculture , but it was incorrectly used.
a) was supposed to
b) seems to
c) was meant to
d) seemed
e) is supposing

34 Maher .... to be good at interpreting, ... he?
a) didn't seem/doesn't
b) seemed/did
c) doesn't seem/does
d) seems/does
e) seems/doesn't

35 My little brother .... English fast.
a) seems to learn
b) seems to have learnt
c) seems learning
d) is meaning to learn
e) seems learn

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Animals that sleep during the day and come out at night are called nocturnal. For desert-dwelling animals, being active at night allows them to escape the heat of the day and conserve[1] water. Many snakes and rodents are examples of desert animals that prefer the night.

The darkness of night makes it easier for some animals to escape predators[2], especially if the animal is dark enough to blend into its surroundings. Then there's the hedgehog, a small nocturnal mammal[3] that rolls up into a ball of spiny hairs when danger comes near. Because it is active only at night, it can usually wander around unseen. The skunk, another nocturnal animal, has the most smelly way to defend itself. Its fur is mostly black, which blends in with the darkness.

Of course, there are predators that are especially adapted for night hunting, so no prey animal is safe simply because it's nocturnal. Owls and certain species of cats are very effective nocturnal hunters because they have great night vision and excellent hearing. Another predator that's well-known for its nocturnal behaviour is the insect-eating bat. Instead of using their eyes to hunt for an insect dinner they use echolocation. What is echolocation? It works like this: The bat emits a very high-pitched sound. The sound is so high that people can't even hear it. When the sound hits an object it bounces, or echoes, back. From the sound of the echo the bat immediately knows the object's size and location. Its echolocation can also determine if an object is a yummy insect or something that can't be eaten like a plant or a tree.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 What is echolocation?

a) A way of making high-pitched sounds that bats use to communicate.
b) A method of making high-pitched sounds that bats use to avoid being eaten.
c) A high-pitched sound that helps bats fly after dark.
d) The ability to make a high-pitched sound that bats use to locate things in the dark.

2 Which is the best definition for the following?

For desert dwelling animals, being active at night allows them to escape the heat of day and to conserve water.

a) living or residing **b)** nighttime hunter
c) heat-loving **d)** healthy



(1) تحتفظ/تحفظ (2) حيوانات مفترسة (3) حيوان ثديي ليلي

3 Owls and certain species of cats can catch the prey easily because ....

a) they can fly easily at night
b) they both have feathers to leap silently down upon prey
c) they have great night vision and excellent hearing
d) they use echolocation

4 The synonym of the word "vision" is ....

a) the ability to hear
b) the ability to see
c) the ability to catch
d) the ability to think

5 Desert snakes and rodents are nocturnal animals as they ....

a) sleep at night
b) are active at night
c) eat and drink at night
d) like heat and sunny weather

6 The skunk can survive and keep its enemy away by ....

a) running fast
b) hiding in holes
c) releasing bad odour
d) humping on trees

7 What are the things that the bat doesn't eat?

a) Plants.
b) Insects.
c) Yummy prey.
d) Far prey.

8 The main idea of the passage is ....

a) how animals communicate
b) how bats fly
c) the desert snakes' life
d) animals life at night

A) Translate into Arabic:

1. We should all be careful when we use the internet. Criminals hack people's personal information to use it in their crimes, especially about credit cards.

....

....

2. Due to technology, advertising has become a real 'science'. Some colleges have already created new departments which are specialised in this science.

....

....

3. Mohamed Salah's great achievements encourage young people to work harder to reach their most difficult dreams. He also gives them hope for a better future.

....

....

4. Egyptian history is full of great women who were ready to sacrifice[1] their lives so that Egypt could get a better future. So, we should all remember them.

....

....

5. Studying the lives of great scientists and writers shows that we all should exert[2] great efforts to succeed in life. It is said that "No gain without pain".

....

....

6. Cairo Book Fair is one of the most important cultural events in the Arab World. It has many cultural activities such as conferences and seminars[3].

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- يجب ألا يصدق الناس أو يشاركوا كل ما يقرءون على صفحات وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى؛ فهى مليئة بالشائعات[٤] التى قد تدمر سمعة[٥] الناس واقتصاد البلاد.

....

....

٢- تحلم جميع شعوب العالم بالسلام؛ لذا يجب أن نعمل جميعًا على إنهاء الحروب التى تنتشر فى أجزاء كبيرة من العالم وخاصة عالمنا العربى.

....

....

٣- للتليفزيون ووسائل الإعلام الأخرى أثر كبير فى تشكيل اتجاهات الأجيال[٦] الجديدة؛ لذا يجب حسن استغلالها لتوجيههم نحو التوجهات التى تفيدهم وتفيد بلدهم.

....

....

٤- غيرت وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى، وخاصة موقع فيسبوك، أسلوب تواصل الناس وخاصة الشباب؛ لذلك أصبحت جزءًا هامًا من الحياة الحديثة ولا يمكن للشباب الاستغناء عنها.

....

....

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Many people should be appreciated due to their efforts towards us."

....

....

....

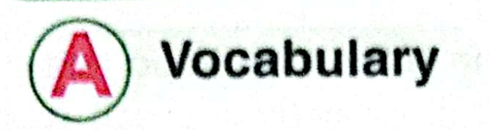
....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. | I used the right structure. | I used a topic sentence. | I wrote the conclusion. | I used the right punctuation.

(1) يضحي
(2) يبذل
(3) ندوات
(4) rumours
(5) reputation
(6) generations



Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Listening

addicted (adj)	مدمن
anyway (adv)	على كل حال
behaviour (n)	سلوك
birth (n)	ميلاد
brainstorm (n)	عصف ذهنى
connect (v) (ed)	يتصل/يوصل/يربط
criticise (v) (d)	ينتقد
cute (adj)	لطيف
develop (v) (ed)	يطور
entertain (v) (ed)	يسلى/يستضيف
exciting (adj)	مثير/رائع
fire (v) (d)	يفصل من العمل
forever (adv)	للأبد
forum (n)	منتدى
game (v) (d)	يمارس ألعاب الفيديو
imagine (v) (d)	يتخيل
join (v) (ed)	يلتحق بـ
platform (n)	منصة
pleased (adj)	مسرور
privacy (n)	خصوصية
profile (n)	الملف الشخصى/التعريفى
programmer (n)	مبرمج
programming (n)	برمجة
safely (adv)	بأمان
sensible (adj)	عاقل
similar (adj)	مشابه
solve (v) (d)	يحل
support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم/مساندة/يدعم
symbol (n)	رمز
take care (v)	يهتم
teen (n)	مراهق
victim (n)	ضحية

Vocabulary on Speaking

cons (n)	عيوب	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمى
each (pron)	كل	pros (n)	مميزات
employee (n)	موظف	rank (n) (v) (ed)	رتبة/يضع فى رتبة (ترتيب)
guide (n) (v) (d)	مرشد (كتاب إرشادى)/يرشد	unsuitable (adj)	غير مناسب
mention (v) (ed)	يذكر	useful (adj)	مفيد/نافع
order (n)	ترتيب		

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

represent (v) (ed)	يمثل/ينوب عن	explain (v) (ed)	يفسر
feelings (n)	مشاعر	highlight (v) (ed)	يسلط الضوء/عمل بارز
register (v) (ed)	يسجل	example (n)	مثال
purpose (n)	غرض	linking word (n)	أداة ربط
viewpoint (n)	وجهة نظر		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

after all	على أية حال	in person	شخصيًا
as a result of	كنتيجة لـ	in short	باختصار
do a blog post	يعد لمنشور على مدونة	keep in contact with	يبقى على اتصال مع
for ages	لعصور (لفترة طويلة)	keep ... entertained	يسلى/يجعلهم مسرورين
have a problem	لديه مشكلة	make rules	يعد القواعد
have an effect on	له تأثير على	on your own	بمفردك
in a few years' time	فى خلال سنوات قليلة	pay attention to	يهتم بـ
divided into	مقسم إلى	set of	مجموعة من
loads of	كثير من	share with	يشارك مع

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
addict	يدمن	addiction	إدمان	addictive addicted	مسبب للإدمان مدمن
connect	يتصل	connection	اتصال	connected	متصل
criticise	ينتقد	criticism	نقد/انتقاد	criticised	منتقد
employ	يوظف	employment employee	توظيف موظف	employed	موظف
entertain	يسلى	entertainment	تسلية/ترفيه	entertaining	مسلٍ
imagine	يتخيل	imagination	خيال	imaginative imaginary	خيالى (مبدع) خيالى (بعيد عن الواقع)
register	يسجل	registration	تسجيل	-------------------	
represent*	يمثل	representation	تمثيل/إنابة عن	representative	ممثل

* - I dream of representing my country in a competition.
- His speech was a good representation for his country.
- He has a representative design to show in the interview.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
criticise	ينتقد	condemn/blame	approve/praise	يستحسن/يمتدح
cute	لطيف	attractive/charming	hateful/ugly	كريه/قبيح
entertain	يسلى/يستضيف	amuse/satisfy	annoy/displease	يضايق
fire	يفصل من العمل	dismiss/sack	employ/hire	يوظف/يستأجر
privacy	خصوصية	secrecy	publicity	دعاية
register	يسجل	enroll/record	erase	يمحو/يزيل
represent	يمثل	serve/speak for	differ/oppose	يختلف/يعارض
similar	مشابه	alike	different/opposite	مختلف/مقابل
support	دعم	assistance/backing	discouragement/hindrance	عدم تشجيع/إعاقة

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The flag is a/an .... of our country so, we should all respect it.
   a) status b) image c) symbol d) story
2. Ali has improved his .... since he joined the summer camp.
   a) behaviour b) lecture c) culture d) rapture
3. The Ministry of Education have set up a special .... for online learning and communication between the teacher and the student.
   a) pavement b) building c) platform d) facility
4. The World Economic .... is held in Davos at the end of January every year.
   a) Club b) Championship c) Race d) Forum
5. Famous people don't want their .... to be invaded by reporters.
   a) fame b) wealth c) privacy d) health

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Do you agree on sharing your personal data online or not? Why?

Listening Text (1)

Hamdi : Hey Khaled, can you help me? I'm doing a blog post on how to use social media well. Can you help me think of some interesting points to include please?

Khaled : Yes, sure. What have you got so far?

Hamdi : OK, I think I'm going to begin by talking about your profile[1]. That's important on social media.

Khaled : Definitely!

Hamdi : Great! What shall I write?

Khaled : Well, I like seeing who I'm chatting with on social media, so I believe you should always put up a nice picture of yourself on your profile. I hate it when people have symbols[2] or something instead of their photo – you don't know who you are talking to.

Hamdi : I disagree; symbols tell you more about what someone thinks.

Khaled : Really, Hamdi? Well, I think it's important that people don't know too much. For example, in my opinion, it's a bad idea to include your date of birth[3] to show your age.

Hamdi : I see your point. Did you know that about 50% of teenagers have experienced bad behaviour[4] on social media? So, I think you're right not to give people too much information about yourself.

Khaled : After all, you have to be sensible[5] on social media if you want to enjoy it safely.

(1) الملف الشخصي
(2) رموز
(3) ميلاد
(4) سلوك
(5) عاقل

Mention two ways of keeping your information safe online.

How do you use the internet?
How long do you stay online?

Listening Text (2)



Narrator 1

Dalida : Hi, I'm Dalida. I think the biggest effect that the internet has on young people is it keeps them entertained – there's always something to watch or listen to, and I'm never bored.

Narrator 2

Injy : Hi, I'm Injy. Like most of my friends, I think I'm addicted[1] to the internet. If I'm not checking my social media apps, I feel worried that I'm missing something important. It means I have a lot of arguments with my parents at mealtimes and when we go out together.

(1) مدمن

(2) يتخيل

(3) يمارس ألعاب الفيديو

(4) برمجة

(5) منتديات

(6) مبرمجين

Narrator 3

Ayman : Hello. I'm Ayman. I am so pleased I have the internet to help me with my homework. Imagine[2] if you had to go to the library and read loads of books for every homework or project!

Narrator 4

Osama : Hi, my name's Osama. I game[3] online which is really fun, so I think the internet has a good effect on my life, but I do worry about my sister. She gets sad because she thinks her friends all have better lives than her and do more exciting things. She can't understand that they only post the good things and not the bad things.

Narrator 5

Girl 2 : Hi, Radwa here. I love the internet. I love computer programming[4] so I go on forums[5] to chat to other programmers[6] – students and people who do it for a job. I have learned so much. And if I have a problem that I can't solve to do with programming, someone on the forum can usually help me.

How can social media affect us negatively?

When did you have a Facebook account?

Listening Text (3) (Workbook)



Hanan : Leila, did you see the post that Hany put up the other day about social media behaviour in Egypt?

Leila : No, I was too busy updating my profile. Do you know how difficult it is to take a good photo of yourself?

Hanan : I know what you mean. I just used a photo of my cat. Anyway[1], as I was saying, did you know that Hany's post said that 22 million people in Egypt connect[2] to one popular social media app every day?

Leila : Wow! That's something like 20% of Egypt all on just one social media platform[3]! But getting back to your profile photo, why don't you use a photo of yourself?

Hanan : Don't you worry about what all those people might see on your profile? For example, imagine you post a photo of yourself doing something stupid now, and in a few years' time you apply for a job and the company look at your social media profile to see what kind of person you are. What opinion will they have of you?

Leila : I see your point, but in my opinion, social media should be personal and has nothing to do with your job.

Hanan : I disagree. I read about a man who was fired[4] from his job for criticising[5] his company on his personal profile. You can never be too careful. You don't know who might see your posts.

Leila : I didn't think posting a photo was so important!

Hanan : The thing is that as soon as you post something, it is there forever[6]. So be careful with those selfies you're taking! Plus, Hany told me that he was once the victim[7] of bad behaviour after posting a photo of himself in some old jeans. He reported it and everything is fine now, but it really affected him at the time.

Leila : Wow! Well, I might think twice about updating my profile picture and just keep the photo of my dog. I think she's so cute and my selfies all look terrible anyway!

Hanan : I agree, I think your dog is lovely and it's a safer photo too.

Leila : Hey, look! Have you seen what Mona's wearing in the photo she's just posted?

(1) على أية حال ....
(2) يتصل ....
(3) منصة ....
(4) فصل من العمل ....
(5) نقد ....
(6) للأبد ....
(7) ضحية

Did Leila change her mind about posting photos?

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

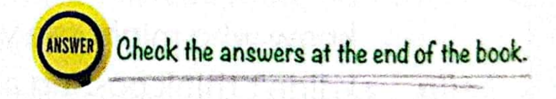
1. My office colleague is .... to coffee and cannot do anything in the morning until he's had some.
   a) addicted b) depicted
   c) repulsive d) available

2. The police officer asked to interview all .... in the factory about the theft.
   a) crews b) employers
   c) employees d) robbers

3. Five Egyptian female players are now .... in the top ten squash players in the world.
   a) graded b) retired
   c) ranked d) divided

4. You will need proof of identity to .... at any course in this language centre.
   a) treat b) practise
   c) enter d) register

5. At the family party, my uncle, a former sailor, ... us with exciting stories of his adventures at sea.
   a) implanted b) entertained
   c) annoyed d) departed





Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

behaviour — سلوك
- the things that a person or an animal does

profile — الملف الشخصى
- a short description that gives important details about a person

sensible — عاقل
- reasonable, practical, and showing good judgment

symbol — رمز
- a picture or shape that has a particular meaning or represents a particular organisation or idea

data of birth — تاريخ الميلاد
- the date in which someone was born

Notes on Vocabulary

1

each نستخدم (each) عندما نفكر فى الأشخاص أو الأشياء بشكل منفصل، واحد فى كلٍ مرة.	- He was holding a pen in each hand. - The teacher will ask each student to hand his essay in person.
every نستخدم (every) عندما نفكر فى الأشخاص أو الأشياء معـًا، فى مجموعة تعنى (كل شىء) أو (الجميع) أو (الكل).	- Omar has seen a lot of films this month. He enjoyed every one of them.

2

platform

رصيف القطار
منصة (يقف عليها المتحدث)
منصة إلكترونية (مثل موقع تواصل اجتماعى)

- The Aswan train leaves from platform six.
- He stepped up onto the platform and looked out into the audience.
- Due to COVID-19, many educational platforms emerged to help students study online.

pavement

رصيف الشارع

- He stopped the car just off the pavement.

3

represent

يمثل/ينوب عن (منظمة/مجموعة)

- He represented his company at the meeting.

act

١- يتصرف
٢- يمثل (يقوم بدور) فى عمل فنى

- My parents are always telling me how I should act and what I should say.
- As a child, she began acting in television commercials.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- Can you help me think of some interesting points to include please?

- لاحظ استخدام فعل فى صيغة المصدر بعد الفعل (help) كما يمكن استخدام (المصدر .to + inf).

- .... but I do worry about my sister.

- لاحظ استخدام (do) قبل الفعل فى الجملة الخبرية للتأكيد بمعنى بالفعل.

- I was too busy updating my profile.

- تستخدم صيغة (verb + ing) بعد التعبير (be busy).

- That's something like 20% of Egypt all on just one social media platform.

- التعبير (something like) بمعنى ما يقرب من.

▸ .... after posting a photo of himself in some old jeans.

- تستخدم صيغة (verb+ing) بعد أداة الربط (after) إذا لم يـأتِ بعدها فاعل.

▸ So be careful with those selfies you're taking! Plus, Hany told me that ....

- معنى كلمة (Plus) وهو علامة الجمع (+) وتستخدم فى المحادثة بمعنى (أضف إلى ذلك).

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Experts believe that women now .... fifty percent of the workforce.
   a) represent b) act c) attach d) connect
2. The train to Cairo is on .... four and it leaves in thirty minutes.
   a) pavement b) side c) platform d) stop
3. There were cars parking along .... side of the street.
   a) both b) all c) every d) each
4. .... person should have a role in the progress of their country.
   a) Neither b) Every c) Either d) Both
5. My mother says she is always busy .... after the house.
   a) look b) looks c) looking d) to look

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.



Vocabulary Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 You shouldn't add many personal data on your Facebook .... so as not to be misused by any hackers.
a) profile b) drawer c) desk d) book

2 The doctor should have .... the risks of the treatment to the patient before starting it.
a) waved b) told c) promised d) explained

3 Some people prefer to .... lines when they read so that they can memorise the information.
a) cut b) enlighten c) highlight d) cut out

4 The songs of some new folk singers are .... as they contain slang language.
a) punished b) criticised c) rewarded d) praised

5 Grandmother .... her grandchildren with her funny stories and exciting songs.
a) entertained b) delayed c) inspected d) trained

6 Some experts believe that children need to .... things for themselves in order to learn from them.
a) reward b) experience c) award d) cure

7 The club provides a .... for people who share an interest in history.
a) home b) view c) seminar d) forum

8 The old man said that he couldn't .... his life without his wife.
a) imagine b) stop c) retire d) demand

9 Facebook has become the most important social media .... all over the world.
a) pavement b) platform c) view d) canal

10 The man says he's unable to give up smoking as he's completely .... to it.
a) addicted b) attained c) attacked d) applied

11 The police officer behaved in a .... way and didn't lose his self-control.
a) sensible b) sensitive c) senseless d) sensory

12 There was an accident on the highway yesterday, but there were no ....
a) researchers b) victims c) streets d) inventors

13 The .... should be informed about the new instructions and rules in the company.
a) employers b) sections c) employees d) officers

14 The company director will be making short .... in the meeting.
a) complaints b) products c) interviews d) presentations

15 The university is .... number one in the country for engineering.
a) degreed b) ranked c) divided d) shared

16 You can .... for the new course online or in person.
a) register b) study c) rehearse d) reverse

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

17 The theme of the novel is based on the .... of the writer and doesn't relate to real life.
a) imagine b) imaginative c) imaginary d) imagination

18 He can only walk with the assistance of a stick. The word "assistance" is a synonym of the word ....
a) report b) rapport c) support d) export

19 The students who were on the trip were divided .... three groups according to their age.
a) at b) into c) with d) about

20 Although the mobile helps young people to .... in contact with their friends, it can waste their time.
a) keep b) leave c) depart d) pay

21 Strict rules should be .... to limit the increase of air pollution.
a) deposited b) done c) made d) finished

22 The teacher ordered the class to stop talking and .... attention to what she said.
a) spend b) buy c) cost d) pay

23 My little sister loves to share her toys .... other children.
a) with b) into c) at d) about

24 There is a .... between pollution and the death of trees.
a) connect b) connection c) connected d) connective

25 He entertained us for hours with his stories and jokes. The verb "entertain" is an antonym of the verb ....
a) annoy b) amuse c) assist d) delay

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

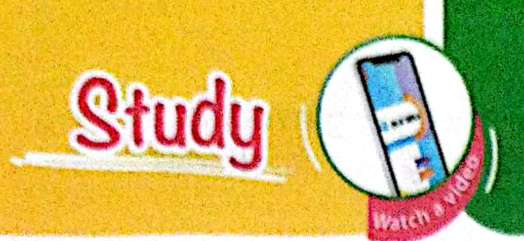
26 She got fired from her first job for being late. The antonyms of the verb "fire" are ....
a) sack b) dismiss c) employ d) apply e) hire

27 Many politicians prefer Twitter to Facebook as a social networking ....
a) site b) view c) position d) platform e) post

28 I want to thank .... person who has contributed to this project.
a) all b) every c) each d) both e) whole

29 It takes a long time to .... a drug دواء/عقار for a new disease.
a) install b) reform c) develop d) do e) make

30 The two houses are similar in size, but different in style. The synonyms of the adjective "similar" are ....
a) far b) puzzled c) alike d) related e) representative





B Language

Important Notes



١) استخدامات أخرى لـ mean

1. mean + v.ing = involve يشمل/يضم

- Being a doctor means working long hours.

2. mean + to + inf. = intend to ينوى/يهدف إلى

- He means to find a job abroad.

3. mean يقصد/يعنى (غالبًا آخر السؤال) وليس بعدها to

- What does this word mean?

4. a means – means

وسيلة (اسم مفرد) ومضاف إليها s والجمع بإضافة s أيضًا ولكن بدون أداة نكرة a

- The train is an important means of transport.

٢) تعبر 'be + not supposed to' عن المنع والحظر وعدم السماح وخاصة مع النفى.

You're not supposed to do something = it is not allowed

- You're not supposed to park your car here. It's private parking only.

٣) تستخدم supposed to بمعنى يقال/قيل.

be supposed to = be said to

- He is supposed to have twelve children. = He is said to have ...

٤) تستخدم seem بعدها صفة أو بعدها الفعل like ولا يستخدم بعدها حال (adv.)

- It seems like ages since we last met.
- She seems excited about the offer. = She seems to be excited about the offer.

٥) إذا وجدت it قبل seem تستخدم that وبعدها جملة، أما إذا وجدت كلمة there أو أى كلمة أخرى نستخدم to + inf.

- It seems that he likes classical music.
- He seems to like classical music.
- It seems that there is some water on the carpet.
- There seems to be some water on the carpet.

٦) لوصف العاطفة نستخدم He doesn't seem himself these days. لا يبدو فى حالته هذه الأيام.

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She means to open her own shop. The word "means" here means ....
   a) intends b) must
   c) needs d) indicates
2. The internet is an important means of communication. The word "means" h
   means a/an ....
   a) intention b) way
   c) need d) indication
3. After being fired from the company, he .... nervous.
   a) seemed b) was supposed
   c) was meant to d) meant
4. She .... like a good teacher, all her students respect her.
   a) supposes b) seems
   c) means d) is supposed
5. Being a pilot means .... a lot and having fun as well.
   a) travelling b) to travel
   c) to be travelled d) being travelled

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of th

Golden Question

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I think I .... to her when I turned down her dinner invitation.
  a) mean b) was meant
  c) was mean d) don't mean



Language Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Amal .... to phone me last night, but she didn't.
a) was supposed b) is supposed c) supposed d) is supposing

2 There .... to be a mistake in these figures.
a) are supposed b) meant c) were supposed d) seems

3 I'm sorry. I didn't .... to break your vase.
a) mean b) suppose c) seem d) supposed

4 I .... to look after my younger brother while my parents are away.
a) suppose b) 'm supposed c) am supposing d) supposing

5 Do you know what the weather .... to be like tomorrow?
a) is seemed b) is supposed c) is meant d) does seem

6 I seem .... the first student to arrive at school today.
a) to be b) being c) be d) to being

7 Being a teacher means .... a lot of homework.
a) to check b) to be checked c) checking d) checked

8 The high cost of housing .... that many young people can't afford to buy a house.
a) seems b) means c) supposed d) is supposing

9 My teacher .... to be happy.
a) supposed b) seemed c) meant d) are supposed

10 It's blue, but it was .... to be purple.
a) meant b) seemed c) supposing d) meaning

11 Why are you outside the factory? You .... to be working.
a) seem b) mean c) are supposed d) are seemed

12 This old computer doesn't .... to be working properly.
a) mean b) suppose c) need d) seem

13 I can't join you for lunch. I'm .... attend a meeting in ten minutes.
a) supposing to b) supposing c) supposed d) supposed to

14 I don't know how long Hany's been working on that project, but it .... like weeks.
a) seems b) supposes c) means d) supposed

15 These shoes don't .... to fit. They're a little small.

a) mean b) seem c) suppose d) want

16 Factories are .... to employ a lot of people and satisfy our needs.

a) seemed b) supposing c) meaning d) meant

17 Egyptian students .... to study day and night to get the full mark.

a) are supposed b) mean c) are seemed d) supposed

18 He .... like an honest person, but then we found out he wasn't.

a) supposed b) is meant c) seemed d) is supposed

19 Don't wait for me. I .... to visit my uncle in hospital after school.

a) seemed b) 'm supposed c) am meaning d) supposed

20 Life in Siwa will probably .... a little strange to you at first, but you'll get used to it.

a) seem b) suppose c) mean d) want

21 The police are looking for him. He .... to have a criminal background. منقباد - أسيوط

a) supposes b) seems c) means d) likes

22 They are happy; they .... be having a nice time. إدارة المنشأة - سوهاج ٢٠٢٢

a) are meaning to b) supposed to

c) seem to d) won't

23 You're .... to start work at 8:30 every morning. إدارة بني عبيد التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) seemed b) meaning c) wanted d) supposed

24 The internet .... to be more important than it really is. منية النصر محافظة الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢

a) supposes b) is supposed c) means d) seeming

25 I'm going to buy this car. It .... to be very good. كفر صقر ٢٠٢٢

a) is seemed b) was seemed c) is supposed d) suppose

26 One of the following answers gives the same meaning of this sentence:
"People aren't supposed to get on the train without a ticket."

a) It isn't a good idea for people to get on the train without a ticket.
b) It is against the law to get on the train without a ticket.
c) It is advisable for people not to get on the train without a ticket.
d) It is inadvisable for people not to get on the train without a ticket.

27 One of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect:

a) He seems that he is innocent.
b) He is seeming to be innocent.
c) He seems to be innocent.
d) He seems innocent.

28 One answer is grammatically correct:

a) We seem to interrupt you while you were asleep.
b) We didn't mean to interrupt you while you were asleep.
c) We supposed to interrupt you while you were asleep.
d) We weren't supposed to interrupt you while you are asleep.

29 One answer to the following sentence is grammatically incorrect:

Amr seems .... a good day.

a) that he has
b) has
c) to have
d) to be having

30 One answer to the following sentence is incorrect:

"My uncle's new car ...."

a) seems like a luxurious one
b) seems to be a luxurious one
c) seems a luxurious one
d) is seeming to be a luxurious one

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

31 These tablets .... be good for the nerves and sleeplessness.

a) means to
b) are supposed to
c) are meant
d) seem to
e) seem

32 What .... to do to improve your English?

a) do you seem
b) are you meant
c) do you mean
d) you are supposed
e) are you supposed

33 What is Ahmed's problem? I don't know, but he .... angry.

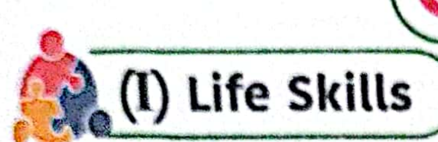
a) seems
b) is supposed to be
c) supposes to be
d) seems to be
e) is meant to be

34 The children have been playing for an hour now. They .... a wonderful time.

a) are meant having
b) are supposed having
c) seem to be having
d) were supposed to have
e) seem to have

35 "You weren't supposed to do that." means: ....

a) You should do that, but you don't.
b) You should have done it, but you didn't.
c) You shouldn't have done it.
d) You shouldn't do that, but you do.
e) It was wrong to do it.



Communication Skills

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى
الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

(I) Life Skills

Critical thinking

What is critical thinking?

Critical thinking is the ability to think clearly and rationally about what to do or what to believe. It includes the ability to engage in reflective and independent thinking. Someone with critical thinking skills is able to do the following:

- understand the logical connections between ideas
- identify, construct and evaluate arguments
- detect inconsistencies and common mistakes in reasoning
- solve problems systematically
- identify the relevance and importance of ideas
- reflect on the justification of one's own beliefs and values

The importance of critical thinking

- Critical thinking promotes creativity.
- Critical thinking is a domain-general thinking skill.
- Critical thinking is very important in the new knowledge economy.
- Critical thinking enhances language and presentation skills.
- Good critical thinking is the foundation of science and democracy.

Reference: https://philosophy.hku.hk/think/critical/ct.php



(II) Writing

How can you apply critical thinking in your life?

An email to a friend

- **Write an email to your friend Hashem advising him how to use social media well.**

Hi Hashem,

I hope you are fine. This is my advice to you in order to use social media well and effectively. Social media is now a critical part of our lives so we must use it carefully. So, you can depend on social media for several purposes such as communication, studies, paying money, gaining money and so on. But firstly you should decide on your goal and make a plan to achieve it. This will help to measure your results. Social media is not only for fun. Many businesses depend on it for publicity or to promote their products.

As students, we can get benefited from it by learning language courses online, attending educational lectures, and downloading dictionaries.

I regularly read English novels and stories on some specialised websites and this helped me to improve my English.

The most important thing is that; you shouldn't share your private details and information easily on social media because this is not completely safe nowadays. Also, don't log into weird sites or pages as this will waste your time without any benefit.

Thanks for your time

Bye

Send an email to your best friend now saying hello!



Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The report .... the importance of exercise to maintain a healthy body.
a) deprived b) declined c) granted d) highlighted

2 I understand your .... about the new system, but do not share it.
a) importance b) quarrel c) viewpoint d) treaty

3 The politician tried to make his speech more .... for the audience.
a) entertain b) entertainment c) entertaining d) entertained

4 This maths problem is difficult; you can't do it .... your own.
a) at b) on c) in d) about

5 The tour .... took the tourists around the Grand Egyptian Museum.
a) pioneer b) serial c) speech d) guide

6 Mohamed Salah has become a .... of the successful Egyptian young man who can serve his country.
a) signal b) claim c) symbol d) means

7 The film was .... for the violent and inappropriate scenes in it.
a) criticised b) punished c) rewarded d) praised

8 The World Health Organisation provides the best .... for the exchange of views and ideas about world pandemics.
a) firm b) corporation c) farm d) forum

9 She is determined to get a ticket for the concert even if it means .... a lot of money.
a) paying b) to pay c) to be paid d) to paying

10 What .... to do to improve your memory?
a) you are supposed b) are you supposed
c) you are meant d) did you suppose

11 It .... as if there will be rain soon.
a) is supposed b) is meant c) seems d) supposed

12 This is a painting of an elephant, but it was .... to be a horse.
a) seemed b) meant c) like d) supposing

13 Khalid's little boy is a live wire! He plays all day and never .... to get tired.
a) seems b) supposes c) means d) wants

14 That bag .... too heavy for the old woman to carry.
a) is supposed b) is meant c) is seemed d) seems

15 She ....to finish her homework, so she can't come with us.
a) supposes b) is supposed c) is seemed d) is meaning

16 You .... to play loud music after midnight. It disturbs the local residents.
a) are supposed b) are not supposed c) are meant d) are seemed

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

While technology is taking control steadily[1] over individual lives, the reading habit is fast vanishing into thin air. TV and the silver screen are filling the minds of the modern youth, taking the majority[2] of their free time. We have to think seriously about how the growing generations will find time to read.

Video and television are responsible for the declining[3] interest in reading among youth. They do nothing to build up reading skills. If the children's time is devoted to reading, the population would be better educated.

Reading a story is an active partnership between a writer and reader. Ideas are sketched and the mind of the reader creates the rest, but watching something is totally passive[4].

The problem is that many children read very slowly. It is hardly surprising that such children declare that they find reading boring and prefer to watch television.

Their difficulty is not reading the words – it is interpreting[5] them. They need to be able to read fast enough to feed the mind's hunger for a story. Only by reading daily a child will become a strong and independent reader.

Parents need to be convinced[6] of the importance of preventing their children from wasting their time. Without the television, the child is likely to turn to books for entertainment.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Reading helps people to be ....
- a) well-paid
- b) good actors
- c) well-educated
- d) good writers

2 The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....
- a) the youth
- b) video and television
- c) children
- d) reading skills

3 According to the writer's view, TV is .... means of entertainment.
- a) not an effective
- b) an encouraging
- c) an effective
- d) not a cheap

4 The synonym of the word "independent" is "..................".
- a) active
- b) intelligent
- c) self-centred
- d) self-determining

5 What is the reason behind the decline in reading habit among youth?
- a) Lack of free time.
- b) Not going to schools.
- c) Doing sports.
- d) TV and video.

(1 بثبات (2 الأغلبية (3) منخفض (4) سلبي (5) يفسر (6) مقتنع

6 There is a fruitful partnership between a writer and a reader when ....

a) a video is watched b) a short story is read
c) an article is published d) a book is sold

7 Children, who read slowly, ...

a) like TV b) speak fast
c) like reading d) are disabled

8 The best title for the passage is "................".

a) The Importance of Reading b) Technology Pros
c) The Benefits of Technology d) Children's Preferences

) Translate into Arabic:

1. Mobile addiction(1) has become one of the psychological(2) problems which many young people suffer from. Doctors have special courses to treat it like any psychological disease.

....

....

2. You shouldn't trust your personal and financial(3) information with unknown websites. Hackers can use it to steal your money or even your identity.

....

....

3. Charities play an important role in helping poor people and providing assistance to them. That's why we should support them with our time and money.

....

....

4. The Egyptian civilisation began thousands of years ago. Therefore, Egypt is called the birthplace(4) of civilisation.

....

....

5. The New Administrative(5) Capital is a huge project which will take years to complete. However, it will provide a perfect solution to the problem of overcrowding in Cairo.

....

....

6. Parents can help children with learning disabilities achieve success by encouraging their strengths and knowing their weaknesses.

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- كثيرًا ما تتهم وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى بانتهاك [6] خصوصية [7] المستخدمين رغم تأكيدها على حرصها على البيانات الشخصية لكل من يمتلك حسابًا بها.

....

....

٢- التقدم الطبى أهم إنجازات الإنسـان التى أدت إلى زيادة سـعادته و رفاهيته كما أدى إلى زيادة متوسـط [8] عمر الفرد فى السنوات القليلة الماضية.

....

....

٣- كلمـا تقدم العلم والتكنولوجيا زادت المشـكلات النفسـية التى قد يعانى منها النـاس ويتناولها الكُتاب فى قصصهم والمخرجون فى أفلامهم.

....

....

٤- تحذر وسائل الإعلام الشباب من الهجرة [9] غير الشرعية إلى أوروبا لأنها قد تؤدى إلى فقدانهم حياتهم و ذلك لأنهم يسافرون عبر طرق خطيرة.

....

....

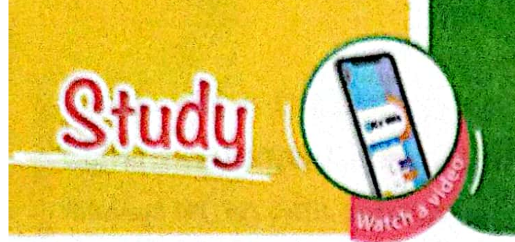
4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Everyone should understand the importance of water in our life and the problems faced during scarcity of water."

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. — I used the right structure. — I used a topic sentence. — I wrote the conclusion. — I used the right punctuation.

(1) إدمان (2) نفسى (3) ماليًا
(4) مهد (5) إدارية (6) violating
(7) privacy (8) average (9) immigration



King Lear
Act II, Scene iii

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

apologise (v) (d)	يعتذر	patience (n)	صبر
bear (n)	دب	ring (n)	خاتم
blow (v)	تهب (الرياح)	room (n)	مكان/حيز
cave (n)	كهف	shelter (n) (v) (ed)	مأوى/يحمى/يقى
choice (n)	اختيار	spy (n)	جاسوس/يتجسس
disagreement (n)	خلاف	wet (adj)	مبلل/مطير
double (v) (d)	يضاعف/ ضعف	wind (n)	رياح
joke (n)	نكتة/فكاهة		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at the right time	فى الوقت المناسب	go mad	يصاب بالجنون
lock somebody out	يحظر/يمنع من الدخول	turn someone's back on	يتجاهل/يتنكر لـ
for all time	للأبد	keep you warm	يبقيك دافئا
set eyes on	تقع عيناه على		



King Lear Exercises

Act II, Scene iii

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You should .... to your customers for wasting their time.
a) rejoice b) please
c) affect d) apologise

2 A .... is a large hole that was formed by natural processes in the side of a cliff or hill or under the ground.
a) palace b) hut
c) cave d) cottage

3 Money is a source of .... between many couples these days. It causes them a lot of disputes.
a) pride b) disagreement
c) shame d) species

4 The material I was buying for these shirts suddenly .... in price, so the they are expensive.
a) doubled b) decreased
c) divided d) applied

5 The soldier's experiences in the war affected him so much that he .... mad.
a) came b) went
c) fell d) gave

6 This is a silly old .... I've heard it lots of times and didn't make me laugh.
a) research b) view
c) joke d) riddle

7 Wildlife photography requires a lot of .... You have to wait much for a good photo.
a) speed b) failure
c) patience d) atmosphere

8 When it started raining, they took .... under an old forest bridge.
a) clothing b) vanity
c) pride d) shelter

9 The soldier was arrested on suspicion of being an enemy ....
a) spy b) presenter
c) producer d) director

10 Mahmoud is a good man and would never .... his back on a friend.
a) got b) grew
c) turn d) face

Advanced & Open

General Exercises

emembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

oose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The young artist asked the expert to .... his drawings.
a) prepare b) redetect c) criticise d) deform

2 The actress is very clever at presenting her best .... to the camera.
a) director b) profile c) character d) view

3 The .... of the food in this restaurant makes it look very tasty.
a) reformation b) updating c) reflection d) presentation

4 The patient's brain is regularly .... so that doctors can detect the progress of his disease.
a) scanned b) skimmed c) scaled d) stated

5 I usually .... my children from their school. It's part of my daily routine.
a) connect b) hand c) collect d) deliver

6 Most of the people object to the new factory as they want to preserve the .... of their neighbourhoods.
a) feeling b) character c) direction d) assumption

7 I missed the .... flight to New York, so I spent the night at the airport.
a) connecting b) contacting c) communicating d) commuting

8 When the photographer .... the film, he was astonished by what he saw.
a) manufactured b) designed c) spread d) developed

9 Because of pollution, this lake is now too acid to .... fish.
a) hunt b) support c) catch d) poison

10 The earthquake .... 3 on the Richter scale.
a) weighed b) graded c) registered d) linked

11 "Cl" is the chemical .... for chlorine.
a) symbol b) signal c) ray d) flag

12 The passports, with the visa ...., were waiting at the embassy.
a) records b) stamps c) relays d) results

13 Omar's first music teacher was a major .... in his life.
a) effect b) defect c) influence d) reflex

14 The young lady .... out of the room so as not to wake the baby.
a) raked b) rushed c) robbed d) stole

15 The young man's life lacks .... as he is addicted to drugs.
a) search b) reason c) purpose d) message

16 The children in our street do not like that man. They say he is ....
a) seem b) suppose c) supposed d) mean

17 Hard exercises are meant .... before the match.
a) to do b) to have done c) to be done d) done

18 .... likely that they will lose the election.
a) It seem b) It seems c) He seems d) They seem

19 The plan is .... to be a secret, but everybody .... to know about it.
a) meant/ seems b) seemed/meant
c) seemed/seems d) supposes/means

20 Students are supposed to listen to the teacher's explanation. This is ....
a) not necessary b) predictable c) prohibited d) obligatory

21 He stayed in Europe more than his friends ....
a) supposed b) seemed c) needed d) meant

22 Galileo is supposed .... the telescope.
a) having invented b) to invent
c) to have invented d) have invented

23 Charles Dickens' writings seem .... by his life experiences.
a) to influence b) influential
c) to be influenced d) to be influencing

24 It was .... to be a chicken sandwich, but they'd been a bit .... with the chicken.
a) meant/supposed b) supposed/means
c) meant/seem d) supposed/ mean

25 He .... to like the new T-shirt; it isn't fashionable.
a) isn't supposing b) doesn't seem c) isn't seemed d) not supposed

26 I suppose that Hassan has eaten the apple. This means that ....
a) The apple might have been eaten by Hassan
b) I am supposed that Hassan has eaten the apple
c) The apple must have eaten by Hassan
d) I suppose that Hassan has been eaten the apple

27 "Doctors are supposed to help sick people" means: ....
a) They help sick people b) They must be helping sick people
c) They should help sick people d) They might have helped sick people

28 "I was supposed to call her at seven." means: ....
a) I called her at seven b) I was called by her at seven
c) I could call her at seven d) I should have called her at seven

29 .... you had a million pounds, what would you do?
a) Supposed b) Supposing c) Seemed d) Meant

30 I can't understand that word. What is that ....?
a) mean b) seem
c) supposed d) supposed to mean



Al-Adwaa Test



emembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 The computer screen on this new laptop is nearly 66 .... wide.
a) characters b) codes c) emojis d) spaces e) clips

2 You can .... access to your data on this website by typing in a user name and password.
a) lose b) gain c) become d) deny e) have

3 Text messaging enables people to keep in close .... at all times.
a) link b) connection c) contact d) touch e) contraction

4 The project has been criticised as a waste of money. The antonyms of the verb "criticise" are ....
a) praise b) approve c) denounce d) reverse e) retreat

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5 We need to run many .... adverts to spread our products widely.
a) sponsored b) active c) shared d) achieved

6 The story of the terrible murder was given a high .... in today's papers.
a) sight b) profile c) character d) view

7 The World Youth .... is held in Sharm El Sheikh and is attended by young people from all over the world.
a) Scenery b) View c) Seminar d) Forum

8 The weak students of the 6th grade were offered Saturday courses to .... their skills.
a) subscribe b) outdate c) upgrade d) install

9 There .... to be a problem with the trains this morning.
a) is supposed b) is meant c) means d) seems

10 Finding a job means .... many interviews.
a) attending b) to attend
c) to be attended d) being attended

11 It .... to snow last week.
a) seems b) didn't suppose
c) wasn't supposed d) meant

12 Libraries .... to be a place for reading.

a) seem b) are meant c) supposed d) were meant

13 I want to see that film. It .... to be good.

a) means b) meant c) seemed d) 's supposed

14 Planes are supposed to be the most comfortable .... of transport.

a) means b) mean c) suppose d) seem

15 There is no reason to .... she's lying.

a) suppose b) seem c) mean d) be supposed

16 They .... to be landing at Cairo airport. But if the fog gets any thicker, the plane may be diverted.

a) mean b) are seemed

c) are supposed d) are supposing

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Uncle Azmy is my favourite family member. He is above sixty years old, but he has the power to lift a bag containing thirty kilos of potatoes: he always does so to help his wife, aunt Fateema, as a sign of admiration. He is very healthy and always eats fruits and vegetables from his own field. He loves jokes and funny stories. My dad calls this silliness, that's why they are not on the same page. Dad was born five years before Uncle Azmy's birth, so he is wiser and more thoughtful.

When we gather as a family, uncle Azmy must play a prank on someone. Last time, he secretly put hot sauce in his wife's dish. She got hot and her face was red. Instead of helping her, he tumbled around on the floor, laughing hysterically. Nobody was surprised because that wasn't the first time to see such a situation. I got used to these deeds because I really understand him. This guy had a very strict life throughout his career as an officer. He wasn't allowed to even smile. He always gave and took commands and instructions. When he retired, he was born again as he described his feeling. The only one who is against his actions is my father. He is a seventy-year-old retired man and prefers the strict lifestyle although he hasn't joined the army before.

Uncle Azmy gives me positive vibes about life. Age is never an obstacle to doing whatever you want. Once I tried to create a Facebook account for him I was shocked when I knew that he had it a year before and had already one thousand friends. I immediately searched for him; his account was named Azmy Pranks. What an old man!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Although Mr Azmy is old, he is ....

a) wise b) weak

c) strong d) helpful

18 Mr Azmy loves his wife so he ....

a) helps her carry heavy bags b) buys fruits for her

c) plays silly pranks on her d) calls her darling

19 Mr Azmy is .... years old.

a) sixty b) about fifty

c) sixty five d) seventy five

20 Mrs Fateema's face got red ....

a) because she put much hot sauce

b) because she was embarrassed

c) because of her husband's prank

d) when she saw the red sauce

21 The writer's father doesn't like his brother's tricks because ....

a) he does better tricks

b) he is an army officer

c) he thinks they are silly

d) the tricks are dangerous

22 What happened to Mrs Fateema wasn't a surprise as ....

a) everybody likes tricks

b) everybody knows uncle Azmy's character

c) the writer told them about the trick previously

d) Uncle Azmy did that by mistake

23 The underlined word "vibes" means ....

a) feelings b) ideas

c) components d) actions

24 The best title for the passage is "................".

a) The Elderly Life

b) Mr Azmy's Rebirth

c) Cooperation and Love

d) Mr Azmy's Healthy Lifestyle

25 Translate into English:

- تسهم المشروعات القومية الكبرى التى يتم تنفيذها فى كل أنحاء مصر فى حل الكثير من المشكلات الاقتصادية وتوفير فرص العمل للشباب الطامح إلى حياة أفضل.

....

....

26 Translate into Arabic:

It is said that many bad habits such as smoking, drug addiction and violent behaviour usually start at teenage. So, teenagers should be careful not to get into them.

....

....

27 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Your friend will take part on a reading competition on Arab writers. He asks your advice about the sources he can use to research about them. Give him your advice."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

learn from mistakes move forward

Unit 6



Learning from our mistakes

Objectives

- **Reading** : Two extracts from an abridged version of *A Christmas Carol* by Charles Dickens
- **Writing** : Captions for a picture story
- **Listening** : A radio programme about regrets, listening for detail
- **Speaking** : Role-play about recognising mistakes
- **Language** : Conditionals (zero, first, second and third)
- **Life Skills** : Learning from our mistakes





Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

beg (v) (ged)	يرجو/يتوسل
carol (n)	ترنيمة (أغنية دينية مسيحية)
Christmas (n)	عيد الميلاد
fire (n) (v) (d)	نار/مدفأة/يطلق الرصاص/ يفصل من العمل
mean (adj) (v)	بخيل/يعني/يقصد
pile (n)	كومة
sigh (v) (ed) (n)*	يتنهد/يتحسر/تنهيدة

* When I play football, I sigh heavily because I run a lot.

Vocabulary on Reading & Video Script

actually (adv)	بالفعل
alone (adj) (adv)	بمفرده
assistant (n)	مساعد/بائع
boss (n)	رئيس العمل
breath (n)	نفس/تنفس
continue (v) (d)	يستمر
disappointed (adj)	محبَط
dream (n) (v) (ed)	حلم/يحلم
employer (n)	صاحب العمل
enormous (adj)	ضخم
faraway (adj)	بعيد
foggy (adj)	ضبابي/مغيم بالضباب
friendly (adj)	لطيف/ودود
including (prep)	مشتملًا على/بما فيه
large (adj)	كبير
life (n)	حياة
mistake (n)	خطأ
nephew (n)	ابن الأخ (الأخت)
novel (n)	رواية
office (n)	حجرة مكتب
pay (v)	يدفع
poor (adj)	فقير/مسكين
probably (adv)	من المحتمل
race (n)	سباق
suddenly (adv)	فجأة
surprised (adj)	مندهش
tone (n)	نبرة صوت
treat (v) (ed)	يعامل/يعالج
upset (v) (adj)	يضايق/يزعج/منزعج

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

call (v) (ed)	يتصل	logical (adj)	منطقى
donation (n)	تبرع	map (n)	خريطة
free time (n)	وقت الفراغ	museum (n)	متحف
generous (adj)	كريم	regret (v) (ted)	يأسف/يندم
health (n)	صحة	waste (v) (d)	يهدر/يسرف
international (adj)	دولى	water (v) (ed)	يروى
invite (v) (d)	يدعو		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at the beginning	فى البداية	get lost	يضل الطريق
change his mind	يغير رأيه	keep ... warm	يحافظ على الدفء
do exercise	يمارس تمرينات	make friends	يصادق/يكوّن صداقات
feel alone	يشعر بالوحدة	miss the train	يفوته القطار
feel healthy	يشعر بصحة جيدة	plenty of	وفرة (كثيرا) من
ask for	يطلب	run off	يجرى بعيدًا
feel about	يشعر بشأن	smile at	يبتسم بوجه
pay for	يدفع مقابل	work for	يعمل لصالح
get burnt	يحترق/يتأثر بحرارة الشمس		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
assist	يساعد	assistance assistant	مساعدة مساعد	----------------------	
continue	يستمر	continuation	استمرار	continuous	مستمر
donate	يتبرع	donation donor	تبرع متبرع	----------------------	
invite	يدعو	invitation	دعوة	inviting	داعٍ
regret	يأسف/يندم	regret	ندم	regrettable regretful	مأسوف عليه نادم
surprise	يفاجئ/يدهش	surprise	مفاجأة	surprised	مندهش
treat*	يعامل/يعالج	treatment	معاملة/علاج	treatable	يمكن علاجه
waste	يهدر/يسرف	waste	هدر/إسراف	wasteful	مبذر

* - I always treat my employees well.
- My treatment to my employees affects the work.
- Some people thinks that mental illness is not treatable.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
assistant	مساعد	helper/aide	opponent	خصم
beg	يرجو/يتوسل	request/urge	give/reply	يعطي
disappointed	محبط	depressed/dissatisfied	cheerful/comforted	مرح
donation	تبرع	charity/assistance	blockage/hindrance	غلق/منع
foggy	مغيم بالضباب	cloudy/misty	clear	صافٍ
generous	كريم	hospitable/charitable	mean/miserly	بخيل
mistake	خطأ	error/fault	correctness/soundness	صواب/سلامة
treat	يعامل	deal with/conduct	abandon/ignore	يترك
waste	يسرف/يهدر	exhaust/misuse	maintain/save	يحافظ على

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The children .... their father to take them to the cinema, but he said no.
a) ordered b) begged c) attacked d) delayed

2 Mother asked me not to forget to turn the electric .... off before I go to bed.
a) shot b) job c) fire d) task

3 The old factory owner has always been .... with money, so his employees don't like him.
a) cheerful b) generous c) careless d) mean

4 The businessman .... deeply at the thought of losing his money.
a) cheered b) sighed c) laughed d) yelled

5 The clerk was busy behind a .... of paper on his desk.
a) pile b) hay c) hole d) wreckage

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

What is the weather like in London at the end of December?

Reading Text (1)

A Christmas Carol[1]

It was the end of December. It was dark outside and the streets were foggy. Scrooge was a very rich businessman, but he was mean[2] and people didn't like him. Scrooge was working in his office with his assistant, Bob Cratchit. He was very cold because Scrooge wouldn't pay for a big fire[3] to keep them warm.

There was only a small fire and it was very far away.

"It's late. Can I go home, Mr. Scrooge?" Bob begged[4].

"Have you finished your work?" asked Scrooge.

Bob looked at the enormous pile[5] of work left to do and sighed[6].

"You can't go home if you don't finish your work," continued Scrooge.

"If I finish all this work tonight, will you let me come to work a bit later tomorrow morning?" asked Bob.

"No," said Scrooge.

Suddenly the door opened and Scrooge's nephew, Fred, came into the office. He gave his uncle a friendly smile.

"Bah!" said Scrooge, "Why are you here? And why are you so happy? You're poor. What have you got to be happy about?"

"If you are so rich, why are you so sad?" replied Fred. "Perhaps if you were poor like me, you'd be happy like me, too."

"Have you come to ask me for money?" asked Scrooge in an unfriendly tone.

"No," replied his nephew. "I've come to invite you to dinner."

"Bah!" said his uncle.

(1) ترنيمة عيد الميلاد
(2) بخيل/سيئ الطباع
(3) مدفأة
(4) يرجو/يتوسل
(5) كومة
(6) يتنهد/يتحسر

At the end of this part, what do you think of Mr Scrooge?

Reading Text (2)

Do you think that Mr Scrooge can change?

A Christmas Carol: After a dream



The next morning, Scrooge woke up in his bed. He'd had a terrible dream[1], but now he could see his mistakes[2]. If he hadn't felt so alone, he wouldn't have cared only about money. And if he hadn't cared about money so much, he would have treated[3] other people better. Then he would have had more friends, and he wouldn't have felt so alone. But now he would change. He ran to his window and saw a boy in the street. "You! Boy!" he shouted out of the window. "Do you know the butcher's shop?"

"Yes, Mr Scrooge," shouted the boy. He was surprised[4] to see Mr Scrooge smile.

(1) حلم

(2) أخطاء

(3) يعامل

(4) مندهش

(5) يدفع

(6) يغير رأيه

"I want you to buy the best food and take it to Bob Cratchit's house as a gift from me to his family. Will you do this for me if I pay[5] you?"

"Of course," said the boy and then he ran off before Mr Scrooge changed his mind[6].

Scrooge went out in the street and said, "Good morning," to all the people he met and he smiled at them. Everyone was surprised to see Mr Scrooge smiling, but they replied, "Good morning, Mr Scrooge," and that made Scrooge very happy.

Then he went to his nephew's house and asked if he could have dinner with him. Of course, his nephew smiled and invited him to come inside.

What kind of dream do you think Mr Scrooge had?

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I had no money to .... the driver, so I withdrew the amount from a nearby ATM.

a) take b) borrow c) credit d) pay

2 It's always said that if you make ...., you will learn something new.

a) mistakes b) cakes c) decisions d) fights

3 The parade of the Royal Mummies was such a/an .... event that millions of people watched it.

a) local b) vague c) folk d) international

4 .... should raise salaries to keep up with the rise in prices.

a) Employees b) Customers c) Employers d) Clients

5 My aunt has no children, that's why she considers her .... as her sons.

a) nieces b) daughters c) nephews d) sons

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Vocabulary in Use

FOCUS on Vocabulary

beg يرجو
- to ask for something in a way that shows you need it very much

mean بخيل
- not happy to spend money or give anything to other people

pile كومة
- a group of things put on top of each other

sigh تنهيدة
- a deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or disappointed

Notes on Vocabulary

1

life الحياة بشكل عام (لا تجمع)	Poor people usually suffer much in life.
a life طريقة العيش يسبقها أداة نكرة	Samy says that marriage has helped him live a happy life.
the life حياة شخص أو فئة من الناس يسبقها أداة معرفة	I read an exciting book about the life of Nelson Mandella.

2

treat	يعالج (يتخذ إجراءات العلاج)	Patients are treated with a combination of medication and exercise.
cure	يعالج/يشفى (من مرض)	It might be several months before she's fully cured. Many formerly fatal diseases can now be cured.
heal	تلتئم (الجروح والكسور)	The wound took a long time to heal. Vitamin K is needed by the body for healing cuts and bruises.

3

work with	يعمل/يتعامل مع	All the nurses in this hospital are qualified to work with children.
work for	يعمل لدى/يعمل لصالح	My brother works for a big company in the city. We all should work for the improvement of our society.
work in	يعمل فى	I hope to work in medical research when I'm older.
work on	يعمل على (مشروع/إنجاز)	The writer said that he was working on a new novel.
work as	يعمل كـ (بوظيفة)	My grandfather worked as a journalist in the Al-Ahram newspaper a long time ago.

4

let	يترك/يسمح (المصدر بدون to)	We let our children read simple stories.
make	يجعل (المصدر بدون to)	We make our children read simple stories.
cause	يسبب (المصدر + to)	He caused the little girls to cry.
allow	يسمح (المصدر + to)	Using good seeds allows farmers to get better crops.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- He was surprised to see Mr Scrooge smile.

- نستخدم مصدر الفعل بدون (to) بعد الفعل (see) كما يمكن استخدام (verb + ing).

- "I want you to buy the best food and take it to Bob Cratchit's house as a gift ....

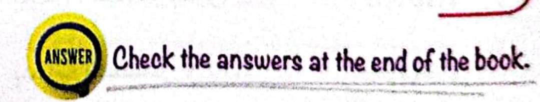
- نستخدم (as) بمعنى كـ وتعبر عن الحقيقة وليس التشبيه.

- Everyone was surprised to see Mr Scrooge smiling, but they replied.

- نستخدم الفعل فى صيغة المفرد بعد (everyone) ونستخدم ضمير جمع (they) للإشارة إليه.
- لاحظ أيضًا استخدام (verb + ing) بعد الفعل (see).

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Scientists are working .... a treatment for coronavirus disease these days.
   a) with b) on c) for d) as
2. Some teachers let their students .... researches to assess their abilities to use the internet.
   a) do b) does c) doing d) to do
3. Wounds and cuts take a long time to .... if they aren't treated well.
   a) spread b) cure c) treat d) heal
4. Our new boss, Mr Essam, is a cheerful man who seems to love .... very much.
   a) the life b) a life c) life d) lives
5. The technician caused the heater .... efficiently.
   a) working b) worked c) work d) to work





Vocabulary Exercises

After we memorised the new Vocabulary and read the notes, we need to practise. I think number one will be (a), do you agree?

Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 What makes me .... is that I will repeat all the work again.
a) disappointed b) appointed c) acquainted d) imparted

2 The relationship between workers and .... should be good in order to achieve good profits.
a) customers b) buyers c) employers d) clients

3 My uncle works as a lawyer; his .... is around the corner.
a) office b) club c) court d) plane

4 My son always says he wishes I would stop .... him like a child.
a) treating b) curing c) healing d) affecting

5 It was .... of the rich man to donate a million pounds for charity.
a) cowardly b) miserly c) hasty d) generous

6 The Davis Cup is an important .... tennis championship in which all the countries take part.
a) local b) national c) limited d) international

7 I .... shouting at my elder brother and I want to apologise to him now.
a) regret b) affect c) please d) rejoice

8 My father advised me not to .... my money on unhealthy foods as they can cause me some troubles.
a) benefit b) waste c) keep d) save

9 Teachers have been using visual aids such as .... and pictures in the classroom for a long time.
a) machines b) chalk c) maps d) laps

10 It's dangerous to leave your little children .... at home and go out.
a) lonely b) private c) alone d) particular

11 The poor lady .... the doctor to see her sick child and he immediately agreed.
a) begged b) ordered c) refused d) yelled

12 The church choir كورال is rehearsing some .... to be sung at Christmas Eve.
a) films b) carols c) games d) stations

13 The policeman .... two shots at the criminals before they were arrested.
a) breathed b) designed c) fired d) warmed

14 Our old neighbour was a .... man who never gives presents to anyone.
a) main b) generous c) kind d) mean

15 The old house had been knocked down, and there was nothing left but .... of stones.
a) holes b) wells c) piles d) pools

16 The young boy .... with relief when he saw that he passed the test.

a) sighed b) cried c) fought d) pleaded

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

17 We made too many errors, and that cost us the game. The word "error" is a synonym of the word "................".

a) prize b) correctness c) mistake d) clearing

18 I received my friend's .... to his wedding and I was very happy for him.

a) invite b) invitation c) invited d) uninvited

19 My daughter used to change her .... a lot especially about clothes.

a) head b) mind c) brain d) matter

20 Doctors advise all people to .... exercise to keep healthy and feel relaxed.

a) make b) note c) do d) neglect

21 The passenger arrived ten minutes late, so he .... the six o'clock train.

a) missed b) lost c) gained d) reserved

22 The client said that he didn't want to pay .... the cold meal that the waiter brought.

a) at b) about c) in d) for

23 The man I work .... isn't kind. He can easily dismiss any worker.

a) for b) on c) as d) at

24 I always advise my sister not to make unnecessary long calls as they are ....

a) waste b) wasted c) wasteful d) wasteless

25 He knocked out his opponent in the third round. The noun "opponent" is an antonym of the noun ....

a) enemy b) assistant c) competitor d) accuser

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 Sami's family are very disappointed about his bad exam results. The synonyms of the word "disappointed" are ....

a) pleased b) depressed c) impressed d) dissatisfied e) infected

27 Unluckily, my younger sister spends all her .... time watching television.

a) free b) busy c) study d) useful e) spare

28 My aunt has just retired after 35 years working .... children.

a) as b) with c) among d) for e) on

29 On going to work, I saw my brother .... the ice off the car windscreen.

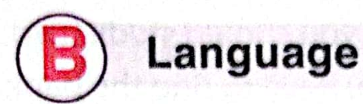
a) scraped b) to scrape c) scrape d) scrapes e) scraping

30 Leaving the heating on all the time wastes electricity. The antonyms of the word "waste" are ....

a) maintain b) damage c) puzzle d) ignore e) save



Lessons 1 & 2



If Conditional Forms حالات If الشرطية

1) The Zero Conditional الحالة الصفرية

We use the zero conditional to talk about facts and things that are always true:

نستخدم الحالة الصفرية لنتحدث عن الحقائق والظواهر الطبيعية والأشياء التى دائمًا حقيقية والعادات التى تتكرر لدى الشخص.

وتتكون من:



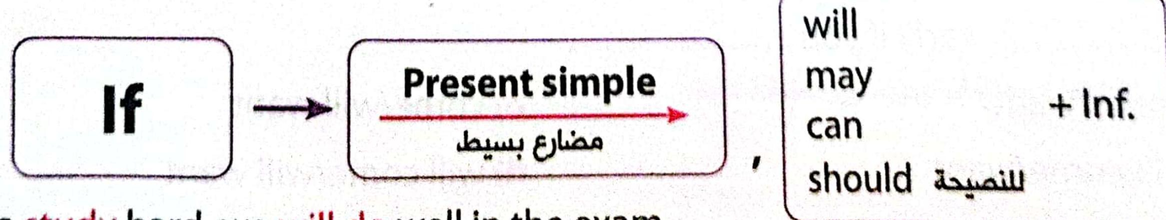
- If/When you heat water to 100°C, it boils.
- If/When the sun goes down, it gets dark.
- If/When I use the computer for a long time, I usually/always have a headache.
- If we go out with friends, we normally go to a restaurant.

Active	If you heat ice, it melts.
Passive	If ice is heated, it melts.
Yes/No question	Does ice melt if/when you heat it?
Wh- question	What happens if/when you heat ice?

2) The First Conditional الحالة الأولى

We use the first conditional to talk about events or situations that we think are probable or possible in the future:

- نستخدم الحالة الأولى للأحداث والمواقف التى نعتقد أنها محتملة أو ممكنة فى المستقبل.



- If we study hard, we will do well in the exam.
- If I have a lot of time tonight, I can go to the party with you.
- If he runs very fast, he may catch the bus.

لاحظ

- نستخدم (should) فى جواب الشرط للنصيحة والاستحباب و(have to/must) للوجوب والإلزام.

- If you want to get high marks, you should study hard.
- If you lose your credit card, you have to ring the bank.

- تعبر الحالة الأولى عن وعد أو أمنية أو تهديد.

- If you come first English test, I will give you this good camera.
- If I win the gold medal, I will be very famous.
- I won't lend you any money if you insist on spending it carelessly.

إذا كانت الجملة حالة صفرية ووضع لها زمن أو مدة فإنها تتحول إلى موقف خاص وليس حقيقة مثل:

- If you sit in the sun, you get burned.
- If you sit in the sun today, you will get burned.

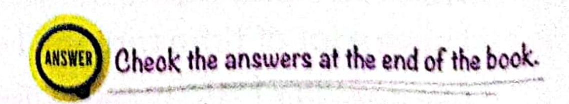
نستخدم الفعل فى الأمر بدون will فى جواب شرط الحالة الأولى.

- If you see Ali, tell him to call me.

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If my husband cooks, he usually .... the food.
   a) would burn b) burns c) will burn d) burnt
2. If I feel ill tonight, I .... at home.
   a) would stay b) stay c) will stay d) stayed
3. What .... if you feel unhappy?
   a) do you do b) would you do
   c) you did d) have you done
4. When I read in bed, I always .... asleep.
   a) fell b) would fall
   c) will fall d) fall
5. I .... early if you ....
   a) come/want b) come/will want
   c) will come/want d) will come/will want



3 The Second Conditional الحالة الثانية

• **We use the second conditional to talk about situations that are imaginary or unlikely in the present or future. It is also used for advice**

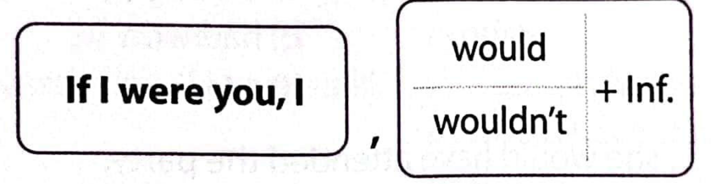
- نستخدم الحالة الثانية للتعبير عن المواقف الخيالية وغير الممكنة فى المضارع والمستقبل. وتستخدم أيضا فى النصيحة.



- If I had a lot of money, I would buy a new car.(I don't have much money at present.)
- If I discovered a planet, I would give it my name. (unlikely to happen)
- If I were a bird, I could fly. (I'm not a bird. Untrue in the present)

*** For advice:**

للنصيحة تُستخدم If كالآتى:



- If I were you, I'd study harder.
- If I were you, I wouldn't buy this expensive mobile.

Got it

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 

- If I .... a lot of money, I'd buy a big house in the country.

a) will win
b) had won
c) won
d) win

- الإجابة هى (c) لأن الجملة الشرطية فى الحالة الثانية.

4 The Third Conditional الحالة الثالثة

- **We use the third conditional to talk about past situations or actions that did not happen:**

ـ نستخدم الحالة الثالثة للحديث عن المواقف الماضية أو الأحداث التى لم تتم.



- If I had locked the car, it wouldn't have been stolen. (I didn't lock it.)
- If he had behaved well, the teacher wouldn't have punished him. (He didn't behave well.)

Check Point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

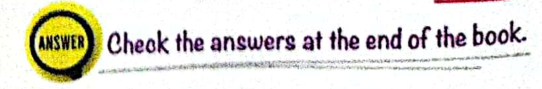
1. If he .... the prize, his parents would be happy.
   - a) will win
   - b) had won
   - c) won
   - d) wins

2. If she ...., she would have attended the party.
   - a) was invited
   - b) had invited
   - c) were invited
   - d) had been invited

3. If she .... busy, she would go out with her friends.
   - a) was
   - b) weren't
   - c) isn't
   - d) a & b

4. If he .... work late, he could watch the match at the stadium.
   - a) didn't have to
   - b) had to
   - c) will not
   - d) would

5. If you had told me about your problem earlier, I .... you.
   - a) would have helped
   - b) would help
   - c) had helped
   - d) helped





Language Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Practice is the best way to apply what we have learnt.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 If you need money, I .... you some.
a) lend b) can lend c) would lend d) lent

2 What will you do if you .... the exam?
a) would fail b) will fail c) fail d) had failed

3 If it snows, ... drive to the coast?
a) you will b) will you
c) would you d) would you have

4 I would have come home earlier if I .... you were worried.
a) knew b) 'd know c) 'd known d) know

5 If you work harder for the next week, I'm sure you .... your exam.
a) won't pass b) pass c) 'd pass d) will pass

6 If they .... me a good salary, I would have accepted the job.
a) had offered b) offered c) offer d) hadn't offered

7 I didn't feel ill yesterday. If I had felt ill, I .... at home.
a) will stay b) would have stayed
c) would stay d) stayed

8 If we had waited for another 10 minutes yesterday, we .... the minister.
a) had seen b) will see c) would have seen d) 'd see

9 If I need advice about my life, I usually .... to my mother.
a) talk b) would talk c) had talked d) will talk

10 If Magdi had enough money, he .... a new mobile phone.
a) buys b) will buy
c) would have bought d) would buy

11 If a balloon is filled with hot air, it ....
a) may rise b) would rise c) rises d) will rise

12 If you go out, ... the porter to bring me the keys.
a) tell b) would tell c) will tell d) won't tell

13 If I .... ill and missed the interview, I might have got the job.
a) had fallen b) hadn't fallen
c) fell d) didn't fall

14 The teacher .... happy if we learnt this lesson by heart.
a) would have been b) will be
c) would be d) was

15 If he had tried harder, he .... in achieving his ambition. Unfortunately, he didn't achieve his ambition.

a) will succeed
b) wouldn't have succeed
c) would succeed
d) would have succeeded

16 If I .... a car, I would have to give you a lift to the airport.

a) had
b) had had
c) have
d) was having

17 If I hadn't overslept, I .... on time.

a) will have been
b) would have been
c) would go
d) will be

18 Ali would act in the school play if he .... good at acting.

a) had been
b) were
c) will be
d) would be

19 If I had had my mobile phone yesterday, I .... you.

a) would contact
b) will contact
c) would have contacted
d) contacted

20 They .... on time if they hadn't missed the train.

a) will have arrived
b) would arrive
c) might have arrived
d) will arrive

21 If I hadn't worked hard yesterday, I .... tired and gone to bed early.

ادارة الفيوم التعليمية

a) wouldn't have been
b) would be
c) wouldn't be
d) will be

22 If he .... at hospital, I'd have to visit him, but he isn't. الباجور المنوفية

a) were
b) has been
c) had been
d) is

23 If I .... my car, I would have a lot of money. مدرسة الشهيد عبدالمنعم رياض محافظة المنوفية

a) sell
b) will sell
c) had sold
d) sold

24 If they .... well, they would have passed the exam. ادارة شرق شبرا التعليمية القليوبية

a) studied
b) have studied
c) had studied
d) study

25 If Ahmed had read that book, he .... what happened at the end.

ادارة أوسيم التعليمية - الجيزة

a) knew
b) will know
c) would know
d) would have known

26 If you .... to learn a musical instrument, you have to practise.

a) will want
b) wanted
c) want
d) had wanted

27 If the weather was nice today, we .... out for a walk.

a) would have gone
b) go
c) will go
d) would go

28 One answer of the following is grammatically correct:

a) If you want to buy a good carpet, you should go to Al-Hussein Market.
b) If you want to buy a good carpet, goes to Al-Hussein Market.
c) If you want to buy a good carpet, you would go to Al-Hussein Market.
d) If you want to buy a good carpet, will go to Al-Hussein Market.

29 One answer of the following is grammatically incorrect:

a) If we boil water to 100ºC, it evaporates.
b) If water is boiled to 100ºC, it evaporates.
c) When water boils at 100ºC, it evaporates.
d) If water boils at 100ºC, it is evaporated.

30 One answer gives the same meaning to the following sentence:
If Ahmed lived in a big city, he could find a job easily.

a) Ahmed didn't live in a big city, so he can't find a job.
b) Ahmed doesn't live in a big city, so he can't find a job.
c) Ahmed won't live in a big city, so he won't find a job.
d) Ahmed didn't live in a big city, so he found a job.

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

31 If they build an airport near us, we .... travel easily.

a) will be able to
b) should
c) must
d) have to
e) can

32 If Hossam .... for the job, they .... him.

a) applies/would choose
b) applied/might choose
c) had applied/might have chosen
d) applied/ might have chosen
e) applied/will choose

33 If you finish early, ...

a) you will help me.
b) help me.
c) helped me.
d) will you help me?
e) should you help me?

34 If he had enough money, he .... the car.

a) would have bought
b) might buy
c) will have bought
d) might have bought
e) could buy

35 If he .... this book, he .... a lot of knowledge.

a) read/can get
b) will read/can get
c) read/ would be able to get
d) reads/ will get
e) read/ will be able to get



Unit 6
Lessons 1 & 2

Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The Cancer Hospital has collected 200,000 pounds through online ....
a) sales b) profits c) losses d) donations

2 Since mother helped us before, it's .... to assume that she'll help us again.
a) logical b) legal c) movable d) legislative

3 The students .... the P.E. teacher to play with them, but he knows nothing about football.
a) regretted b) begged c) managed d) regarded

4 Leila .... her friend Mariam like one of the family.
a) cured b) healed c) treated d) advised

5 The dentist has her .... sterilise the instruments يعقم الأدوات every day.
a) patient b) assistant c) system d) foe

6 The price of a room in this hotel is 300 pounds .... breakfast.
a) consisting b) including c) containing d) enclosing

7 Although he practised hard, he couldn't win the ...., but came fourth.
a) champion b) path c) race d) passage

8 My uncle feels really .... after the death of his wife and he is always sad.
a) alone b) alike c) happy d) relieved

9 If her dreams .... true, she would have been happy.
a) comes b) came c) had come d) hadn't come

10 If I have a headache, I .... a cup of tea. It always makes me feel better.
a) drink b) will drink c) would drink d) drank

11 We .... you more often if you didn't live so far away.
a) saw b) will see c) would see d) had seen

12 Ehab .... fishing if he finishes all his work before the weekend.
a) will go b) had gone c) would go d) is going

13 If my brother had a lot of money, he .... it all on music and clothes.
a) would spend b) will spend c) would have spent d) spends

14 If he read the questions slowly, he .... them.
a) will understand b) would understand
c) understands d) can understand

15 If Nihal watches horror movies, she .... at night.
a) will sleep b) wouldn't sleep c) does not sleep d) hadn't slept

16 When you put too much water in rice while cooking, it .... sticky as usual!
a) would get b) will get c) gets d) got

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In the wild, it often comes down to predator and prey. There is the hunter and there is the hunted. Organisms[1] want to stay alive. They hide or escape from animals who would like to eat them. So how do they do it? They adapt to their environment.

One very helpful adaptation is called camouflage[2]. You may have been surprised at some time by an animal that used camouflage. It blended into its surroundings so well that you nearly missed seeing it. Its colouring, markings[3] or other physical features allowed it to blend into the area around it.

Animals use camouflage to fool a predator. The hidden animal is not seen when a predator scans an area looking for food. Wild goats, for example, have coats that make them look invisible among rocks. A baby giraffe's coat helps it hide among the grass and trees. A chameleon is a lizard that will change colours depending on the surface it is on.

Camouflage often works the other way around, too. Predators can use camouflage to trap[4] their prey. A predator can attack unexpectedly an animal it wants to eat. The prey animal doesn't see danger because the predator blends into the habitat. A leopard's spotted coat helps it blend into the background and sneak up on its prey.

Another popular adaptation is mimicry. Mimicry is when an animal has the physical characteristics that make it look like another animal or a plant. Some moths[5] look like wasps[6]. Predators that don't like wasps will think the moth is a wasp and will not eat it.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Camouflage often works to help ....
- **a)** the prey
- **b)** the predator
- **c)** the prey and the predator
- **d)** the wasp

2 What helps the animal to blend into the area around it is its ....
- **a)** physical features
- **b)** size and strength
- **c)** intelligence and wisdom
- **d)** fear of the predator

3 If a chameleon was on a green leaf, what colour would it be?
- **a)** Brown.
- **b)** Blue.
- **c)** Yellow.
- **d)** Green.

4 When animals want to look like something a predator doesn't want to eat, they use ....
- **a)** camouflage
- **b)** mimicry
- **c)** wasps
- **d)** moths

(1) كائنات حية
(2) تمويه
(3) علامات مميزة
(4) يوقع بـ
(5) فراشة
(6) دبور

5 When creatures want to stay alive, they ....

a) eat their predators
b) hide themselves
c) adapt to their environment
d) change their colours

6 It may be a surprise when an animal uses camouflage as it ....

a) can't be seen
b) flies away
c) looks bigger
d) shrinks

7 The chameleon can change its colour according to ....

a) the predator
b) the surroundings
c) the weather
d) the availability

8 Thanks to its coat, ... can hide and eat its prey easily.

a) the moth
b) the chameleon
c) the wasp
d) the leopard

A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Happiness is more than a good feeling or a yellow smiley face. It's the feeling of truly enjoying your life, and the desire to make the very best of it.

....

....

2. Some people believe that money can make you happy. When we have experiences and buy things, using money, this can make us happy.

....

....

3. Literature[1] can play a vital[2] role in solving many social problems. That's because it is one of the best means to portray[3] these problems and look for solutions for them.

....

....

4. Mass media affects our life greatly. It has become one of the main instruments of political change. So, it is widely used in all political campaigns[4].

....

....

5. Retirement[5] age can be considered a time of rest for a lot of people. However, many old people want to continue working for social and financial[6] reasons.

....

....

6. Teenagers usually don't agree with their elders and do not like trusting their secrets with them. Most of them resort to their friends for this.

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- صورت⁽٧⁾ قصص نجيب محفوظ المجتمع المصرى بكل قيمه ومشاكله، فى الوقت الذى عاش فيه وقد حصل على جائزة نوبل بسبب تأثيره الكبير فى الأدب العربى.

....

....

٢- تساعد الحكومة الشباب من خريجى كلية الزراعة عن طريق منحهم مساحات أرض فى مناطق مختلفة بحيث يمكنهم استصلاحها⁽٨⁾ وبدء مشروعهم الخاص.

....

....

٣- يعانى الكثير من الناس من غلاء المعيشة فى العالم كله، فيجب على أفراد المجتمع العمل على زيادة الإنتاج وتغيير عاداتهم الاستهلاكية⁽٩⁾ لمواجهة الأزمات⁽١٠⁾ المختلفة والزيادة المستمرة فى الأسعار.

....

....

٤- تمثل الجامعات المصدر الرئيسى لإمداد المجتمع بما يحتاجه من علماء وباحثين⁽١١⁾ فى المجالات المختلفة، لذا يجب توفير الدعم المادى⁽١٢⁾ اللازم لتطويرها بشكل مستمر.

....

....

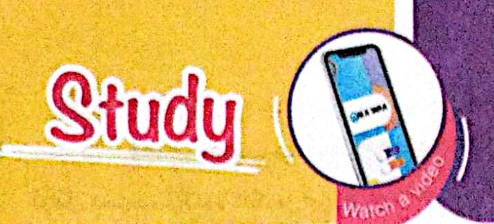
) Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"How can mass media spread awareness towards health problems and controlling them? Think of the coronavirus as an example."

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. — I used the right structure. — I used a topic sentence. — I wrote the conclusion. — I used the right punctuation.

(1) أدب
(2) رئيسى
(3) يصور
(4) حملات
(5) التقاعد
(6) مادى
(7) depicted/portrayed
(8) reclamation
(9) consuming habits
(10) crises
(11) scholars
(12) financial support





Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

Key Phrases

bring back	يعيد ذكريات	hang out with	يقضي وقتا مع
fall out *	يتوقف عن التعامل بلطف/يتعارك مع	keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال
get into	يبدأ الاستمتاع	lose touch	يفقد الاتصال
get on with	ينسجم مع		

* I never fall out with my elder brother; we share our objects easily.

Vocabulary on Listening

apparently (adv)	بوضوح	improve (v) (d)	يحسن
caption (n)	شرح/عنوان لصورة فى جريدة أو مجلة	magazine (n)	مجلة
chat (v) (ted) (n)	يدردش/دردشة	mall (n)	مركز تسوق
close (adj)	قريب/مقرب	memory (n)	ذاكرة/ذكرى
go back (v)	يرجع/يعود	prompt (n)	مثير/محفز
guess (v) (ed)	يخمن/يظن	wish (v) (ed) (n)	يتمنى/أمنية
ignore (v) (d)	يتجاهل		

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

amount (n)	كمية	necklace (n)	قلادة
conversation (n)	محادثة	opposite (adj)	عكس/مقابل/مواجه لـ
friendship (n)	صداقة	organise (v) (d)	ينظم
high school (n)	مدرسة ثانوية	own (v) (ed)	يمتلك
leader (n)	قائد	pocket (n)	جيب

polite (adj)	مؤدب	rain (n) (v) (ed)	مطر/تمطر
prep school (n)	مدرسة إعدادية	relationship (n)	علاقة
pretty (adj)	جميل	reunion (n)	إعادة جمع (اتحاد)/لم الشمل
primary school (n)	مدرسة ابتدائية	unusual (adj)	غير معتاد

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

according to	طبقًا لـ	get worse	يسوء
as usual	كالمعتاد	keep attention on	يستمر فى الاهتمام بـ
feel sad	يشعر بالحزن	share sad moments	يشارك اللحظات الحزينة
feel uncomfortable with	يشعر بعدم الراحة مع	take an interest in	لديه اهتمام بـ
feel sorry	يشعر بالأسى	go past	يمر بـ
argue with	يجادل مع	interested in	مهتم بـ
bad for	سيئ لـ	pick up	يلتقط

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
appear*	يظهر	appearance	ظهور/مظهر	apparent	واضح/ظاهر
ignore	يتجاهل	ignorance	جهل	ignorant	جاهل
improve	يحسن	improvement	تحسين	improved	محسن
memorise	يحفظ	memory	ذاكرة	memorable	بارز/جدير بالذكر

* - The moon appears in the sky.
- The appearance of the moon is impressive.
- The moon is very apparent among the clouds.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
apparently	بوضوح	obviously/clearly	vaguely/uncertain بشكل مبهم/غير مؤكد
close	قريب/مقرب	nearby/intimate	far/distant بعيد
guess	يخمن/يظن	suppose/presume	question/wonder يتساءل
memory	ذكرى	remembrance/ memorisation	forgetfulness/ignorance نسيان/تجاهل
organise	ينظم	arrange/coordinate	scatter/confuse يبعثر/يربك
prompt	مثير/محفز	hint/motive	hindrance إعاقة
relationship	علاقة	relation/connection	separation/disconnection انفصال

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

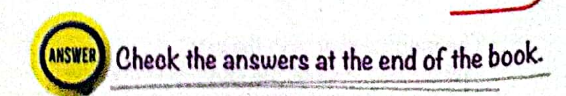
1 Dalia has never really .... on with the new student in the class.
a) went b) got c) came d) received

2 My friend's .... isn't good with her brother, but she's very close to her sister.
a) relationship b) dispute c) race d) cure

3 I used to hang .... with my old friends when I was at college.
a) on b) in c) out d) at

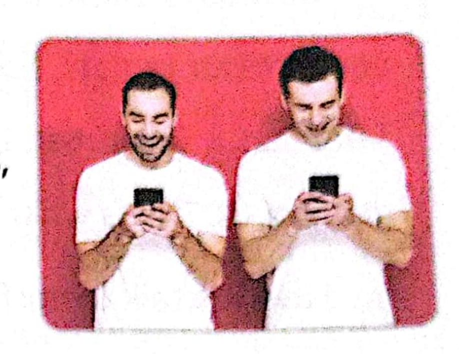
4 I .... that you'll be looking for a new job after leaving the old one.
a) decline b) guess c) detest d) object

5 Egypt does its best to .... its industry to limit our imports and save hard currency.
a) prove b) approve c) disapprove d) improve



Reading Text (1) (Workbook)

How are your friendships?



Have you ever met a friend to spend time with them and, when you're in the middle of a conversation[1], when you're they start looking at their phone? When that happens, many people feel ignored and upset. And the problem may be getting worse because over 81% of Egyptian teenagers between the ages of 15 and 17 now own[2] a phone.

Studies have shown that just having a mobile phone out while having a conversation makes friends feel uncomfortable with each other. And many people think that when someone is using their phone, they are not being polite[3] and not really listening. So, using a phone like this can damage even good friendships[4].

However, there are ways to have a phone without losing your friends. Understanding the problem is important. So, the next time you are going to pick up[5] your phone while talking to a friend, think about what you are doing and stop. Is your phone really more important than your friend? Perhaps you should keep your attention on the person you are talking to. And if a friend ignores[6] you, tell them about it because they may not understand how it makes you feel.

So, if you want to be a kind and honest friend, keep your phone in your pocket[7] and your eyes on your friendship.

(1) محادثة
(2) يمتلك
(3) مؤدب
(4) صداقات
(5) يلتقط
(6) يتجاهل
(7) جيب

How can mobile phones affect our relationship with our friends?

Did you ever do something in the past that you regret now?

Listening Text (1)



Presenter:

In today's show, we're going back in time and looking at some of our regrets. Now I've got a message from Tarek. And Tarek has a story that, I think, will bring back[1] memories for many of us. This is what he says ...

I used to talk to my family and play with my brothers after school. I also used to phone my grandparents and my cousins. But then I got into[2] using social media more.

(1) يعيد ذكريات

(2) بدأ الاستمتاع

(3) انسجم مع

(4) قضى وقتا مع

(5) فقد الاتصال

(6) يتوقف عن التعامل بلطف

(7) يبقى على اتصال

I started using social media to talk to my friends after school too. We all liked the same things. It was fun and we all got on with[3] each other. Sometimes I'd hang out with[4] them online for hours chatting.

I guess I lost touch with[5] my cousins and my grandparents a bit. I still saw them sometimes, of course, but I didn't call them. I didn't tell my grandparents about my day at school.

But when my friends started falling out[6] with each other online, I stopped chatting with them, too. Now, I'm sorry. I shouldn't have ignored my family. I wish I'd kept in touch[7] with my cousins more. I should have called my grandparents, and I wish I could change what happened.

Sadly, this kind of thing seems to happen so often these days. I guess, when we're getting into something new, we can forget to take an interest in the people who really care about us. Thank you for sharing your story with us, Tarek.

Why did Tarek change his mind about using social media much and ignoring his family?

Do you have many friends?

Listening Text (2)

Judy: Hoda was my best friend. We'd always hang out together at school. We made each other laugh a lot and we were very close.

Sometimes, we'd hang out together after school as well. We'd listen to music, look at magazines(1) and chat(2) for hours.

One weekend, we went shopping at the mall(3). We had a great time as usual(4), but that was when she showed me her new smartphone.

Apparently(5), it was a really good phone and Hoda couldn't stop using it all the time. She got really into social media and made lots of new friends online.

(1) مجلات
(2) يدردش
(3) مركز تسوق
(4) كالمعتاد
(5) بوضوح

What did Hoda do with her smartphone?

Do you have photos of your childhood?

Listening Text (3) (Workbook)

Hoda : Hey, Lamia! Have you seen this from Ola? She's posted some old photos from when we were in prep school.

Lamia: Really? Let's see. But, I don't remember an Ola in our class.

Hoda : Yes, you do. She used to sit opposite(1) you in class and you would always fall out when we played any game together because you both wanted to be the leaders.

Lamia: Ahhh, yes. I remember now. I shouldn't have argued with her so much because she was a kind person really.

Hoda : Look! Here she is in the photo.

Lamia: Ahh, wow!

Hoda : ... and look at us! Oh, no way! Just look at your hair!

Lamia: Oh, that's terrible! And what about your dress!

Hoda : Oh no! Not that dress! It brings back so many bad memories(2). That was the dress I was wearing when I lost my favourite necklace(3). I wish I hadn't taken it to school that day.

Lamia: But the necklace was very pretty(4) and if you hadn't taken it to school, Samira wouldn't have spoken to you about it and you two wouldn't have got on so well!

Hoda : That's true I guess, and we are still very good friends now.

(1) مواجه لـ
(2) ذكريات
(3) قلادة
(4) جميل

Lamia: And look! There's the old group of friends we used to hang out with. I was sad when they moved away to go to high school[5] and really wish we hadn't lost touch with them.

Hoda : Yes, we had some great times together and if we had stayed in touch, we would have been able to organise[6] a school reunion[7]. I wish we hadn't left prep school! We had a lot less homework!

Hoda : That's true! Perhaps we can keep in touch with them on social media.

Lamia: Good idea! Let's post a message asking if anyone knows anything about them.

(5) مدرسة ثانوية

(6) ينظم

(7) إعادة جمع/إعادة اتحاد

What is the bad memory of Hoda's dress?

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

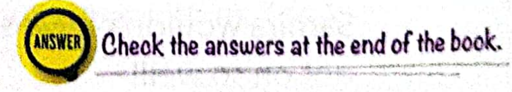
1. On Mother's Day, I bought a gold .... for my lovely mum.
   a) machine b) necklace
   c) chain d) series

2. It's impolite to .... your friends' speech and look at your phone.
   a) attend b) listen
   c) increase d) ignore

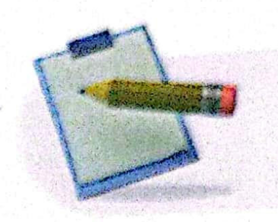
3. European countries have a tense .... with Russia due to the last war.
   a) relationship b) dispute
   c) race d) game

4. Going to Giza .... back fond memories of the university.
   a) brings b) gets
   c) dates d) repeats

5. Many world .... are going to meet to discuss the environmental problems in Sharm El-Sheikh Climate Conference next November.
   a) armies b) enemies
   c) fighters d) leaders



Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

bring back يعيد ذكريات
- to make you remember

fall out يتوقف عن التعامل بلطف/يتعارك مع
- to stop being friendly

get into يبدأ الاستمتاع
- to start enjoying

get on with ينسجم مع
- to make progress with a particular activity

hang out with يقضي وقتا مع
- to spend time with

keep in touch with يبقى على اتصال
- to continue to communicate with

lose touch يفقد الاتصال
- to stop communicating

Notes on Vocabulary

1

Word	Example
memory ذاكرة/ذكرى (شيء معنوى غير ملموس)	▸ My grandfather suffers from memory loss. ▸ He has lots of happy memories of his stay in Sharm El-Sheikh.
souvenir تذكار (شيء مادى يذكر برحلة/حدث)	▸ I bought a model of the Eiffel Tower as a souvenir of Paris.
anniversary ذكرى سنوية	▸ October 2019 was the 25th anniversary of our parents' marriage.

2

Word	Example
title عنوان رئيسى فى جريدة أو مجلة لمقال أو خبر/عنوان كتاب.	▸ The titles of the main newspaper articles are usually printed in red capital letters.
subtitle ١- عنوان فرعى (تحت عنوان رئيسى)/ عنوان فرعى لكتاب. ٢- ترجمة لفيلم أو فيديو تظهر مكتوبة أسفل الصورة.	▸ The subtitle of Taha Hussein's *Al Ayam* is "A personal autobiography". ▸ I watched a French documentary in English subtitles about the First World War.
caption تعليق مكتوب فوق أو تحت صورة مطبوعة أو منشورة.	▸ The photo of the accident was published with the caption "Catastrophe" under it.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

▸ Have you ever met a friend to spend time with them ....

- لاحظ استخدام ضمير الجمع (them) للإشارة إلى الاسم (friend) لتشمل he/she.

▸ .... while having a conversation makes friends feel uncomfortable with each other.

- نستخدم صيغة المصدر (verb + ing) بعد أداة الربط (while) إذا لم يتبعها فاعل.

▸ However, there are ways to have a phone without losing your friends.

- نستخدم صيغة (verb + ing) بعد كل حروف الجر ومنها (without).

▸ I stopped chatting with them, too.

- نستخدم صيغة (verb + ing) بعد الفعل (stop) بمعنى «يتوقف عن». أما إذا كانت بمعنى «يتوقف لكى» فيتبعها (المصدر + to).

▸ But, I don't remember an Ola in our class.

- لاحظ استخدام أداة النكرة (an) قبل الاسم بمعنى (شخص ما يدعى).

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The doctor advised my father to stop .... because of some heart problems.
a) smoke b) to smoke
c) smoking d) smoked

2 Weakness or loss of .... is a natural stage of old age.
a) memory b) souvenir
c) memorial d) anniversary

3 The news of the accident was the front page .... of most newspapers.
a) address b) title
c) speech d) talk

4 My sister spends hours on a .... with her friends on WhatsApp application.
a) chat b) murmur
c) rumour d) conversation

5 The teacher showed us a group of pictures and asked us to think of a/an .... for each one of them.
a) title b) address
c) caption d) rank

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the



Vocabulary Exercises

After we memorised the new vocabulary and read the notes, we need to practise. I think number one will be (a), do you agree?

Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 The two neighbours .... out over the place to park their cars.
a) fell b) crossed c) became d) rose

2 We .... on well enough, but we're not really close friends.
a) give b) get c) take d) go

3 They were friends in college, but then they moved to different cities and .... touch.
a) replaced b) removed c) stayed d) lost

4 The young man spent a couple of days .... out with his old friends as part of their vacation.
a) changing b) hanging c) returning d) moving

5 We were surprised when their .... happy marriage ended after only two years.
a) unlikely b) unfortunately c) untruly d) apparently

6 The .... on the picture says, "This year's contest winners."
a) caption b) title c) subtitle d) address

7 It is not advisable to .... with other people about your personal life on the internet.
a) fight b) chat c) quarrel d) reverse

8 Can you .... the number of guests who will come to the part?
a) think b) guess c) disagree d) agree

9 As a teacher, I never .... my students' questions even if they seem to be unimportant.
a) assist b) welcome c) ignore d) apply

10 One of the ways to .... your English is to practise it with your friends at school.
a) prove b) remove c) move d) improve

11 Grandfather suffers from a weak .... due to his age and illness.
a) souvenir b) anniversary c) memorial d) memory

12 The conductor said that we still had a/an .... of time before the train left.
a) quality b) account c) amount d) adjective

13 President Sadat was a respected Egyptian .... who made great achievements.
a) officer b) leader c) diplomat d) secretary

14 Don't try to .... up your phone while talking to a friend.
a) hold b) raise c) move d) pick

15 The .... between Arab countries should always be strong because they have common enemies.
a) debate b) relationship c) argument d) quarrel

16 Mr Sameh has always dreamed of a/an .... to work and stay with his son who lives in America.
a) reunion b) separation c) migration d) invitation

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

17 The bad weather ruined the party. The verb "ruin" can be the opposite of the verb "................".
a) destroy b) organise c) damage d) distract

18 The photographs brought .... many pleasant memories.
a) about b) in c) back d) for

19 Social media websites help you .... your attention on your friends' affairs.
a) lose b) keep c) miss d) have

20 Despite her problems, she carried on working .... usual.
a) as b) in c) at d) on

21 She's always arguing .... her sister about sharing their clothes.
a) on b) for c) at d) with

22 The school bus goes .... many students' houses on the way to school.
a) past b) for c) inside d) into

23 The scientist had never been greatly concerned with her ....
a) appear b) appearance c) appeared d) apparent

24 A good teacher should never make his students feel ....
a) ignore b) ignorance c) ignoring d) ignored

25 The book includes helpful hints for inexperienced cooks. The word "hint" is a synonym of the word "................".
a) forecast b) reserve c) conservation d) prompt

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

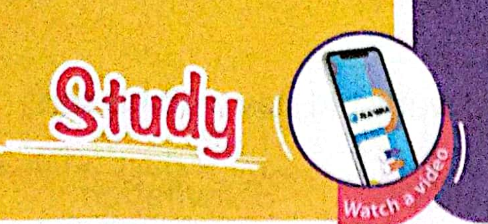
26 He began to lose his memory as he grew older. The synonyms of the word "memory" are ....
a) remembrance b) souvenir c) memorial d) amnesia e) memorization

27 The doctors fear that our grandfather's health condition will .... worse as he is very old.
a) become b) turn c) get d) fall e) pick

28 I usually buy my clothes at the shopping .... near our house because of the variety of shops in it.
a) theatre b) pharmacy c) gym d) mall e) centre

29 The player .... a cold and he missed the final match yesterday.
a) lost b) had c) caught d) treated e) cured

30 Don't get too close to the fire. The antonyms of the adjective "close" are ....
a) near b) far c) happy d) distant e) nearly





Lessons 3 & 4

B Language

Important Notes



Wish/If only + past perfect	**Regret in the past** ندم فى الماضى	▸ I wish/If only I hadn't forgotten my book. The teacher was angry. ▸ I wish I had arrived early. I didn't see my uncle.
Wish/If only + past simple	**Wish about present situation** أمنية فى المضارع	▸ I wish/If only I were/was taller to be able to play basketball. (I'm not tall.) ▸ I wish I had enough money to buy this dress.
Wish/If only + would/could + inf.	**To express a strong desire that we believe is unlikely or impossible.** للتعبير عن رغبة قوية نعتقد أنها غير محتملة أو مستحيلة.	▸ I wish/If only they would stop talking. ▸ I wish I could speak Turkish.

- عنـد التعبيـر عن الرغبـة والأمنية نرجع بالزمن درجة إلى الوراء، فلو أردنا التعبير عن المضارع نسـتخدم الماضى، ولو أردنا الماضى نستخدم الماضى التام، ولا نستخدم شكل المضارع بعد Wish/If only.

- He's ill. He wishes he weren't ill. (Present)
- I overslept yesterday. I wish I hadn't overslept yesterday. (Past)

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I wish we .... enough money to buy a car.
   a) were having b) have c) had d) will have
2. She wishes she .... to her teacher's advice. She didn't succeed.
   a) listened b) had listened c) listens d) would listen
3. I wish the school holidays .... longer.
   a) will be b) are c) have been d) were
4. Ahmed is angry with me. I wish I .... to his wedding last week.
   a) had gone b) went c) would go d) will go
5. I regret going to the final match. I wish I .... there.
   a) didn't go b) hadn't gone c) wouldn't go d) won't go


Check the answers at the end of the book

Alternatives to using "If" بدائل (If)

هناك تعبيرات يمكن أن نستخدمها محل If وتؤدى نفس المعنى:

1 Providing/Provided that/On condition that/As (So) long as + جملة

- You can borrow my pen if/provided that/on condition that/as long as you give it back.

لا تحل هذه الكلمات محل If فى الحالة الثالثة لأنها تعبر عن المضارع والمستقبل فقط.

2 Suppose/Supposing/Imagine (that) + جملة

- Supposing/Imagine (that) you found a job in Cairo, what would you do?
- Supposing it rains, will you go for a picnic with him?

3 Unless + جملة مثبتة/Without + noun or v. + ing = If ... not

Unless لو لم	+ فعل الشرط (جملة مثبتة)	, جواب الشرط (جملة مثبتة أو منفية)
Unless	he had phoned me,	I wouldn't have visited him.

We can't enter the building	if we don't wear a helmet.
	unless we wear a helmet.
	without wearing a helmet.

If they hadn't had a ticket,	they wouldn't have been able to watch the match.
Unless they had had a ticket,	
Without having a ticket,	

4 In case of/In the event of + noun = If + جملة

- Open the door in case of (if there is) an emergency.

5 In case = If

- نستخدم in case بدون of وتساوى If فى شكل الجملة وتختلف عنها فى المعنى، لأنها تعنى فعل شيء لتجنب مشكلة محتملة فى المستقبل.

- Take this money in case you need some. فى حالة/ربما
- He took two photos in case one of them didn't come out.
- Chain the bike to the gate in case it is stolen. (not if)

6) But for + noun = Without = If ... not

- But for his advice, we would have got lost.

7) Should/Were/Had + subject + verb

- تستخدم were/had/should بدلًا من if كأفعال مساعدة بعدها فاعل ثم فعل أساسى.
- تستخدم should بدلًا من if فى الحالتين الأولى والثانية ويأتى بعدها المصدر.

- Should the plane leave on time, I'll arrive in Paris at noon.
- Should he fail to be elected, it would be a great disappointment for him.

8) Were + subject + noun/adjective
Were + subject + (to + Inf.)

- تستخدم Were بدلًا من If فى الحالة الثانية فقط، ويأتى بعدها إما اسم وإما صفة أو (to + inf).

- Were I you, I wouldn't tell anyone about it.
- Were the builders to finish the work to schedule, they would be rewarded.

- تستخدم Had بدلًا من If فى الحالة الثالثة.

Had + subject + P.P.

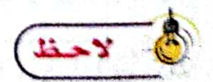
- Had he advised me, I'd have passed my exams easily.

- فى النفى نضع not بعد الفاعل.

- Had he not advised me, I wouldn't have passed my exams easily.

9) If it weren't for/If it hadn't been for = Without

- If it weren't for the underground, I would reach my work late. (حالة 2)
- If it hadn't been for my father's help, I wouldn't have got a job easily. (حالة 3)



If/Unless + v. + ing + verb

- يجب مراعاة أن (v. + ing) يمكن أن يكون فاعلًا فيأتى بعد If أو Unless كالآتى:

- If studying online saves time, I'll download the lessons and study them at home.

Check Point 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 .... I had been so tired, I might have realised what was happening.

a) If | b) Without
c) In case of | d) Unless

2 .... him today, he would know what happened.

a) If she meets | b) Were she to meet
c) Unless she met | d) Had she met

3 .... training well, our team wouldn't be able to win the match.

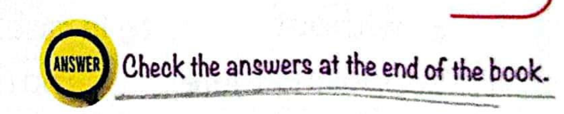
a) Provided that | b) On condition that
c) Without | d) Imagine that

4 He took some food with him .... there were no restaurants in the area.

a) in case | b) if
c) unless | d) but for

5 .... your help, I would have failed.

a) In case of | b) Provided that
c) Without | d) Unless





- If you would like to go to the stadium, I .... with you.

a) will go | b) would go
c) would have gone | d) went



Language Exercises

Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Practice is the best way to apply what we have learnt.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Visitors are welcomed, ... they don't make troubles.
a) without b) unless c) as long as d) provides

2 .... an emergency landing, the pilot will inform the airport authorities.
a) If b) Unless c) In case of d) Provided that

3 .... he been cleverer, he wouldn't have made that silly mistake.
a) Should b) Hadn't c) If d) Had

4 I won't do anything .... you agree.
a) without b) in case of c) unless d) but for

5 .... she invited me to her birthday, I would have attended it.
a) If b) Unless c) Had d) Where

6 Were Covid-19 .... again, hospitals would now be ready for it.
a) to reappear b) reappeared c) be reappeared d) to reappearing

7 You can go out with your friends .... you come back before midnight.
a) without b) in case of c) but for d) as long as

8 Supposing there .... no rivers on earth, how would we get water for drinking?
a) were b) had been c) are d) have been

9 If it .... your ambitions, we wouldn't have reached that great position.
a) weren't for b) hadn't been for c) wasn't d) had been

10 We will be at work in time .... the bus comes soon.
a) unless b) provided that c) without d) in case of

11 .... his many crimes, he wouldn't have been sent to prison.
a) But for b) In case of c) Suppose d) Provided that

12 Should she .... more information about Hany's situation, she would help him.
a) had b) have c) to have d) had had

13 .... having a car, we would have found it difficult to get there in time.
a) If b) In case of c) Without d) Provided that

14 They wish they .... speak French.
a) could b) can c) will d) may

15 If it .... for medical staff's great efforts, many people might die.
a) haven't been b) hadn't been c) hadn't d) weren't

16 You must take your umbrella .... it rains.

a) in case b) unless c) in case of d) without

17 .... your generosity, I would have been in big trouble.

a) But for b) In case of c) Provided that d) Unless

18 I'll talk to the press .... they don't reveal my identity.

a) unless b) on condition that c) without d) in case of

19 I wish I .... more revision this year. I didn't get high marks.

a) did b) could do c) would do d) had done

20 If only I .... more time for my hobbies. I'm very busy.

a) have b) had c) had had d) would have

21 We wish we .... the matter seriously and phoned the doctor from the beginning. إدارة غرب الزقازيق

a) took b) taken c) had taken d) have taken

22 I wish you .... throw the litter on the floor. الشرقية - مدرسة الزقازيق الثانوية بنات

a) would b) wouldn't c) could d) won't

23 .... he been invited, he would have come to the party. المنوفية - إدارة قويسنا التعليمية

a) Should b) Had c) Were d) Would

24 .... they had much time, they would have studied better. القاهرة - إدارة مدينة نصر

a) If b) Were c) Had d) Have

25 Were you .... too much, you would be fat. الشرقية - إدارة ديرب نجم

a) eat b) to eat c) ate d) had eaten

26 "If I had quit my job, I would not have enough money to live in Cairo".
This means ....

a) she quit her job and does not have enough money now
b) she did not quit her job and she has enough money
c) she intends to quit her job as she doesn't have enough money
d) she doesn't intend to quit her job although she doesn't have enough mone

27 One answer to the following sentence is correct:
"If I .... enough money, I .... around Europe. But, unfortunatel
I am broke."

a) had/would backpack
b) had had/would backpack
c) had/would have backpacked
d) have/will backpack

28 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:

a) Unless I were a doctor, I couldn't help you.
b) Unless I were a doctor, I could help you.
c) Unless I weren't a doctor, I couldn't help you.
d) Unless I weren't a doctor, I could help you.

29 One of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect:

a) I will lend you my car if you promise to return it today.
b) I will lend you my car unless you promise to return it today.
c) I won't lend you my car unless you promise to return it today.
d) I will lend you my car as long as you promise to return it today.

30 Choose one correct answer to the following question:
What .... if you .... enough money?

a) did you do/had
b) had you done/had had
c) would you have done/had had
d) would you do/had had

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

31 The door .... unless you ....

a) won't open/push
b) doesn't open/will push
c) isn't open/push
d) wouldn't open/pushed
e) won't open/will push

32 You can't take my car .... carefully.

a) if you drive
b) unless you drive
c) without driving
d) in case you drive
e) provided you drive

33 Hossam can get high marks .... he does his best

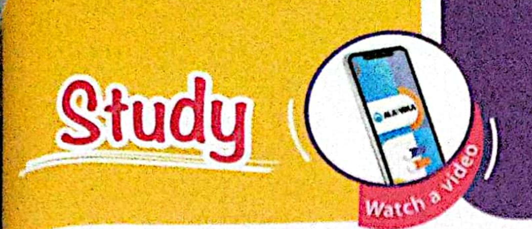
a) In case of
b) without
c) provided
d) if
e) unless

34 .... his bravery , the house would have been burnt.

a) Without
b) In case of
c) Provided
d) if
e) But for

35 .... emergency, I will call the police.

a) Were there
b) If there is
c) In case of
d) Had there been
e) Unless there is



Lessons 3 & 4

C Communication Skills

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.





(I) Language Skills

Learning from mistakes

The most important life lessons we will ever learn will be from the bad decisions we make. Time and experience can be excellent teachers when you actually learn a lesson from your poor decisions. Experience comes from our way of living, understanding and the adjustments we make. It also comes from suffering, agony عذاب and the ordeals مِحَن we are afflicted by مبتلى بها.

We need to learn from our mistakes so that we do not run the risk of repeating them. We must develop the wisdom and sense to make good decisions and choices. Good judgment حكم will only develop if you truly learn from your mistakes. Unfortunately, for many people, it takes a few repeats of the same mistake to learn the lesson.

Good or bad, experiences are what help us learn lessons and form a better sense of judgment. Bad judgment seems to stick with us longer as a lesson learned because we really do not want to keep repeating it. Wisdom is the knowledge you can gain from making mistakes.

5 ways to turn your mistake into a valuable life lesson:

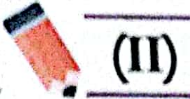
1. Acknowledge اعترف بـ Your Errors
2. Ask Yourself Tough قاسية Questions
3. Make a Plan
4. Make It Harder to Mess up
5. Create a List of Reasons Why You Don't Want to Make the Mistake Again

References

https://exploringyourmind.com/recognizing-mistakes-means-can-learn/

https://www.elitedaily.com/life/why-you-need-to-learn-from-your-mistakes

https://www.forbes.com/sites/amymorin/2017/07/17/5-ways-to-turn-your-mistake-into-a-valuable-life-lesson/#7f7b723a1c01



(II) Writing

Write an essay of about 180 words about something that you regret. Draw pictures with captions for your regret.

Last summer, I was going to travel to Rome for a business trip. The plane was at six o'clock a.m. I woke up very early so that I wouldn't be late for the plane. I took a taxi and I arrived at the airport at 4 o'clock an hour before the plane. I checked in and got ready for the plane. As it was still early for the plane, I decided to go to a cafe at the airport to have my coffee. I bought a big packet of biscuits to eat with the coffee.

The cafe was busy and I had to share a room with an old man. I had my handbag which I put on the table and went to bring my coffee to the counter. I returned back to the table. As I sat at the table, I saw the old man smiling at me. A packet of biscuits was on the table and I started to eat the first piece. Surprisingly, the old man took a piece, too. Each time I took a piece of biscuits, the old man took one. Soon, we ate all the pieces except for one piece left. The old man took it, cut it into two halves, took one half and gave me the other. I was very angry and I shouted at the old man very hard. However, the old man didn't say a word. He looked sad, then he left.

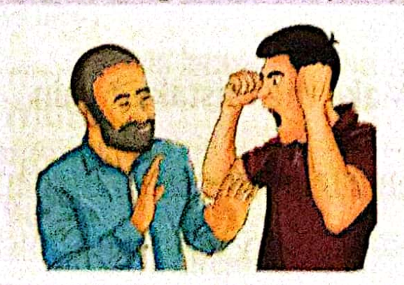
When I got on board the plane, I was surprised to see the old man on the same plane. I looked at him angrily and sat on my seat. I opened my handbag to take out a book I wanted to read on the plane. To my surprise, I found the packet of biscuits I bought. I forgot that I had put it in the bag before going to bring my coffee. The packet on the table belonged to the old man who didn't mind sharing it with me. Immediately, I went to the old man's seat and apologised to him. The man just smiled at me and said, "It's all right."



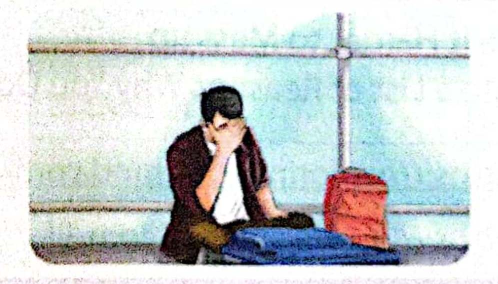
I am arriving at the airport.



I am sitting with the old man at the café.



I am shouting at the old man angrily.



I am finding the packet of biscuits in my handbag.

What can we learn from this embarrassing situation?

Test Yourself in 20 min



Unit 6
Lessons 3 & 4

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Staying at this hotel brought .... sweet memories of our honeymoon.
   a) about b) in c) back d) for
2. The two sisters .... out over who will wear the new dress to the party.
   a) fell b) crossed c) became d) rose
3. I felt embarrassed when my teacher .... my question and moved on to the next point.
   a) assisted b) welcomed c) ignored d) applied
4. I advised my son to .... his study well to get high marks in exams.
   a) organise b) recognise c) realise d) specialise
5. The doctor said that the old man .... died of a heart attack and it wasn't a murder.
   a) unlikely b) unfortunately c) luckily d) apparently
6. Mother always tells my little brother that it's not .... to talk with his mouth full.
   a) hasty b) rude c) polite d) greedy
7. My sister is really interested .... reading about the news of actors and actresses.
   a) at b) for c) in d) about
8. The two girls have had a long-standing .... since they were in primary school.
   a) conspiracy b) teenage c) childhood d) friendship
9. .... he had enough money, he wouldn't buy his needs.
   a) Without b) Unless c) If d) In case
10. .... knowing the truth, I wouldn't have called her.
    a) Without b) If c) Provided that d) Unless
11. If Mona .... someone the way to the museum, she would have known where to go.
    a) asked b) would ask c) asks d) had asked
12. If you need anything from the shop, I .... it for you.
    a) will get b) get c) would get d) got
13. It's too bad; Hany isn't with us. If he .... here, he .... the letter for us.
    a) had been/'d have translated b) is/will translate
    c) were/wouldn't translate d) were/could translate
14. .... the sun's disappearance, there would be no life on Earth.
    a) If b) Unless c) In case of d) Without
15. Were you .... harder, you'd get higher marks.
    a) worked b) to work c) had worked d) work
16. I will call her .... she wants to join us to the cinema.
    a) without b) unless c) in case d) but for

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You use energy every day. Energy is the ability to cause change. Any time you move, you are using energy. When you bounce a ball or ride a bike, you use energy from your body to make the ball or the bike move. Your parents cook food for you to eat. They use heat energy to change the food from raw to cooked. Not all energy is used as soon as you get it. Sometimes energy is stored to be used later. Stored energy can be chemical energy stored in a battery or in your body. It can also be potential energy. Potential energy is based on the position of the object. A ball at the top of a hill has potential energy. A soccer player standing ready to kick a ball has potential energy, too.

Energy of motion is also called kinetic energy. Potential energy converts, or changes into kinetic energy when the thing or person begins to move. When the ball starts rolling downhill, kinetic energy is at work. When the soccer player kicks the ball, kinetic energy is at work there, too. Energy often changes forms. When you switch on the light, electricity converts into light. When you eat, chemical energy from your food converts into thermal and mechanical energy that allows you to move and work.

When you switch on a cell phone, chemical energy from the cell phone's battery converts into sound energy and light energy.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Energy is ....

a) the ability to bounce a ball
b) the ability to cause change
c) the ability to ride a bike
d) the ability to switch on the light

2 The other meaning of "change into" from the passage is ....

a) bounce
b) kick
c) store
d) convert

3 Energy that is based on an object's position is called ....

a) potential energy
b) kinetic energy
c) thermal energy
d) mechanical energy

4 The antonym of the word "raw" is "..................................".

a) uncooked
b) fresh
c) cooked
d) natural

5 Kinetic energy is another term for the energy of ....

a) light
b) sound
c) bouncing
d) motion

6 When a person starts to move, ...

a) his motion energy turns into a kinetic one
b) his motion energy turns into a chemical one
c) his kinetic energy turns into a chemical one
d) his potential energy turns into a kinetic one

7 Which one is not mentioned in the passage?

a) The energy in a battery
b) The energy in a mobile phone
c) The energy in a basketball
d) The energy of heat

8 The best title for the passage is "..................................".

a) Types of Power
b) What is Energy?
c) Sports and Energy
d) Energy Consumption

A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Friendship is one of the best things in life as friends can give you all the help and support to do better in your life.

....

....

2. Experts warn us that using the phone for long hours can have serious effects on us. It can cause us physical and psychological problems.

....

....

3. We can solve many of our social problems if we teach our children to realise and change their bad mistakes. Parents and schools have a great role in this.

....

....

4. The Olympic Games are now a political question[1] as all athletes try hard to win so as to honour[2] their country. So, they may have lost their original meaning.

....

....

5. The scientific discoveries made in any country help in its development and progress. Science is also the power which can drive the wheel[3] of production in it.

....

....

6. The Ministry of Education must train[4] children on food safety through social studies lessons in the primary stage. This will help them in their later life.

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- يوجد الكثير من العيوب(٥) للتكنولوجيا، فبسبب ارتباط الشباب بأدوات التواصل الاجتماعى التكنولوجية، مثل: الكمبيوتر والتليفون المحمول، يفقد بعضهم وسائل الحوار مع باقى أفراد المجتمع.

....

....

٢- يقال إن سر النجاح فى الحياة هو أن يكون الإنسان مستعدًا عندما تأتيه الفرصة(٦)، وإذا لم يستغلها(٧) فقد لا تعود إليه مرة أخرى، لذا لابد من استغلال الفرص المتاحة.

....

....

٣- لا تؤثر البطالة(٨) فقط على الأفراد ولكن أيضًا على نمو البلد؛ حيث إن لها تأثيرًا سلبيًا على النمو الاجتماعى والاقتصادى للبلاد، لذا لابد أن نضع حدًا لها.

....

....

٤- للرياضة الكثير من الفوائد، فهى تساعد على تحسين مزاجنا(٩) وتخفيف التوتر؛ لذلك يعتقد الكثير من الأطباء النفسيين أنها أفضل طريقة لمحاربة الاكتئاب(١٠).

....

....

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Many people should be thanked due to their efforts towards us."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

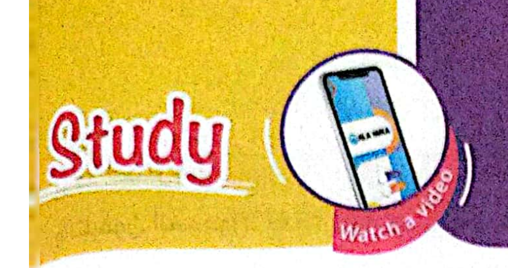
....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. | I used the right structure. | I used a topic sentence. | I wrote the conclusion. | I used the right punctuation.

(1) مسألة (2) يشرف (3) عجلة (4) يدرب (5) flaws (6) chance (7) exploit (8) unemployment (9) our mood (10) depression



King Lear
Act III, Scene ii

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

blanket (n)	بطانية	hut (n)	كوخ
burn (v)	يحرق	lightning (n)	برق
force (v) (d)	يجبر	philosopher (n)	فيلسوف
forgive (v)	يغفر/يسامح	rise (n)	ينهض
go into (v)	يدخل	stomach (n)	معدة
hard-hearted (adj)	قاسى القلب	straw (n)	قش
homeless (adj)	بلا مأوى/مشرد	torch (n)	كشاف/شعلة
horrible (adj)	رهيب	try v) (d)	يحاول

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

walk in someone's shoes	يكون فى موقف شخص ما	go around	يتجول
win the trust	يكسب الثقة	Keep away	يبتعد



King Lear Exercises

Act III, Scene ii

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 During the storm, a flash of .... lit up the sky and the children were afraid.
a) lightning b) thunder
c) wind d) tornado

2 My elder sister would never .... me for losing her ring.
a) prohibit b) forgive
c) allow d) expect

3 A .... is a small simple building with only one or two rooms.
a) palace b) resort
c) hut d) hall

4 Closing the factory was a/an .... decision as it led to the loss of jobs.
a) hearted b) easy-hearted
c) soft-hearted d) hard-hearted

5 All the animals in this small farm sleep on ....
a) sheets b) leather
c) straw d) skin

6 Our host, Mrs. Adams, insisted on .... from her chair to greet us.
a) raising b) rising
c) keeping d) staying

7 Despite the pain, the old woman .... herself to get out of bed.
a) forced b) delighted
c) punished d) pleased

8 The floods have killed hundreds of people and made thousands ....
a) speechless b) sightless
c) homeless d) useless

9 One of the main symbols of the Olympics is the Olympic .... which is lit all through the Games.
a) sword b) torch
c) stadium d) circle

10 Ahmed's brother lost his life in a/an .... train accident.
a) effective b) impressive
c) delightful d) horrible

Unit 6 Advanced & Open

General Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The businessman made a .... of cash on the sale of one of his companies.
   a) hole b) mountain c) pile d) hill
2. The Health Minister has come under .... from all sides because of the accident in the hospital.
   a) rocket b) fire c) pocket d) shot
3. I'm going to the park outside the city for a .... of fresh air.
   a) breath b) push c) quantity d) quality
4. International schools in New York accept children from all .... and religions.
   a) heights b) wealth c) competitions d) races
5. The carpenter .... the wood with a waterproof sealant مادة عازلة to protect it.
   a) cured b) treated c) processed d) operated
6. Samy shouldn't let his elder brother .... him around like that.
   a) depart b) accept c) boss d) head
7. Sales of the products at present low prices would be a .... of the company's investment.
   a) waste b) miss c) profit d) benefit
8. I'll tell you what happened, but I don't want to get .... all the reasons for why it happened.
   a) back b) into c) on d) out
9. I know he broke the window, but so far, he hasn't .... up.
   a) possessed b) spent c) owned d) admitted
10. In some parts of the country, there are still .... of violence and unrest.
    a) packets b) piles c) resources d) pockets
11. If I had heard my phone ringing, I .... it.
    a) would have had to answer b) would have to answer
    c) would answer d) would have answer
12. Would you know what to do .... a heart attack?
    a) but for b) in case c) in case of d) providing

13 When you heat water to 100 degrees Celsius, it ....

a) will boil b) is boiled c) is boiling d) boils

14 If I had gone to university, I .... a lawyer now.

a) would have been b) would be
c) will be d) am

15 .... studying Turkish bothers you, you can stop it.

a) If b) Without c) In case of d) But for

16 If I .... taller, they would have taken me in the team yesterday.

a) wasn't b) had been c) were d) have been

17 If I .... a car, I .... you a lift.

a) had/would have given
b) had/would have to give
c) had had/would have to give
d) had had/would give

18 You're free to do whatever you want .... you respect the rules.

a) provide b) unless c) even if d) provided

19 .... he know the instructions, he wouldn't do that silly mistake.

a) Should b) did c) Had d) If

20 If my uncle visited us ...., we would be happy.

a) yesterday b) that day c) today d) then

21 If Osama were rich, he would buy the luxurious car, but he ....

a) wasn't b) isn't c) won't be d) is

22 If you hadn't been rude, he wouldn't have punished you, but you ....

a) were b) had been c) are d) would be

23 I won't go unless Ahmed goes. This means ....

a) I won't go if Ahmed goes.
b) I will go if Ahmed doesn't go.
c) I won't go when Ahmed goes.
d) I won't go if Ahmed doesn't go.

24 **A:** How is your father's cold?

B: .... it get worse, we will call the doctor.

a) Should b) Were c) If d) Unless

25 .... the car unless it is absolutely necessary.

a) Won't use b) Use c) Don't use d) Only Use



Al-Adwaa Test



40

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. Jim has been feeling gloomy and always says that he hasn't had much to smile .... lately.
   a) in b) at c) about d) on e) of
2. My cousin has .... a keen interest in music since he was a child.
   a) taken b) shown c) kept d) missed e) designed
3. Our neighbour, Mr Kareem, is too .... to buy a present for his wife on her birthday.
   a) wealthy b) friendly c) generous d) mean e) miserly
4. The computer trouble was apparently caused by a programming error. The synonyms of the adverb " apparently" are ....
   a) successfully b) vaguely c) obviously d) clearly e) temporarily

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5. Mum always warns me not to be .... with my children so as not be hated.
   a) brave b) mean c) generous d) kind
6. The new cancer hospital in 6th October City accepts .... from all people.
   a) sales b) donations c) products d) crops
7. When I was in Alexandria, I spent most of the day .... out with my friends.
   a) changing b) returning c) hanging d) moving
8. I realised that time was getting .... and we would have to hurry.
   a) on b) back c) into d) about
9. Hanaa would have met the new teacher if she .... at school yesterday.
   a) have been b) was c) were d) had been
10. Mobile phones usually .... working if they fall in water.
    a) will stop b) stop c) would stop d) stopped
11. If the internet ...., our life would be gloomy.
    a) didn't exist b) existed c) doesn't exist d) exists
12. My brother wouldn't have missed the bus if he .... so slowly.
    a) walked b) had walked c) hadn't walked d) walks

13 If I go to sleep early, I usually .... early.

a) wakes
b) would wake up
c) will wake up
d) wake up

14 What .... if you'd been late for the exam?

a) will you do
b) would you do
c) would you have done
d) do you do

15 If your grades .... good in the first term, you will have to work harder in the second term.

a) weren't
b) aren't
c) hadn't been
d) had been

16 If I .... anywhere in the world, I would go to Egypt to see the Pyramids.

a) could go
b) had gone
c) go
d) was gone

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Did you know that electric eels have quite a misleading name? They do! That's because even though it's true they are electric, they're actually not eels! Instead, they are a kind of fish called "knife fish". The most interesting thing about electric eels is that they can produce an electric charge.

The shock can go up to 600 volts. This can knock down a full-grown horse. Electric eels use their charge to hunt and protect themselves. They also use the charge in another way. Since these eels have poor eyesight, they don't rely on their eyes to see. Instead, they give out a weak electric signal that they use like radar. This radar helps them find their way around. It also helps them locate their prey.

Electric eels live in fresh water. They are nocturnal,[1] which means they sleep during the day and are active at night. They mostly live in rivers in South America. They like dark waters, mud and caves. Most of their time is spent underwater and will regularly come to the surface about every ten minutes to inhale[2] air through its mouth, then it will swim back to the bottom of the water.

Electric eels are carnivores[3], so they love to eat meat. They are very good at attacking their prey and their teeth are really sharp. If you saw an electric eel, you might think it looks like a snake. They have long, thin bodies. They can be white, black, blue, purple, or grey. They rarely harm humans. In fact, they are afraid of people. In some cultures, people eat electric eels. They are a delicacy[4]. Since the blood can be toxic, the eels need to be fully cooked. Would you eat one?



(1) ليلية (2) يستنشق (3) أكلات اللحوم (4) طعام شهي

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Where might you find an electric eel?
a) In the deep waters of the Pacific Ocean.
b) In the shallow coastal waters of the Mediterranean Sea.
c) In the fresh waters of the Amazon River.
d) Only in zoos because they are extinct in the wild.

18 What does delicacy mean in "In some cultures, people eat electric eels. They are a delicacy."?
a) A specialty food item.
b) A common snack food.
c) A symbol of good luck.
d) An unlucky omen.

19 How are electric eels different from most fish in the way they obtain oxygen to breathe?
a) Electric eels get oxygen through the food they eat.
b) Electric eels come up to the surface to breathe air through their mouths.
c) Electric eels have an extra set of gills on their bodies.
d) Electric eels do not need to obtain oxygen to survive like other fish.

20 The antonym of the word "toxic" is "..............................".
a) innocent
b) poisonous
c) harmful
d) harmless

21 The electric eels use electricity to ....
a) hunt their children
b) feed their children
c) hunt and move
d) breathe

22 Electric eel's name is misleading as ....
a) it is not electric
b) it is not a fish
c) it's not a knife fish
d) it's not an eel

23 If you eat an electric eel, you must ....
a) have it with salad
b) cook it well
c) make it toxic
d) get it broiled

24 The best title for the passage is ....
a) The Wildlife
b) A Knife Fish
c) Electricity in the Sea
d) How to Cook an Eel

25 **Translate into English:**

من واجبنا تجاه أصدقائنا أن نقدم لهم النصائح المفيدة من خبراتنا التى اكتسبناها خلال تجاربنا وتعلمناها من أخطائنا.

....

....

26 **Translate into Arabic:**

Some scientists believe that science has no limits. This can lead them to dangerous experiments which can create problems or even new viruses.

....

....

27 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY FIFTY (180) words on the following:**

"The job you dream of and your reasons for choosing it."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!



Revision (2)

Units 4,5&6

Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

Word	Meaning
bandage (n)	ضمادة
bottom (n)	قاع
character (n)	شخصية
choice (n)	اختيار
comment (n)	تعليق
conversation (n)	محادثة
digital (adj)	رقمي
e-book (n)	كتاب إلكتروني
expert (n)	خبير
expression (n)	تعبير
fall over (v)	يقع
feelings (n)	مشاعر
footprints (n)	آثار أقدام
innovator (n)	مبتكر
messaging (n)	مراسلة/كتابة رسائل
misunderstand (v)	يسيء الفهم
phrase (n)	عبارة
positive (adj)	إيجابي
post (n) (v) (ed)	بريد/ينشر (على موقع)
profile (n)	ملف شخصي
remain (v) (ed)	يبقى
remove (v) (d)	يزيل
response (n)	رد/استجابة
ruin (n) (v) (ed)	خراب/يدمر
speed up (v)	يسرع
storyteller (n)	راوي قصة
swimming pool (n)	حمام سباحة
tap (v) (ped)	ينقر
tone (n)	رنة/نبرة صوت/نغمة
warn (v) (ed)	يحذر

Reading Text (1)

New technology often changes the way we do things. In the past, people could only tell stories by talking to each other, but this changed when stories could be written down and read. Modern technology means we can read e-books and listen to audio books, but there are always new ways to enjoy great stories. Chat stories are short stories that you can read on your smartphone. They look like messages between the characters in the story. And when you finish reading one part of the conversation, you tap the bottom of your screen to show the next message. Reading a chat story feels like you're reading someone's messages. Some chat stories also include photos, audio and videos, so you can see what a character looks like and the expressions on their face. And some chat stories let you make choices about what happens next. But some storytellers want us to go further. They invite us to imagine how our phones could show the world around us like we were in a film or a video game. Through our phones, we could also meet the characters from our stories. They think that we will learn to enjoy stories in a new way because we will be at the centre of the action. However, we must remember to make the stories fun and interesting because technology can become boring when we forget to include human feelings.

Reading Text (2)

Digital footprints

Scientists have discovered human footprints in Australia that are 20,000 years old. There are footprints of a family with a small child, and five men who ran as fast as Olympic athletes. Footprints can tell us a lot about what people did, and they can last for a long time. The phrase 'digital footprint' describes all the information that we leave behind when we use the internet. It includes things like our social media profiles, posts and the photos we upload, as well as the groups that we've joined and posts from other people that we've shared. Our search history is also part of our digital footprint. Emails can remain online for years, and the comments that we make on videos can be seen by anyone. Taha El-Sayed is an expert in internet security. He advises people to do an internet search for their own names to see what other people can find. Then we're supposed to remove anything that we don't like, and we're encouraged to close any social media accounts that we don't use anymore. He says that we have to be careful with our behaviour and try to be positive online. When asked about advice for young people, he said, "Think about how other people could react to your photos, videos or comments. Control who can see your posts and keep photos and information private in social media." He also warned young people not to share addresses, phone numbers or the name of their school with anyone online. He said, "Most young people don't mean to give away too much information, but they often forget about security when they meet new friends or join a group online."

Listening Text



Yasser: So, Hany posted a funny picture that he had taken last summer and we were all laughing at it. Gamal was in it. He had fallen into a swimming pool with his clothes on. He looked very surprised, so I was making a few jokes about it with Fady.
But when Gamal saw the jokes, he was angry. He said he'd only fallen into the pool to stop Hany's little cousin, Amir, falling in. He had asked Hany to take a picture but it was wet and he fell over. Gamal stopped him falling in, but then he fell instead.
Gamal wasn't hurt but he wasn't happy, so he asked Hany not to show anyone the picture. Hany had agreed, but then he posted a lot of pictures from last summer and I guess he'd forgotten about that one.
So, now I think Gamal isn't my friend any more.



Al Adwaa Test



Units 4, 5 & 6

Remembering   Understanding   Applying   Analysing   Evaluating   Creating

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 Many customers wanted to make .... complaints about the new system of customer service at the company.
a) ordinary b) excited c) formal d) removable e) official

2 The health centre can .... advice to those who wish to quit smoking.
a) offer b) make c) do d) give e) let

3 My wife is keen on buying the most up-to-date kitchen equipment we can afford. The synonyms of the adjective " up-to-date" are ....
a) modern b) ancient c) updated d) traditional e) fashionable

4 Knowing that I hurt my friend with my angry words makes me feel really .... and apologized.
a) pleased b) bad c) sorry d) excited e) fine

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5 Our teacher .... at us when we said we forgot to do our homework.
a) smiled b) rewarded c) frowned d) introduced

6 Al Ahly is the team that won the most African .... of football.
a) titles b) names c) headings d) tours

7 We decided to .... a specialist about our father's heart problem.
a) predict b) consult c) detect d) hire

8 Visiting my friend in hospital brought .... sad memories about my grandfather's death.
a) about b) in c) back d) for

9 .... danger, all people have to follow the instructions told to them,
a) In case of b) In case c) Unless d) Without

10 Unless he had followed my advice, he .... all his money.
a) would have lost b) would have a loss
c) wouldn't lose d) wouldn't have lost

11 Adel was working with me all day, so you .... have seen him at the park.
a) could b) couldn't c) should d) shouldn't

12 I missed the first lecture; I .... up late last night.

a) should have stayed
b) could have stayed
c) shouldn't have stayed
d) needn't stay

13 Due care .... given to homeless children in poor countries.

a) is seemed to be
b) is supposed to be
c) should have
d) must have

14 They didn't come to our party. They .... have received our invitation.

a) shouldn't
b) couldn't
c) could
d) oughtn't

15 The doctor told me .... plenty of water.

a) to drink
b) not to drink
c) I will
d) if I drank

16 It .... to be an apology but it only made her angry.

a) is seemed
b) is meant
c) supposed
d) was meant

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Imagine how life could be on earth without modern technology. Imagine how you could do your daily life routine without home appliances and the internet. Some people argue that it is a double-edged weapon.

In today's modern society, the internet is a very educational and productive tool. In order to become knowledgeable and stay well connected. Without technology, some individuals couldn't function throughout their day. Many people use it for business purposes while others use technology in order to communicate on social networking sites such as Twitter or Facebook. Despite the beneficial users, predators often abuse its powers. This tool puts consumers at risk for identity theft through scamming and even hacking.

Cybercrime is any illegal activity committed on the internet that uses a computer as its primary means of theft. Through identity theft, a predator without someone's knowledge acquires data and uses it to commit fraud. It is often difficult to catch cyber criminals because the internet makes it easier for people to do things from any location on the globe. Predators use methods such as spam advertisements and even phony programmes that have viruses.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The main idea of the passage is ....

a) the internet is a very educational and productive tool.
b) the internet and cyber-crimes.
c) the internet "advantages and disadvantages".
d) the internet as a means of communication.

18 People use the internet for ....

a) business
b) communication
c) scamming and hacking
d) all of these

19 The word "predators" means ....

a) hackers
b) hatchers
c) customers
d) traders

20 The passage states that staying without internet is .... for some people.

a) doable
b) avoidable
c) achievable
d) unattainable

21 The underlined pronoun "its" refers to ....

a) predators
b) the internet
c) the computer
d) powers

22 A predator can commit fraud through ....

a) stealing people's personal information
b) breaking into a bank
c) stealing a computer shop
d) wearing a mask

23 Cyber criminals can't be caught easily because ....

a) they are smart
b) they are rich
c) they are all over the world
d) the police is not up-to-date

24 According to the passage, our devices can be hacked through ....

a) telephone cables
b) fake advertisements
c) antivirus programs
d) sending letters

25 Translate into English:

- لقد أصبح تحدث أكثر من لغة أجنبية، وتعلم مهارات الكمبيوتر من أهم المؤهلات التى يحتاج إليها سوق العمل، وزادت أهمية ذلك مع لجوء الشركات للعمل على الإنترنت بسبب جائحة كورونا.

....

....

26 Translate into Arabic:

Technology has played an important part in changing people's lifestyle. They chat or email people instead of talking to them. They play video games instead of doing sports or exercises.

....

....

27 **Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:**

"Your teacher asked you and your friend to do research together. Ask your friend how to arrange to do it and what resources will you use."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!



Video Scripts

Video Script (Unit 1)

Have you heard of CPR? It's short for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and it's a technique you perform on a person who isn't responding[1] and isn't breathing. CPR can help someone to stay alive until an ambulance[2] arrives.

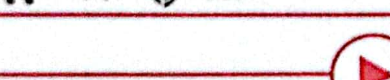
So, before you start performing CPR on someone, you need to call an ambulance. Then while you're waiting for the ambulance, you can start performing CPR with your hands. This is the easiest way of performing CPR and the technique that's used the most often.

Start by getting down on the floor next to the person and putting the base[3] of your hand on the bone[4] in the centre of their chest. Then put your other hand on top of that hand and put the fingers from both hands together.

Move so that your shoulders are above your hands and press 5 or 6 centimetres down onto the person's chest. Then keep your hands on the person's chest, but stop pressing on it. The chest will come back up again.

Repeat[5] this one hundred, or one hundred and twenty times a minute, every minute until the ambulance arrives.

(1) يستجيب
(2) عربة الإسعاف
(3) أساس/قاعدة
(4) عظمة
(5) يكرر



Video Script (Unit 2)

People in different countries celebrate different festivals, but they all cook special meals for their families when they're celebrating together. Let's look at three examples of special meals from around the world.

Many Egyptians celebrate the festival of Eid-al-Adha[1] every year. The most popular meal to eat on this occasion[2] is a traditional fattah[3]. Egyptian families usually eat fattah for breakfast.

In Britain, Christmas is the most popular festival of the year. British families come together on this occasion to eat a special meal, which is usually roasted[4] turkey with potatoes and other vegetables.

And, finally, let's go to China where the New Year is the most important festival[5] of the year. Families like to have lots of different things on the table when they get together to eat at Chinese New Year. This usually includes spring rolls[6], noodles[7], fish and chicken.

(1) عيد الأضحى
(2) مناسبة
(3) فتة
(4) مشوى
(5) مهرجان
(6) ملفوفات الربيع
(7) مكرونة سريعة التحضير

0:00

Video Script (Unit 3)

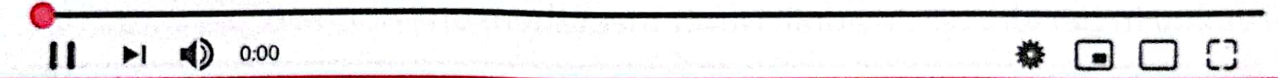
Would you like to do more to help the environment[1] by living a more sustainable life? It's actually easier than you might think. There are many small changes you can make that will help to protect the Earth. Here are three of them.

Let's start with food. You don't have to become a vegetarian[2], but eating less meat will help the environment. Livestock produce dangerous gases[3] and they can damage the land they live on.

When you need to travel, think about whether you really need to go in the car or take the bus. It's often possible to walk or ride a bike instead[4] and these are more sustainable ways of travelling.

Everyone likes to get new things, but before you ask your parents to buy you new clothes or new games, ask yourself if you really need them. It isn't sustainable for people to continue buying so much stuff[5]!

(1) البيئة
(2) شخص نباتي
(3) غازات
(4) بدلًا من
(5) أشياء/مواد



Video Script (Unit 4)

Smartphones are changing the way we choose to communicate with each other. More people use their phones to send and receive messages than they do to make phone calls. Messaging is quick and cheap. We can keep in contact with friends, make and check arrangements[1], send photos, ask questions and receive answers within seconds.

Messaging is now more popular than emails, especially between friends and family. Messaging increased[2] by 7,000% in the ten years between 2007 and 2017 and is still rising. Reports suggest that more than 560 billion text messages are sent around the world every month. And it seems that teenagers send more than most adults.

Staying in contact[3] with people is really important and messaging is a fun way to do this, but we need to remember that text messaging is not the same as having a conversation[4] or spending time with someone: that's important too.

(1) ترتيبات
(2) يزيد
(3) اتصال
(4) محادثة

0:00

Video Script (Unit 5)

Social media can keep us in contact with friends, entertain[1] us and keep us up-to-date. So, it's important to know how to use it safely.

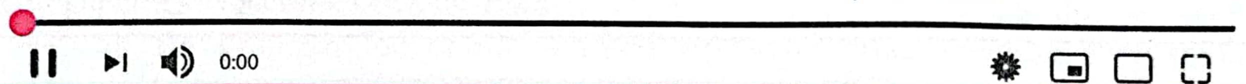
First of all, take care[2] with privacy[3] settings. Make sure that the only people who can see what you're posting are people who you want to contact online.

Think carefully about the information that you share. Why not use a nice image instead of your face in your profile? And never put real details about yourself online, such as your date of birth, school, home address or your telephone number.

Don't be unkind. If you haven't got anything nice to say, don't say anything. And always check that you know who you are sending messages to. Is it one person or a large group?

If you want to meet more people online, there are lots of groups that you can join[4]. Look for one with people who share your interests. But if anyone asks to meet you in person, tell an adult. Never meet them on your own[5].

(1) يسلي/يستضيف
(2) يهتم
(3) خصوصية
(4) ينضم إلى/يلتحق بـ
(5) بمفردك



Video Script (Unit 6)

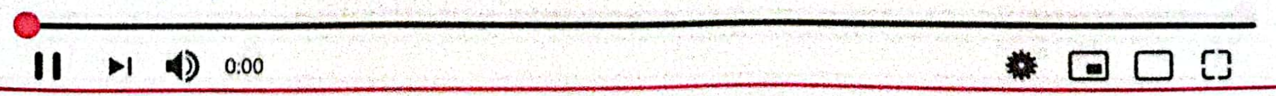
Charles Dickens was born in England in 1812. He wrote fifteen novels[1] including *Great Expectations*, *Oliver Twist*, *David Copperfield*, and *Hard Times*. His most popular novel is probably[2] *A Christmas Carol*, which was published in 1843.

In *A Christmas Carol*, Dickens wrote about some of the problems in Britain at that time. Many people were very poor and Dickens thought that rich people should be kinder and help the poor people who worked for them.

The main character is Ebenezer Scrooge. At the beginning of the story, he is mean and he won't help anyone, including[3] his employee, Bob Cratchit, who is very poor with a large[4] family and a sick child.

However, by the end of the story, Scrooge has changed and he sees life in a completely different way. We are told that Scrooge became as good a friend, as good an employer[5] and as good a man as the good old city of London had ever seen.

(1) روايات
(2) من المحتمل
(3) مشتملًا على/بما فيه
(4) كبير
(5) صاحب العمل



Unit 1

1. b) bleed

- تستخدم bleed هنا بمعنى (يختلط اللون بآخر).

2. c) injury

- يستخدم التعبير do oneself an injury بمعنى (يسبب ضررًا لنفسه).

3. d) base

- تستخدم base هنا بمعنى (قاعدة عسكرية).

4. a) label

- يستخدم التعبير own label/own brand بمعنى (منتج من ماركة محددة).

5. c) survived

- يستخدم survive هنا بمعنى (يعيش أكثر من شخص أخر).

6. c) react

- يستخدم react against بمعنى (يرفض/يكره).

7. a) severe

- تستخدم severe هنا بمعنى (جاد/حازم).

8. b) allowing

- تستخدم allow for بمعنى (مع احتساب).

9. d) area

- تستخدم area هنا بمعنى (مساحة شكل هندسى).

10. c) surface

- تستخدم under the surface بمعنى (تحت السطح – شىء عكس ما هو ظاهر).

11. b) course

- تستخدم course هنا بمعنى (مسار حياة).

12. d) organ

- تستخدم organ هنا بمعنى (مجلة/جريدة تمثل أو تتخصص فى مجال أو مجموعة محددة).

13. a) immune

- تستخدم immune هنا بمعنى (محصن).

14. b) cell

- تستخدم cell هنا بمعنى (زنزانة/مكان احتجاز).

15. d) diet

- يستخدم التعبير go on a diet بمعنى (يتبع نظامًا غذائيًا خاصًا (ريجيم)).

16. c) I've had to
17. b) to have put
18. a) didn't need to wait
19. a) must
20. c) may
21. a) you can't
22. b) mustn't
23. c) not allowed
24. d) must
25. a) must
26. b) were
27. c) He is to study hard.
28. d) didn't have to
29. b) need polishing
30. a) Is it a necessity



Unit 2

1. c) celebrating

- تستخدم celebrate هنا بمعنى (يحتفى/يمجد شخصًا أو حدثًا).

2. a) event

- يستخدم التعبير in the event of بمعنى (فى حالة حدوث).

3. c) extract

- تستخدم extract هنا بمعنى (يستخلص/يستنتج).

4. d) made

- يستخدم التعبير make it a rule بمعنى (يتأكد من فعل شىء دائما).

5. b) native

- تستخدم native هنا بمعنى (موجود أساسًا فى مكان محدد).

6. a) spicy

- تستخدم spicy هنا بمعنى (مثير و غير لائق).

7. c) climate

- تستخدم climate هنا بمعنى (الجو المحيط أو الشعور السائد).

8. d) respect

- يستخدم التعبير with all (due) respect بمعنى (مع كل الاحترام اللازم).

9. c) served

- تستخدم serve هنا بمعنى (يقوم بدور).

10. b) occasion

- يستخدم التعبير on occasion بمعنى (أحيانًا/بشكل غير مستمر).

11. a) amount

- تستخدم amount هنا كفعل بمعنى (يصعد/يصل إلى).

12. b) articles

- تستخدم articles هنا بمعنى (أدوات مستخدمة بمكان ما ومرادفها (item).

13. c) introduces

- تستخدم introduce هنا بمعنى (يعلم/يخبر).

14. d) distant

- تستخدم distant relative هنا بمعنى (شخص ذو قرابة بعيدة).

15. c) options

- تستخدم options هنا بمعنى (الميزات الإضافية التى تأتى مع منتج كالسيارة).

16. c) famous German medical
17. a) as tall as
18. b) further
19. d) the little
20. a) latter
21. c) What a big car has he!
22. b) further
23. d) latest
24. c) better
25. d) slightly
26. c) latter
27. a) nearest
28. b) a little
29. d) later
30. a) few

Unit 3

1. c) solution

- تستخدم solution هنا بمعنى (محلول).

2. a) ocean

- يستخدم التعبير a drop in the ocean بمعنى (قطرة فى محيط/جهد قليل بالنسبة لشيء أكبر).

3. c) link

- تستخدم link هنا بمعنى (رابط لموقع أو صفحة إنترنت) .

4. b) available

- تستخدم available هنا بمعنى (موجود لأداء عمل).

5. d) earn

- يستخدم التعبير earn their keep بمعنى (يكسب قوت يومه).

6. c) description

- تستخدم job description هنا بمعنى (طبيعة الوظيفة أو مهامها).

7. d) heating

- تستخدم heat up هنا بمعنى (يزداد حدة).

8. a) contained

- تستخدم contain هنا بمعنى (يحتوى النار أو يطفئها).

9. c) crop

- تستخدم crop هنا بمعنى (جيل/دفعة لتعليمها).

10. b) electric

- تستخدم electric هنا بمعنى (مثير/مؤثر).

11. a) flow

- تستخدم cash flow هنا بمعنى (سيولة مالية).

12. b) cause

- تستخدم cause هنا بمعنى (قضية).

13. c) vehicles

- تستخدم vehicle هنا بمعنى (أداة/وسيلة لنقل عدوى).

14. d) capital

- تستخدم capital هنا بمعنى (رأس مال).

15. c) project

- تستخدم project هنا بمعنى (يظهر صورًا بواسطة جهاز عرض).

16. d) all are possible
17. a) before you leave home
18. a) is waiting
19. c) do you want
20. c) to get
21. b) will pass
22. a) is coming
23. c) offer
24. a) will have
25. b) will feel
26. a) have finished
27. b) am going to buy
28. c) promise
29. d) finish/ will not be able to
30. b) will probably go to

Unit 4

1. d) deal

- تستخدم deal هنا بمعنى (قدر/مقدار).

2. a) titles

- تستخدم title هنا بمعنى (لقب فى لعبة أو مسابقة).

3. a) receive

- تستخدم receive هنا بمعنى (يستقبل ضيوفًا).

4. b) tone

- يستخدم التعبير set the tone بمعنى (يحدد الاتجاه السائد فى مقابلة أو مكان).

5. c) gift

- تستخدم gift هنا بمعنى (موهبة).

6. d) headlines

- يستخدم التعبير make the headlines بمعنى (يظهر فى عناوين الأخبار).

7. a) section

- يستخدم التعبير in section بمعنى (على مقاطع/أجزاء).

8. c) record

- يستخدم التعبير break the record بمعنى (يحطم الرقم القياسى).

9. b) Society

- تستخدم Society هنا بمعنى (جمعية).

10. d) image

- تستخدم image هنا بمعنى (صورة/موقف).

11. c) admit

- تستخدم admit هنا بمعنى (يسمح بدخول).

12. b) parcel

- يستخدم التعبير part and parcel بمعنى (جزء لا يتجزأ من شىء).

13. a) post

- تستخدم the post هنا بمعنى (البريد).

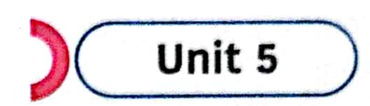
14. d) tip

- يستخدم التعبير the tip of the iceberg بمعنى (قمة جبل الجليد/الجزء الظاهر فقط).

15. c) members

- تستخدم member هنا بمعنى (أحد أفراد فصيلة من الحيوانات).

16. a) could
17. d) could have taken
18. a) could
19. b) could
20. d) didn't
21. d) couldn't
22. a) should have said
23. d) couldn't/can
24. d) may have run
25. c) ought to have been sent
26. c) should have given
27. c) you shouldn't have done it.
28. c) to have been shown more consideration
29. a) extended
30. b) should have



Unit 5

1. c) criticise

- تستخدم criticise هنا بمعنى (يحكم على/يفحص جيدًا).

2. b) profile

- تستخدم profile هنا بمعنى (صورة فوتوغرافية بأحد جوانب الوجه).

3. d) presentation

- تستخدم presentation هنا بمعنى (طريقة عرض).

4. a) scanned

- تستخدم scan هنا بمعنى (يجرى فحصًا بالأشعة).

5. c) collect

- تستخدم collect هنا بمعنى (يحضر شخصًا من مكان).

6. b) character

- تستخدم character هنا بمعنى (الميزة المعروفة عن مكان).

7. a) connecting

- يستخدم التعبير connecting flight بمعنى (رحلة جوية مكملة (ترانزيت) إلى مكان).

8. d) developed

- يستخدم التعبير develop the film بمعنى (يقوم بطبع الصور الفوتوغرافية على أحد أفلام الكاميرا).

9. b) support

- تستخدم support هنا بمعنى (يوفر البيئة المناسبة لحياة كائن حى).

10. c) registered

- تستخدم register هنا بمعنى (يسجل رقمًا على مقياس محدد).

11. a) symbol

- تستخدم chemical symbol هنا بمعنى (رمز كيميائى لعنصر).

12. b) stamps

- تستخدم stamps هنا بمعنى (أختام).

13. c) influence

- تستخدم influence هنا بمعنى (شخص مؤثر).

14. d) stole

- تستخدم stole هنا بمعنى (ينسل خارجا/يخرج بهدوء).

15. c) purpose

- تستخدم purpose هنا بمعنى (هدف فى الحياة).

16. d) mean
17. c) to be done
18. b) It seems
19. a) meant/seems
20. d) obligatory
21. a) supposed
22. c) to have invented
23. c) to be influenced
24. d) supposed/mean
25. b) doesn't seem
26. a) The apple must have been eaten by Hassan.
27. c) They should help sick people.
28. d) I should have called her at seven
29. b) was supposed to
30. c) You shouldn't have done it.

Unit 6

1. c) pile

- يستخدم التعبير a pile of cash بمعنى (قدر كبير من المال).

2. b) fire

- يستخدم التعبير under fire بمعنى (معرض للنقد الشديد).

3. a) breath

- يستخدم التعبير a breath of air بمعنى (نسمة من الهواء).

4. d) races

- تستخدم race هنا بمعنى (عرق/جنس بشرى).

5. b) treated

- تستخدم treat هنا بمعنى (يعالج خشبًا بمادة كيميائية).

6. c) boss

- تستخدم boss هنا بمعنى (يمارس سلطة/تحكم).

7. a) waste

- تستخدم waste هنا بمعنى (إهدار لموارد).

8. b) into

- تستخدم get into هنا بمعنى (يعرض/يناقش).

9. c) owned

- تستخدم own up هنا بمعنى (يعترف).

10. d) pockets

- تستخدم pocket هنا بمعنى (جيوب/مناطق عنف/إرهاب).

11. a) would have had to answer
12. c) in case of
13. d) boils
14. b) would be
15. a) If
16. c) were
17. b) had/would have to give
18. d) provided
19. a) Should
20. c) today
21. b) isn't
22. b) read/ would be able to get
23. d) I won't go if Ahmed doesn't go.
24. a) Should
25. c) Don't use

Check Point Answers

	Unit 1					Unit 2				
Check Point 1	1. b	2. d	3. c	4. b	5. c	1. d	2. a	3. d	4. a	5. b
Check Point 2	1. b	2. c	3. d	4. a	5. b	1. d	2. c	3. b	4. a	5. c
Check Point 3	1. b	2. c	3. d	4. b		1. a	2. b	3. d	4. c	5. b
Check Point 4	1. d	2. c	3. b			1. c	2. a	3. d	4. c	5. c
Check Point 5	1. a	2. b	3. d	4. c	5. a					
Check Point 1	1. a	2. c	3. b	4. b		1. c	2. d	3. b	4. a	5. d
Check Point 2	1. c	2. b	3. a	4. b	5. d	1. d	2. b	3. c	4. a	5. b
Check Point 3	1. a	2. c	3. d	4. a	5. b	1. d	2. a	3. a	4. c	5. b
Check Point 4	1. c	2. a	3. d	4. c	5. b	1. d	2. a	3. d	4. c	5. a

	Unit 3					Unit 4				
Check Point 1	1. b	2. d	3. b	4. a	5. a	1. c	2. b	3. a	4. d	5. a
Check Point 2	1. c	2. a	3. b	4. d	5. b	1. d	2. a	3. c	4. b	5. d
Check Point 3	1. b	2. a	3. c	4. a		1. b	2. a	3. b	4. a	5. c
Check Point 4	1. d	2. c	3. b	4. a	5. a	1. c	2. a	3. d	4. d	5. c
Check Point 5						1. d	2. d	3. b	4. c	5. b
Check Point 6						1. b	2. d	3. a	4. b	5. c
Check Point 1	1. c	2. a	3. b	4. d	5. a	1. a	2. c	3. b	4. d	5. c
Check Point 2	1. b	2. a	3. b	4. c	5. d	1. d	2. c	3. b	4. a	5. b
Check Point 3	1. d	2. b	3. a	4. d	5. a	1. b	2. b	3. a	4. c	5. c
Check Point 4	1. d	2. c	3. a	4. d	5. a	1. a	2. b	3. b	4. c	5. b
Check Point 5						1. b	2. c	3. a	4. d	5. b

	Unit 5					Unit 6				
Check Point 1	1. d	2. c	3. a	4. b	5. c	1. b	2. c	3. d	4. b	5. a
Check Point 2	1. d	2. a	3. d	4. b	5. b	1. d	2. a	3. d	4. c	5. c
Check Point 3	1. c	2. a	3. d	4. b	5. a	1. b	2. a	3. d	4. c	5. d
Check Point 4	1. d	2. c	3. b	4. a	5. d	1. b	2. c	3. a	4. d	5. c
Check Point 5						1. c	2. d	3. b	4. a	5. a
Check Point 1	1. c	2. a	3. c	4. d	5. c	1. b	2. a	3. c	4. b	5. d
Check Point 2	1. a	2. c	3. c	4. d	5. b	1. b	2. d	3. a	4. a	5. d
Check Point 3	1. a	2. c	3. d	4. b	5. c	1. c	2. a	3. b	4. a	5. c
Check Point 4	1. a	2. b	3. a	4. b	5. a	1. c	2. b	3. d	4. a	5. b
Check Point 5						1. d	2. b	3. c	4. a	5. c





ENGLISH ENGLISH ENGLISH

NEW HELLO! 2023

ENGLISH

2nd Secondary

first term first term first term 2

King Lear